## CONTENTS 目录

To the teacher and student  
Language learning at the pre-unit intermediate level  i

About this course  vi

How to use this course  xii

致教师和学生  
中级以下水平的外语教学  xix

关于本教材的说明  xxiii

本教材使用说明  xxvii

---

### Pre-unit Test 1 测试1

Unit 1: Instructions to the students 第1单元：致学生  1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A private conversation 私人谈话</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Breakfast or lunch? 早餐还是午餐？</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Please send me a card 请给我寄一张明信片</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>An exciting trip 激动人心的旅行</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>No wrong numbers 无错号之虞</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Percy Buttons 珀西·巴顿斯</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Too late 为时太晚</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>The best and the worst 最好的和最差的</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>A cold welcome 冷遇</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Not for jazz 不适于演奏爵士乐</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Goodbye and good luck 再见，一路顺风</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>The Greenwood Boys 绿林少年</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗？</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Good news 佳音</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>A polite request 彬彬有礼的要求</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Always young 青春常驻</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>He often does this! 他经常干这种事！</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Sold out 票已售完</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>One man in a boat 独坐孤舟</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Mad or not? 是不是疯了？</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>A glass envelope 玻璃信封</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>A new house 新居</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>It could be worse 不幸中之万幸</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pre-unit Test 2 测试2

Unit 2: Instructions to the students 第2单元：致学生  109

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Do the English speak English? 英国人讲的是英语吗？</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>The best art critics 最佳美术评论家</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>A wet night 雨夜</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
Lesson 28  No parking 禁止停车 134
Lesson 29  Taxi! 出租汽车! 138
Lesson 30  Football or polo? 足球还是水球? 142
Lesson 31  Success story 成功者的故事 146
Lesson 32  Shopping made easy 购物变得很方便 150
Lesson 33  Out of the darkness 冲出黑暗 154
Lesson 34  Quick work 成案“神速” 158
Lesson 35  Stop thief! 捉贼! 162
Lesson 36  Across the Channel 横渡海峡 166
Lesson 37  The Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会 170
Lesson 38  Everything except the weather 唯独没有考虑到天气 174
Lesson 39  Am I all right? 我是否痊愈? 178
Lesson 40  Food and talk 进餐与交谈 182
Lesson 41  Do you call that a hat? 你把那个叫帽子吗? 186
Lesson 42  Not very musical 并非很懂音乐 190
Lesson 43  Over the South Pole 飞越南极 194
Lesson 44  Through the forest 穿过森林 198
Lesson 45  A clear conscience 问心无愧 202
Lesson 46  Expensive and uncomfortable 既昂贵又受罪 206
Lesson 47  A thirsty ghost 喝酒的鬼魂 210
Lesson 48  Did you want to tell me something? 你想对我说什么吗? 214

Pre-unit Test 3 测试 3 219
Unit 3: Instructions to the students 第 3 单元：致学生 229
Lesson 49  The end of a dream 美梦告终 232
Lesson 50  Taken for a ride 乘车兜风 236
Lesson 51  Reward for virtue 对美德的奖赏 240
Lesson 52  A pretty carpet 漂亮的地毯 244
Lesson 53  Hot snake 触电的蛇 248
Lesson 54  Sticky fingers 粘糊的手指 252
Lesson 55  Not a gold mine 并非金矿 256
Lesson 56  Faster than sound! 比声音还快! 260
Lesson 57  Can I help you, madam? 你要买什么，夫人? 264
Lesson 58  A blessing in disguise? 是因祸得福吗? 268
Lesson 59  In or out? 进来还是出去? 272
Lesson 60  The future 卜算未来 276
Lesson 61  Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境 280
Lesson 62  After the fire 大火之后 284
Lesson 63  She was not amused 她并不觉得好笑 288
Lesson 64  The Channel Tunnel 海峡隧道 292
Lesson 65  Jumbo versus the police 大象对警察 296
Lesson 66  Sweet as honey! 像蜜一样甜! 300
Lesson 67  Volcanoes 火山 304
Lesson 68  Persistent 纠缠不休 308
Lesson 69  But not murder! 并非谋杀! 312
Lesson 70  Red for danger 危险的红色 316
PRE-UNIT TEST 1
IF YOU CAN DO THIS TEST GO ON TO UNIT 1

A Look at this example:

I am tired.
He is tired.

Write these sentences again. Begin each sentence with He.

1. I am busy.
2. I am learning English.
3. I have a new book.
4. I live in the country.
5. I shall see you tomorrow.
6. I can understand you.
7. I must write a letter.
8. I may come next week.
9. I do a lot of work every day.
10. I did a lot of work yesterday.
11. I played football yesterday.
12. I bought a new coat last week.
13. I have had a letter from Tom.
14. I was busy this morning.
15. I could play football very well when I was younger.
16. I always try to get up early.
17. I might see you next week.
18. I always enjoy a good film.
19. I had finished my work before you came.
20. I watch television every night.

B Look at these examples:

I want a biscuit. I want a cup of coffee.
I want some biscuits. I want some coffee.
Do you want any biscuits? Do you want any coffee?
I don’t want any biscuits. I don’t want any coffee.

Write these sentences again. Put in a, some or any.

1. There are _______ books on the desk.
2. I drank _______ glass of beer.
3. Do you want _______ butter?
Pre-Unit Test 1

4 There aren’t _______ people in the street.
5 Tom has just bought _______ new car.
6 We have _______ apple trees in our garden.
7 Can I have _______ bar of chocolate, please?
8 There isn’t _______ bread in that tin.
9 Is there _______ ink in that bottle?
10 Are there _______ eggs in that basket?

C Look at these examples:

阅读以下例句：

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I haven’t any eggs.</th>
<th>I haven’t got many eggs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He hasn’t any coffee.</td>
<td>He hasn’t got much coffee.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do these in the same way:

模仿例句，改写下面的句子：

1 I haven’t any butter.
2 You haven’t any cigarettes.
3 We haven’t any milk.
4 She hasn’t any biscuits.
5 They haven’t any stationery.

D Look at this example:

阅读以下例句：

She goes to town every day. She went to town yesterday.

Do these in the same way:

模仿例句，完成下面的句子：

1 He buys a new car every year. He _______ a new car last year.
2 She airs the room every day. She _______ it this morning.
3 He often loses his pen. He _______ his pen this morning.
4 He always listens to the news. He _______ to the news yesterday.
5 She empties this basket every day. She _______ it yesterday.

E Look at these examples:

阅读以下例句：

He went to the cinema yesterday.

Question: Did he go to the cinema yesterday?
Question: Where did he go yesterday?
Negative: He didn’t go to the cinema yesterday.

Do these in the same way:

模仿例句提问，并作出否定的回答:
1 He bought a new car.
Q: ________________________________
Q: What ________________________________
N: ________________________________

2 She can come tomorrow.
Q: ________________________________
Q: When ________________________________
N: ________________________________

3 They were here yesterday.
Q: ________________________________
Q: When ________________________________
N: ________________________________

4 He must leave early.
Q: ________________________________
Q: Why ________________________________
N: ________________________________

5 He gave you a pen.
Q: ________________________________
Q: What ________________________________
N: ________________________________

6 He lives next door.
Q: ________________________________
Q: Where ________________________________
N: ________________________________

7 You know him well.
Q: ________________________________
Q: How well ________________________________
N: ________________________________

8 He has found his pen.
Q: ________________________________
Q: What ________________________________
N: ________________________________

9 You saw that film.
Q: ________________________________
Q: When ________________________________
N: ________________________________

10 He arrived at two o'clock.
Q: ________________________________
Q: When ________________________________
N: ________________________________

F Look at this example:

阅读以下例句：

She smiled _______ (pleasant)
She smiled pleasantly.

Do these in the same way:

模仿例句，完成下面句子：

1 He read the phrase _______ (slow)
2 He worked _______ (lazy)
3 He cut himself _______ (bad)
4 He worked _______ (careful)
5 The door opened _______ (sudden)

G Look at this example:

阅读以下例句：

It will rain tomorrow.
It'll rain tomorrow.

Write these sentences again. Use short forms.

用缩写形式改写下面的句子。

1 He will arrive tomorrow morning.
2 She will come this evening.
3 I shall see you the day after tomorrow.
Pre-Unit Test 1

4 He will not believe me.
5 We shall not remain here.

H Look at this example:

This dress belongs to my sister. It is hers.

Do these in the same way:

These things belong to my husband. They are ________.
1 This coat belongs to me. It is ________.
2 These shoes belong to my wife. They are ________.
3 These pens belong to Tom and Betty. The pens are ________.
4 This suitcase belongs to you. It is ________.

I Look at this example:

It is warm today, but it was warmer yesterday.

Do these in the same way:

It is cool today, but it was ________ yesterday.
1 It is wet today, but it was ________ yesterday.
2 He's late again today, but he was ________ yesterday.
3 This test is easy, but that one is ________.
4 This book is expensive, but that one is ________.
5 This bookcase is large, but that one is ________.
6 That film was interesting, but the other one was ________.
7 Betty is pretty, but Jane is ________.
8 Miss Green is beautiful, but Miss White is ________.
9 Tom is intelligent, but Bill is ________.

J Put in the right word or phrase: yesterday, last night, tomorrow etc.

The date today is Monday, March 5th. 今天的日期是3月5日，星期一。

1 I saw him ________ (Sunday, March 4th)
2 I shall see him ________ (Tuesday, March 6th)
3 I shall see him ________ (Monday, March 5th)
4 I shall see him ________ (Monday, March 5th—afternoon)
5 I shall see him ________ (Wednesday, March 7th)
6 I saw him ________ (Saturday, March 3rd)
7 I saw him ________ (Sunday, March 4th—night)
8 I shall see him ________ (Tuesday, March 6th—morning)
9 I shall see him ________ (Monday, March 5th—morning)
10 I saw him _______ (Sunday, March 4th—afternoon)

K Put in at, in, or on:

1 He is going to telephone _______ five o’clock.
2 My birthday is _______ May 21st.
3 It is always cold _______ February.
4 My father was there _______ 1984.
5 He is going to arrive _______ Tuesday.

L Put in across, over, between, off, along, in, on, into, out of, or under:

1 The aeroplane is flying _______ the village.
2 The ship is going _______ the bridge.
3 The boy is swimming _______ the river.
4 Two cats are running _______ the wall.
5 My books are _______ the shelf.
6 The bottle of milk is _______ the refrigerator.
7 The boy is jumping _______ the branch.
8 Mary is sitting _______ her mother and her father.
9 It is 9 o’clock. The children are going _______ class.
10 It is 4 o’clock. The children are coming _______ class.

M Put in Who or Which:

1 _______ hat did you buy?
2 _______ broke this plate?
3 _______ bus did you catch?
4 _______ is knocking at the door?
5 _______ of the two books do you want?

N Look at these examples:

She is the girl. She met me yesterday.
She is the girl who met me yesterday.
She is the girl whom I met yesterday.
This is the book. I bought it yesterday.
This is the book which I bought yesterday.

Join these sentences in the same way. Use who, whom or which.

1 This is the car. The mechanic repaired it yesterday.
Pre-Unit Test 1

2 He is the man. I invited him to the party.
3 These are the things. I bought them yesterday.
4 He is the man. He came here last week.
5 He is the policeman. He caught the thieves.
6 She is the nurse. She looked after me.
7 She is the woman. I met her yesterday.
8 I am the person. I wrote to you.
9 They are the people. I saw them yesterday.
10 They are the trees. We cut them down yesterday.

0 Look at this example:

| I can see some cups, but I can't see any glasses. |

Do these in the same way:

| I can see some spoons, but I can't see any ________ . (knife) |
| I can see some hammers, but I can't see any ________ . (box) |
| I can see some cupboards, but I can't see any ________ . (shelf) |
| I can see Mr. Jones and Mr. Brown, but I can't see their ________ . (wife) |
| I can see some cups, but I can't see any ________ . (dish) |

P Read this story carefully:

Last week, I took my four-year-old daughter, Sally, to a children's party. We travelled by train. Sally has never travelled by train before. She sat near the window and asked a lot of questions. Suddenly, a middle-aged lady came into our compartment and sat opposite Sally. 'Hello, little girl,' she said. Sally did not answer, but looked at her curiously. The lady took out her powder compact. She then began to make up her face.

'Why are you doing that?' Sally asked.

'To make myself beautiful,' the lady answered. She put away her powder compact and smiled kindly.

But you are still ugly,' Sally said.

Now write answers to these questions:

| Did you take Sally to the park? |
| Did you take Sally to a children's party? |
| Where did Sally sit? |
| Who came into your compartment? |
| Was the lady young or was she middle-aged? |
| Where did the lady sit? |
| Did she say 'Hello' to Sally, or did Sally say 'Hello' to her? |
| Why did the lady make up her face? |
| Did Sally think the lady was beautiful? |
| What did Sally say to the lady? |
Unit 1
第1单元
INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT

Summary writing 摘要写作

Summary writing is a test of your ability to find the important points in a piece of writing and to put them together. To write a summary, you must be able to do two things. You must be able to understand what you read, and to put ideas together. Comprehension is a test of your ability to understand what you read. Writing is a test of your ability to put ideas together. So Summary writing and comprehension are closely related to each other.

"摘要写作"用于检测你发现一篇文章的要点和把这些要点组织起来的能力。要写好一篇摘要，你需要做两方面的工作：你需要理解和归文章的要点，然后把你的回答组成一个段落。因此，摘要写作和理解是紧密相连的。

Unit 1 contains twenty-four short pieces. There are some questions under each piece. Your answers to these questions will be in short, simple sentences. Put your answers together. In this way, you will make a short paragraph. Your paragraph will be a summary of the piece.

第1单元共有24篇短文。每篇文章之后均有一系列问题。你应该用简短的简单句来回答这些问题，然后把回答组成一个段落。这个段落就是一篇摘要。

Before you begin each exercise, read these instructions carefully. Read them each time you begin a new piece. They are very important.

开始每次练习前，请仔细阅读题示，每题开始前都要这样做，因为它们很重要。

How to work 做法

1 Read the piece carefully two or three times. Make sure you understand it.

细读课文2-3遍，理解全文。

2 Write an answer to each question. Each answer must be a complete sentence.

回答每个问题，每个答案必须是一个完整的句子。

3 Your answers to the questions must follow one another. Together, they will make a complete paragraph.

你的答案应该句句相连，共同组成一个段落。

4 Read through your work and correct your mistakes.

通读你写的段落，改正错误。

5 Count the number of words in your paragraph. Words like ‘the’, ‘a’, etc. count as single words. Words which are joined by a hyphen (e.g. hold-up) also count as single words. Do not go over the word limit. At the end of your paragraph write the number of words that you have used.

数一下段落的字数。冠词和用连字符相连的词均为一个词。不要超过字数限制。在段落结尾处写上全段的总字数。
Example 范例

Work through this example carefully and then try to do the exercises in Unit 1 in the same way.

Granny Forbes

Mrs. Forbes was very old and very poor. Everybody in the neighbourhood called her Granny Forbes and tried to help her. Some neighbours came in each day and cooked meals for her. Others came and cleaned her room. There was little furniture in her room. It was small, dark, and almost empty. There was a bed and a table, and there were two chairs. In winter, neighbours sometimes brought coal and lit a fire, but Granny’s room was often very cold. Granny lived in poverty all her life. She died at the age of eighty-four. Then her neighbours got a big surprise. She left £50,000!

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.
1 Did Granny Forbes live in poverty all her life or not?
2 Did her neighbours help her, or did her relations help her?
3 Did they cook meals for her every day or not?
4 Did they clean her small, poorly-furnished room or not?
5 Did they sometimes light a fire for her in winter or not?
6 Did Granny Forbes die at the age of eighty-one, or did she die at the age of eighty-four?
7 Did everyone get a surprise or not?
8 How much did she leave?

Answer 参考答案

Granny Forbes lived in poverty all her life. Her neighbours helped her. They cooked meals for her every day. They cleaned her small, poorly-furnished room. They sometimes lit a fire for her in winter. Granny Forbes died at the age of eighty-four. Everyone got a surprise. She left £50,000!

Key structures and special difficulties 关键句型和难点

When you finish the exercise in Summary writing, go on to the language exercises that follow. The information under the title Key structures gives you advice about important problems in grammar. The information under the title Special difficulties gives you advice about particular problems. The twenty-four passages in Unit 1 will help you to understand these problems and to do the language exercises.

当你完成“摘要写作”中的练习后，就可以进行紧随其后的语言练习。“关键句型”是有关语法的练习，“难点”则与一些特殊的语言点有关。第 1 单元的 24 课书将有助于你理解这些问题并完成有关语言的练习。
Lesson 1  A private conversation  私人谈话

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why did the writer complain to the people behind him?

Last week I went to the theatre. I had a very good seat. The play was very interesting. I did not enjoy it. A young man and a young woman were sitting behind me. They were talking loudly. I got very angry. I could not hear the actors. I turned round. I looked at the man and the woman angrily. They did not pay any attention. In the end, I could not bear it. I turned round again. ‘I can’t hear a word!’ I said angrily.

‘It’s none of your business,’ the young man said rudely. ‘This is a private conversation!’

New words and expressions 生词短语

private (title) /praːvɪt/ adj. 私人的
corversation (title) /ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃən/ n. 谈话
theatre (1.1) /ˈθɪətər/ n. 剧场，戏院
seat (1.1) /seɪt/ n. 座位
play (1.1) /pleɪ/ n. 戏
loudly (1.3) /ˈlaʊdlɪ/ adv. 大声地

angry (1.4) /ˈæŋɡri/ adj. 生气的
angrily (1.5) /ˈæŋɡrɪli/ adv. 生气地
attention (1.5) /əˈtɛnʃən/ n. 注意
bear (1.6) /bɛə/ (bore /boʊr/, borne /bɔrn/) v. 容忍
business (1.8) /ˈbɪznəs/ n. 事
rudely (1.8) /ˈruːdli/ adv. 无礼地，粗鲁地

Notes on the text 课文注释

1  go to the theatre, 去看戏。
2  got angry, 生气。
3  turn round, 转身，也可用 turn around。
4  pay attention, 注意。
5  I could not bear it. 我无法忍受。
   其中的 it 是指上文中的那对男女大声说话又不理会作者的愤怒目光。
6  none of your business, 不关你的事。

参考译文

上星期我去看戏。我的座位很好，戏很有意思，但我无法欣赏。一青年男子与一青年女子坐在我身后，大声地说着话。我非常生气，因为我听不见演员在说什么。我回过头去怒视着那一男一女，他们却毫不理会。最后，我忍不住了，又一次回过头去，生气地说：“我一个字也听不见了！”

“不关你事，”那男的毫不客气地说，“这是私人间的谈话！”
Summary writing  摘要写作

**Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.**
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 55 个单词。

1. Where did the writer go last week?  
2. Did he enjoy the play or not?  
3. Who was sitting behind him?  
4. Were they talking loudly, or were they talking quietly?  
5. Could the writer hear the actors or not?  
6. Did he turn round or not?  
7. What did he say?  
8. Did the young man say, 'The play is not interesting,' or did he say, 'This is a private conversation!?'

Key structures  关键句型

Word order in simple statements 简单陈述句的语序

a. A statement tells us about something. All the sentences in the passage are statements. Each of these statements contains one idea. Each statement tells us about one thing. A statement that tells us about one thing is a simple statement.  
陈述句用来叙述一件事情。本段课文中的所有句子都是陈述句，每个句子包含一个概念，告诉我们一件事情。凡是叙述一件事情的陈述句都是简单陈述句。

b. The order of the words in a statement is very important. Look at these two statements. They both contain the words bat they do not mean the same thing:  
陈述句中的语序很重要。注意下面两个句子，每句话所用的单词相同，但句子所表达的意思不同：  
The policeman arrested the thief. 警察逮捕了小偷。  
The thief arrested the policeman. 小偷逮捕了警察。

c. A simple statement can have six parts, but it does not always have so many. Study the order of the words in the following columns. Note that column 6 (When?) can be at the beginning or at the end of a statement.  
一个简单陈述句可以由6部分组成，但是并不是每个句子都有这么多组成部分。注意下表中句子的语序。

Exercises 练习

A. Rule seven columns on a double sheet of paper. At the top of each column, write the numbers and the words given in the Table below. Copy out the rest of the passage. Put the words of each statement in the correct column in the way shown in the Table.  
在一张大纸上画出7栏，在前两行相应的栏内填入下表中第 1、2 行的数字和关键词，将课文中其他句子也按同一形式抄入表内。
Unit 1 Lesson 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Last week</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to the theatre.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>a very good seat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The play</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>very interesting.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>did not enjoy it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A young man and a young woman</td>
<td>were sitting behind me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They</td>
<td>were talking loudly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Use the seven columns again for this exercise. There is a line under each word or group of words in the statements below. The words are not in the right order. Arrange them correctly in the seven columns. Look at this example:

用同一张表格来完成这个练习。下列陈述句中的每个词或词组下面有一条横线，这些词的语序不对。参照例句在表中重新排列各句的语序。请看以下例句:

I last year to America went.

The correct order is: I (who) went (action) to America (where) last year (when).

Or: Last year I went to America.

1 The film I enjoyed yesterday.
2 The news listened to I carefully.
3 Well the man the piano played.
4 Games played yesterday in their room the children quietly.
5 Quietly the door he opened.
6 Immediately left he.
7 A tree in the corner of the garden he planted.
8 Before lunch the letter in his office quickly he read.
9 This morning a book I from the library borrowed.
10 The soup spoil the cook.
11 We at home stay on Sundays.
12 There a lot of people are at the bus stop.
13 The little boy an apple this morning ate greedily in the kitchen.
14 She beautifully draws.
15 Music I like very much.
16 A new school built they in our village last year.
17 The match at four o'clock ended.
18 She a letter from her brother last week received.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The writer turned round. He looked at the man and the woman angrily __________.
   (a) and they stopped talking (b) but they didn’t stop talking
   (c) but they didn’t notice him (d) but they looked at him rudely

2. The young man said, ‘It’s none of your business.’
   (a) He was talking to the young woman.
   (b) He was talking about the play.
   (c) He thought the writer was trying to listen to his conversation with the young woman.
   (d) He thought the writer was asking him a question.

Structure 句型

3. Last week the writer went to the theatre. He was __________ the theatre.
   (a) to (b) at (c) into (d) on

4. The young man and young woman were sitting behind him. He was sitting __________ them.
   (a) before (b) above (c) ahead of (d) in front of

5. ________ did the writer feel? Angry.
   (a) Where (b) Why (c) How (d) When

6. He looked at the man and the woman angrily. He looked at __________ angrily.
   (a) them (b) they (c) their (d) us

7. The young man and the young woman paid __________ attention to the writer.
   (a) none (b) any (c) not any (d) no

Vocabulary 词汇

8. He had a good seat. He was sitting in a good __________.
   (a) chair (b) place (c) armchair (d) class

9. He was a young man. He wasn’t very __________.
   (a) old (b) big (c) tall (d) large

10. The writer looked at the man and the woman angrily. He was very __________.
    (a) sad (b) unhappy (c) cross (d) pleased

11. The writer could not bear it. He could not __________ it.
    (a) carry (b) suffer (c) stand (d) lift

12. The young man spoke rudely. He wasn’t very __________.
    (a) clever (b) rude (c) polite (d) kind

Sentence structure 句子结构

Arrange these words in their correct order, then check your answer against the text.

a me young behind man sitting and were a woman young
Lesson 2  Breakfast or lunch?  早餐还是午餐？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why was the writer's aunt surprised?
为什么作家的姑姑感到惊讶？

It was Sunday. I never get up early on Sundays. I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. Last Sunday I got up very late. I looked out of the window. It was dark outside. 'What a day!' I thought. 'It’s raining again.' Just then, the telephone rang. It was my aunt Lucy. ‘I’ve just arrived by train,’ she said. ‘I’m coming to see you.’

‘But I’m still having breakfast,’ I said.
‘What are you doing?’ she asked.
‘I’m having breakfast,’ I repeated.
‘Dear me,’ she said. ‘Do you always get up so late? It’s one o’clock!’

New words and expressions  生词和短语

until (1.2) /ən’tɪl/ prep. 直到
outside (1.3) /aʊt’sайд/ adv. 外面
ring (1.4) /raɪŋ/ (rang /ræŋ/, rung /rʌŋ/) v. (铃、电话等) 响
aunt (1.4) /ənt/ n. 姑, 姨, 嫂, 舅母
repeat (1.9) /ri’pɪt/ v. 重复

Notes on the text  课文注释

1  on Sundays 每个星期天。星期几的前面用介词 on。
2  What a day! 多么糟糕的天气！这是一个省略的感叹句。完整的句子应该是 What a day it is! 英语中的感叹句常用 what 开头，后面紧跟一个名词或名词性短语（包括系动词），然后是主语和谓语，句尾用感叹号。
3  I’m coming to see you. 这句话中现在进行时用来表示近期按计划或安排要进行的动作。
4  Dear me! 天哪！这也是一个感叹句。

参考译文

那是个星期天，而在星期天我是从来不早起的，有时我要一直吃到吃午饭的时候。上个星期天，我起得很晚。我望望窗外，外面一片昏暗。“鬼天气!”我想，“又下雨了。”正在这时，电话铃响了。是我姑母露西打来的。“我刚下火车，”她说，“我这就来看你。”

“但我还在吃早饭，”我说。
“你在干什么?”她问道。
“我正在吃早饭，”我又说了一遍。 “天啊，”她说，“你总是起得这么晚吗? 现在已经1点钟了!”

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过50个单词。
1. Does the writer always get up early on Sundays, or does he always get up late?
2. Did he get up early last Sunday, or did he get up late?
3. Who telephoned then?
4. Had she just arrived by train, or had she come on foot?
5. Was she coming to see him or not?
6. Did he say, 'I'm still having breakfast', or did he say, 'I am still in bed'?
7. Was his aunt very surprised or not?
8. What was the time?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Now, Often and Always** 表示现在和经常发生的动作

Study these statements and questions from the passage.

**Now**
- It's raining.
- I'm coming to see you.
- I'm still having breakfast.
- What are you doing?

**Often and Always**
- I never get up early on Sundays.
- I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime.
- Do you always get up so late?

Here are some more sentences:
- He is still sleeping. 他仍在睡觉。
- He rarely gets up before 10 o'clock. 他很少在10点以前起床。
- We're enjoying our lunch. 我们正在享用午餐。
- We frequently have lunch at this restaurant. 我们经常在这家餐馆吃午饭。
- I am reading in bed. 我正在床上看书。
- Do you ever read in bed? 你有没有在床上看过书?

**Exercises** 练习

A. Write out these two paragraphs again. Give the right form of the words in parentheses.

1. I am looking out of my window. I can see some children in the street. The children ______ (play) football. They always ______ (play) football in the street. Now a little boy ______ (kick) the ball. Another boy ______ (run) after him but he cannot catch him.

2. I carried my bags into the hall.
   ‘What you ______ (do)?’ my landlady asked.
   ‘I ______ (leave), Mrs. Lynch,’ I answered.
   ‘Why you ______ (leave)?’ she asked. ‘You have been here only a week.’
   ‘A week too long, Mrs. Lynch,’ I said. ‘There are too many rules in this house. My friends never ______ (come) to visit me. Dinner is always at seven o'clock, so I frequently ______ (go) to bed hungry. You don't like noise, so I rarely ______ (listen) to the radio. The heating doesn't work, so I always ______ (feel) cold. This is a terrible place for a man like me. Goodbye, Mrs. Lynch.’
Unit 1 Lesson 2

B Note the position of the words in italics in these sentences.

My friends never come to visit me. 我的朋友们从来不来看我。
I frequently go to bed hungry. 我经常空着肚子上床。
I rarely listen to the radio. 我很少听收音机。
I always feel cold. 我总是感到冷。
I never get up early on Sundays. 星期日我从不早起。
I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. 我有时一直到午饭时间才起床。

Write these sentences again. Put the words in parentheses in the right place.

1 She answers my letters. (rarely)
2 We work after six o’clock. (never)
3 The shops close on Saturday afternoons. (always)
4 Do you go to work by car? (always)
5 Our teacher collects our exercise books. (frequently)
6 We spend our holidays abroad. (sometimes)
7 I buy CDs. (often)
8 Do you buy CDs? (ever)

Special difficulties

What a day!
We can say:
What a terrible day!
What a beautiful picture!
Or: What a beautiful picture this is!

Exercise

Write these sentences again. Each sentence must begin with What.

1 This is a wonderful garden!
2 This is a surprise!
3 He is causing a lot of trouble!
4 They are wonderful actors!
5 She is a hard-working woman!
6 It is a tall building!
7 It’s a terrible film!
8 You are a clever boy!
9 She is a pretty girl!
10 He is a strange guy!
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 When Aunt Lucy telephoned _______.
   (a) the writer was asleep  (b) the writer was still in bed
   (c) the writer had already got up  (d) the writer was having lunch

2 Aunt Lucy was surprised because _______.
   (a) the writer was having lunch  (b) it was one o’clock
   (c) it was late  (d) the writer was having breakfast at lunchtime

Structure 句型

3 He sometimes _______ in bed until lunchtime.
   (a) stay  (b) is staying  (c) stays  (d) staying

4 He stayed in bed until lunchtime. He went _______ bed late last night.
   (a) in  (b) into  (c) to  (d) at

5 He doesn’t get up early on Sundays. He gets up _______.
   (a) late  (b) lately  (c) slowly  (d) hardly

6 _______ did Aunt Lucy come? By train.
   (a) When  (b) How  (c) Why  (d) Where

7 The writer can’t see Aunt Lucy _______. He’s having breakfast.
   (a) still  (b) now  (c) often  (d) always

Vocabulary 词汇

8 He _______ out of the window and saw that it was raining.
   (a) looked  (b) saw  (c) remarked  (d) watched

9 Just then, the telephone rang. It rang _______.
   (a) at once  (b) immediately  (c) again  (d) at that moment

10 She was his aunt, so he was her _______.
    (a) son  (b) grandson  (c) nephew  (d) niece

11 Breakfast is the first _______ of the day.
    (a) food  (b) dinner  (c) lunch  (d) meal

12 Aunt Lucy said, ‘Dear me,’ because she was _______.
    (a) angry  (b) surprised  (c) tired  (d) pleased

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子，然后对照课文第 5 行，核对你的答案。

I arrived by train a moment ago.
I’ve ____________________________ .
Lesson 3  Please send me a card

First listen and then answer the question.

How many cards did the writer send?

Postcards always spoil my holidays. Last summer, I went to Italy. I visited museums and sat in public gardens. A friendly waiter taught me a few words of Italian. Then he lent me a book. I read a few lines, but I did not understand a word. Every day I thought about postcards. My holidays passed quickly, but I did not send cards to my friends. On the last day I made a big decision. I got up early and bought thirty-seven cards. I spent the whole day in my room, but I did not write a single card!

New words and expressions

send (title) /send/ (sent /sent/, sent) v. 寄, 送
postcard (1.1) /'poustkaid n. 明信片
spoil (1.1) /spoil/ (spoiled or spoilt/spoilt/) v. 使索然无味, 损坏
museum (1.2) /'mju:ziəm/ n. 博物馆
public (1.2) /'pʌblɪk/ adj. 公共的
friendly (1.2) /'frendli/ adj. 友好的
waiter (1.2) /'weɪtə/ n. 服务生, 招待员
lend (1.3) /lend/ (lent /lent/, lent) v. 借给
decision (1.6) /dɪ'siʒn/ n. 决定
whole (1.7) /həul/ adj. 整个的
single (1.8) /'sɪŋgəl/ adj. 唯一的, 单一的

Notes on the text

1. a few words, 几句话。
2. lent me a book 中，lent 是“借出”的意思。我们常说 lend sb. sth. 或 lend sb. to sb.。borrow 是“借入”的意思, 常用的结构是 borrow sth. or borrow sth. from sb。

参考译文

明信片总搅得我假日不得安宁。去年夏天，我去了意大利。我参观了博物馆，还去了公园。一位好客的服务员教了我几句意大利语，之后还借给我一本书。我读了几行，但一个字也不懂。我每天都想着明信片的事。假期过得真快，可我还没给我的朋友们寄过一张明信片。到了最后一天，我作出了一项重大决定。我早早起了床，买来了37张明信片。我在房间里关了整整一天。然而竟连一张明信片也没写成！

Summary writing

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. Do postcards always spoil the writer’s holidays or not?
2. Where did he spend his holidays last summer?
3. What did he think about every day?
Did he send any cards to his friends or not?
How many cards did he buy on the last day?
Where did he stay all day?
Did he write any cards or not?

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? 一般过去时

Read this short conversation. Pay close attention to the verbs in italics. Each of these verbs tells us what happened.
读一读下面的这段对话，要特别注意用斜体印出的动词。每个动词都告诉我们发生了什么事情。

POLICEMAN: Did you see the accident, sir?
先生，你看到那个事故吗？

MAN: Yes, I did. The driver of that car hit that post over there.
是的，我看到了。那辆车的司机撞到那边的杆子上？

POLICEMAN: What happened?
发生了什么事情？

MAN: A dog ran across the road and the driver tried to avoid it. The car suddenly came towards me. It climbed on to the pavement and crashed into that post.
一条狗穿过马路，那位司机企图躲开狗。突然，汽车朝我开过来。它走上人行道，撞到那根杆子上。

POLICEMAN: What did you do?
你做了什么？

MAN: I ran across the street after the dog.
我穿过马路去追狗。

POLICEMAN: Why did you do that? Were you afraid of the car?
你为什么这样做呢？你怕汽车吗？

MAN: I wasn’t afraid of the car. I was afraid of the driver. The driver got out of the car and began shouting at me. He was very angry with me. You see, it was my dog.
我不怕汽车。我怕那个司机。他下了车，开始朝我喊了起来。他对我很生气。你知道的，那是我的狗。

Exercises 练习

A Look at the passage ‘Please send me a card’. Put a line under all the verbs which tell us what happened to the writer when he was on holiday in Italy.
重读课文，找出那些说明作者在意大利度假时所发生的事情的动词，在这些动词的下面划上横线。

B Give the correct form of all the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

Last summer, I _______ (go) to Italy. I _______ (visit) museums and _______ (sit) in public gardens. A friendly waiter ________ (teach) me a few words of Italian. Then he ________ (lend) me a book. I ________ (read) a few lines, but I ________ (not understand) a word. Every day I ________ (think) about postcards. My holidays ________ (pass) quickly, but I ________ (not send) cards to my friends. On the last day, I ________ (make) a big decision. I ________ (get) up early and ________ (buy) thirty-seven cards. I ________ (spend) the whole day in my room, but I ________ (not write) a single card!
Unit 1 Lesson 3

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses in the passage below. Each verb must tell us what happened.

My friend, Roy, __________ (die) last year. He __________ (leave) me his CD player and his collection of CDs. Roy __________ (spend) a lot of money on CDs. He __________ (buy) one or two new CDs every week. He never __________ (go) to the cinema or to the theatre. He __________ (stay) at home every evening and __________ (listen) to music. He often __________ (lend) CDs to his friends. Sometimes they __________ (keep) them. He __________ (lose) many CDs in this way.

Special difficulties 难点

英语中有些动词可以带两个宾语，这些动词大多具有“给与”的含义。如课文中第 3 行的句子“He lent me a book”中，动词 lent 后面带有表示动作结果的直接宾语 (a book) 和表示动作目标的间接宾语 (me)。间接宾语在大多数情况下置于直接宾语之前，如果间接宾语在后，间接宾语前必须加 “to”（表示动作对什么人而做）或 “for”（表示动作为什么人而做），因此，课文中的句子也可以改写成：He lent a book to me. 注意以下例句。

**Instead of saying:**
除了这种表述方法外：
- He lent me a book.
- He lent a book to me.
- He sent me a card.
- He sent a card to me.
- He passed me the salt.
- He passed the salt to me.
- She bought me a tie.
- She bought a tie for me.
- She made me a cake.
- She made a cake for me.

**Exercise 练习**

Write each of the following sentences in a different way:

改写下列句子：

1. He paid the shopkeeper some money.
   *We can say:*
   He bought a book for us.

2. He handed me the prize.
   He gave me the prize.

3. The waiter brought a bottle of beer to the man.
   He passed the beer to the man.

4. He sold all his books to me.
   He sold the books for me.

5. The shop assistant found some curtain material for me.
   He gave me some curtain material.

6. He did me a big favour.
   He helped me out.

7. She showed her husband her new hat.
   She gave her husband a new hat.

8. She promised a reward to the finder.
   She promised a reward for the finder.

9. He gave his son some advice.
   He advised his son.

10. His uncle left him some money.
    He bequeathed some money to him.

11. He is teaching English to us.
    He teaches us English.

12. I bought this bunch of flowers for you.
    I gave you these flowers.

13. Bring that book to me please.
    He offered me a cigarette.

14. He offered me a cigarette.
    He offered a cigarette to me.

15. Read me the first paragraph.
    I ordered some soup for you.

16. I’ve ordered some soup for you.
    I ordered some soup for you.

17. I owe him a lot of money.
    I owe him some money.

18. Pass the mustard to your father.
    He gave me some mustard.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The writer _______.
   (a) doesn’t like buying postcards
   (b) doesn’t like receiving postcards
   (c) doesn’t like writing postcards
   (d) doesn’t like postcards

2. What was the writer’s ‘big decision’?
   (a) He decided to write postcards to his friends. (b) He decided to spend the whole day in his room.
   (c) He decided to buy a lot of postcards. (d) He decided not to write a single card.

Structure 句型

3. Last summer he went to Italy. He was _______ Italy last summer.
   (a) at (b) to (c) in (d) on

4. _______ him a few words of Italian? The waiter.
   (a) Who taught (b) Who did teach (c) What did he teach (d) Whom did he teach

5. He was a friendly waiter. He spoke to the writer _______.
   (a) friend (b) as friends (c) like friends (d) in a friendly way

6. The writer _______ a few lines, but he didn’t understand a word.
   (a) reads (b) read (c) red (d) reading

7. He spent the whole day in his room. He was in his room _______.
   (a) the hole (b) the all (c) all (d) all of

Vocabulary 词汇

8. A waiter usually works in a _______.
   (a) public garden (b) shop (c) restaurant (d) private house

   (a) lent (b) borrowed (c) took (d) stole

10. On the last day he made a big decision. It was the _______ day of his holiday.
    (a) final (b) end (c) latest (d) bottom

11. He made a big decision. He _______.
    (a) thought about it (b) made up his mind (c) changed his mind (d) made a wish

12. He didn’t write a single card. So he _______.
    (a) wrote only one (b) didn’t write even one
    (c) wrote just one (d) wrote all the cards except one

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子, 然后对照课文第 5-6 行, 核对你的答案。

I did not send my friends cards.
I did not send ____________________________.
Lesson 4  An exciting trip  激动人心的旅行

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why is Tim finding this trip exciting?

I have just received a letter from my brother, Tim. He is in Australia.
He has been there for six months. Tim is an engineer. He is working
for a big firm and he has already visited a great number of different
places in Australia. He has just bought an Australian car and has
gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the centre of Australia. He
will soon visit Darwin. From there, he will fly to Perth. My brother
has never been abroad before, so he is finding this trip very exciting.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

exciting (title) /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/ adj. 令人兴奋的
receive (1.1) /rɪˈsiːv/ v. 接受，收到
firm (1.3) /fɜːm/ n. 商行，公司
different (1.3) /ˈdɪfrənt/ adj. 不同的
centre (1.5) /ˈsɛntə/ n. 中心
abroad (1.7) /əˈbrɔːd/ adv. 在国外

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. He has been there for six months. 他在那儿已经住了 6 个月了。注意动词的现在完成时，可以参看第 1 册第 83 至 87 课。
2. a great number of ... 许多……，用于修饰复数可数名词。
3. in the centre of ... 在……中部。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 50 个单词。
1. What has the writer just received from his brother, Tim?
2. Is Tim an engineer, or is he a doctor?
3. How long has he been in Australia?
4. Has he already visited many places or not?
5. Where is he now?
6. Has Tim ever been abroad before or not?
7. Is he enjoying his trip very much or not?
**Key structures** 关键句型

**What has happened? 现在完成时**

These sentences are from the passage. Study them carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics.

I have *just* received a letter from my brother, Tim. (1.1)
He has *already* visited a great number of different places. (II.3-4)

He has *just* bought an Australian car and has gone to Alice Springs. (II.4-5)
My brother has *never* been abroad before. (II.6-7)

He has been there *for six months.* (1.2)

Here are some more sentences.

He has retired *now.* 他现在已经退休了。
Have you *ever* been to Australia? 你去过澳大利亚吗?
Have you read any good books *lately*? 你最近有没有读到好书?

I haven’t been very *successful so far.* 至今我不十分成功。
The train has not *arrived yet.* 火车还没有到。

**Exercises 练习**

A Write these sentences again. Put the words in parentheses in the right place.

改写以下句子，将括号中表示时间的状语放在恰当的位置。

1 I have had breakfast. (just) 6 I have been to Switzerland. (never)
2 He has been in prison. (for six months) 7 He is a wonderful runner. He has broken two records. (so far)
3 The police have not caught the thief. (yet) 8 I haven’t seen George. (lately)
4 You have asked that question three times. (already)
5 Have you been to Switzerland? (ever)

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

I just __________ (receive) a letter from my brother, Tim. He is in Australia. He __________ (be) there for six months. Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm and he already __________ (visit) a great number of different places in Australia. He just __________ (buy) an Australian car and __________ (go) to Alice Springs... My brother never __________ (be) abroad before, so he is finding this trip very exciting.

C What is happening? What has happened? 现在进行时与现在完成时

Read these two statements.

The bell is ringing.
The bell has just rung.

Complete the following in the same way.

模仿例句完成以下练习。

1 He is leaving the house. He has just __________
2 He is having breakfast. He has __________
3 She is writing a letter. __________
4 My sister is turning on the radio. __________
5 My mother is making the bed. __________
6 She is buying a new hat. __________
D  Read these two statements.
He is still having breakfast. He hasn’t had breakfast yet.
Complete the following in the same way.
1 He is still washing the dishes.
2 She is still making the beds.
3 He is still combing his hair.
4 She is still sweeping the carpet.
5 We are still reading ‘Macbeth’.

E  Read these two sentences.
I’ve already had lunch.
Have you had lunch yet?
Ask questions in the same way.
1 I’ve already seen the new play at ‘The Globe’.
2 I’ve already taken my holidays.
3 I’ve already read this book.
4 I’ve already done my homework.
5 I’ve already finished my work.

Special difficulties

Words often confused

Receive and Take.
receive: I have just received a letter from my brother. 我刚从我弟弟那里收到一封信。
take: Someone has taken my pen. 有人拿走了我的钢笔。take 是“拿走”的意思。

Exercise

Choose the correct words in the following.
Yesterday I (took) (received) a present from Aunt Jane.
2 Have you (taken) (received) a letter from him yet?
3 I (took) (received) the letter with me.
4 He has (taken) (received) some flowers to her.
5 Why did you (receive) (take) this book off the shelf?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Only one of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) The writer has been in Australia for six months.
   (b) Tim is a mechanic and he’s working in Australia.
   (c) Tim is working for an Austrian firm.
   (d) Tim is working for a big firm as an engineer.
2 Only one of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) Tim has been in Darwin for six months.
   (b) It’s the first time Tim has ever been to another country.
   (c) Perth is in the centre of Australia.
   (d) Tim’s brother has never been abroad before.

Structure 句型
3 Tim is in Australia. He went ________ Australia six months ago.
   (a) to (b) in (c) at (d) into
4 Tim is in Australia. How long ________ there?
   (a) is he (b) has he been (c) has he (d) was he
5 Tim has been in Australia for six months. His brother hasn’t seen him ________ January.
   (a) for (b) since (c) from (d) by
6 He has just bought an Australian car. He bought one ________.
   (a) a short time ago (b) a long time ago (c) last year (d) six months ago
7 He has just gone to Alice Springs. He has never ________ there before.
   (a) went (b) being (c) been (d) was

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Tim is working for a big firm. He is working for a big ________.
   (a) society (b) company (c) factory (d) store
9 He has visited a great number of different places. He hasn’t stayed in ________ place.
   (a) the only (b) a similar (c) the same (d) alike
10 Alice Springs is a small town. A town is usually ________.
   (a) bigger than a village but smaller than a city (b) bigger than a city
   (c) the same size as a city (d) the same size as a village
11 He will soon visit Darwin. He will visit Darwin ________.
   (a) quickly (b) for a short time (c) shortly (d) in a hurry
12 He will fly to Perth. He will go there ________.
   (a) with air (b) in air (c) by air (d) through air
Lesson 5  No wrong numbers  无错号之虞

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What does ‘No wrong numbers’ mean?

Mr. James Scott has a garage in Silbury and now he has just bought another garage in Pinhurst. Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, but Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage, so he has just bought twelve pigeons. Yesterday, a pigeon carried the first message from Pinhurst to Silbury. The bird covered the distance in three minutes. Up to now, Mr. Scott has sent a great many requests for spare parts and other urgent messages from one garage to the other. In this way, he has begun his own private ‘telephone’ service.

New words and expressions 生词短语

pigeon (1.4) /ˈpiːdʒən/ n. 鸽子
message (1.5) /ˈmesidʒ/ n. 信息
cover (1.5) /ˈkʌvər/ v. 越过
distance (1.5) /ˈdistəns/ n. 距离
request (1.6) /rɪˈkwest/ n. 要求，请求
spare part (1.7) /speərˈpɑːt/ 备件
service (11.8-9) /ˈsɜːvɪs/ n. 业务，服务

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. from Silbury: 介词 from 作“距……”、“离……”讲，常与 away 连用。如：It is far (away) from here. 离这里很远。
2. up to now (＝ up till now)，到现在为止。作时间状语，句子的时态多用现在完成时。
3. a great many, 许多的，其中 great 表示数量很大；只能同可数名词的复数连用。

参考译文

詹姆斯·斯科特先生在锡尔伯里有一个汽车修理部。现在他刚在平赫斯特买了另一个汽车修理部。平赫斯特离锡尔伯里只有 5 英里，但詹姆斯·斯科特先生未能为他的新的汽车修理部搞到一部电话机，所以他买了 12 只鸽子。昨天，一只鸽子带一封从平赫斯特带到锡尔伯里。这只鸽子只用了 3 分钟就飞完了全程。到现在为止，斯科特先生从一个汽车修理部向另一个发送了大量索赔备件的信件和其他紧急函件。就这样，他开始了自己的私人“电话”业务。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. Where has Mr. Scott opened his second garage?
2. Where is his first garage?
3 How far away is Silbury?
4 Can Mr. Scott get a telephone for his new garage or not?
5 What has he bought?
6 In how many minutes do they carry messages from one garage to the other?

**Key structures 关键句型**

What happened? What has happened? 一般过去时与现在完成时

Study these sentences. Pay close attention to the words in italics.

What happened? (KS 3) (第 3 课关键句型)

在第 3 课的“关键句型”部分，我们讨论了英语中的一般过去时。一般过去时用来表示过去某一特定时间发生的事情或动作，因此，句中常有表示过去某一时刻的短语。请注意句子中斜体的表示时间的短语。

I wrote to him last month. 上个月我给他写了信。
I bought this car last year. 去年我买了这辆车。
He came to see me this morning. 今天上午他来看我。
I saw him ten minutes ago. 我 10 分钟前见到了他。

What has happened? (KS 4) (第 4 课关键句型)

在第 4 课的“关键句型”部分，我们又讨论了现在完成时。现在完成时用来表示发生在过去但对现在仍有影响的一个动作。在现在完成时的句子中常有一些表示时间的词和短语。请注意句子中斜体的时间状语。

The train has just left the station. 火车刚刚驶离车站。
I've already seen that film. 那个电影我已经看过了。
He has been abroad for six months. 他在国外已 6 个月了。
Have you ever met him before? 你以前见过他吗?
I have never met him before. 我从未见过他。
I have not finished work yet. 我还没有做完工作。

There have been a great number of accidents lately. 最近事故极多。
Up till now he has won five prizes. 至今为止他已赢得了 5 个奖。

**Exercises 练习**

A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what happened and what has happened.
在文中的所有动词下面划上横线，并指出哪些是一般过去时，哪些是现在完成时。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

Mr. James Scott has a garage in Silbury and now he just ________ (buy) another garage in Pinhurst. Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, but Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage, so he just ________ (buy) twelve pigeons. Yesterday, a pigeon ________ (carry) the first message from Pinhurst to Silbury. The bird ________ (cover) the distance in three minutes. Up to now, Mr. Scott ________ (send) a great many requests for spare parts and other urgent messages from one garage to the other. In this way, he ________ (begin) his own private ‘telephone’ service.
Unit 1 Lesson 5

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 What _______ you _______ (buy) yesterday?
2 Up till now, he never _______ (lend) me anything.
3 _______ you (burn) those old papers yet?
4 He _______ (fight) in Flanders in the First World War.
5 They already _______ (leave).
6 When _______ you _______ (lose) your umbrella?
7 _______ you _______ (listen) to the concert last night?
8 We just _______ (win) the match.

Special difficulties 难点.

Words often confused or misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

a Phrases with the word way. 带 way 的短语

课文的第 8-9 行有这样一句话，“In this way, he has begun his own private 'telephone' service.” 以下是与 way 这个词组成的短语。

In the way: Please move this chair. It is in the way. 请挪一下这把椅子, 它挡住了。
Do your work in the way I have shown you. 按我给你示范的方法来做你的工作。

On the way: On the way to the station, I bought some chocolate. 在去车站的路上我买了些巧克力。

In this way: He saves old envelopes. In this way, he has collected a great many stamps. 他搜集旧信封, 用这种方法他收集了大量的邮票。

By the way: By the way, have you seen Harry recently? 顺便问一句, 你最近见过哈里吗?

In a way: In a way, it is an important book. 在某种意义上, 这是一本重要的书。

Exercise 练习

Supply the correct phrases with way in the following.

用带有 way 的短语填空。

1 _______ from Athens to London, the plane stopped at Rome.
2 I cooked this _______ you showed me.
3 _______ , where is my coat?
4 Yes, _______ he has been very successful.
5 Children get _______ during the holidays.

b Spare and To Spare (‘spare parts’ [1.7]). 形容词 spare 和动词 to spare 的区别

Note the following.

细读下面的例句, 注意 spare 这个词作形容词和动词用时的不同含义。
I cannot spare the time. 我花不起时间。
I have no time to spare. 我没有时间。
I cannot buy spare parts for this car. 我买不着这辆车的备件。
There is a spare room in this house. 在这所房子里有一间空房。
Caligula spared the slave’s life. 卡里格勒饶了那个奴隶的命。

Exercise 练习

Rewrite these sentences using spare or to spare in place of the words or phrases in italics. Make any other necessary changes.

改写下面的句子, 用 spare 的形容词形式或动词形式来代替句子中用斜体书写的单词或短语, 并对句中的其他部分作必要的改动。

1 There is an extra wheel in the back of the car.
2 I always go on excursions in my free time.
3 ‘Have you any old clothes that you do not want?’ he asked.
4 The guest slept in the room we do not use.
5 ‘Do not kill me!’ begged the prisoner.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Mr. Scott hasn’t got a telephone in his new garage because ________.
   (a) it isn’t far from his old garage, so he doesn’t need one  (b) he has twelve pigeons
   (c) he can’t get one  (d) it’s too expensive
2 Mr. Scott keeps pigeons because ________.
   (a) he uses them to send messages  (b) it’s his hobby
   (c) he has two garages  (d) he likes them

Structure 句型
3 Mr. Scott has a garage. The garage is ________.
   (a) to him  (b) of him  (c) of his  (d) his
4 Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his garage. ________ he has just bought twelve pigeons.
   (a) That’s so  (b) That’s why  (c) Because  (d) For
5 He has just bought twelve pigeons. When did he ________ them?
   (a) bought  (b) buys  (c) buy  (d) buying
6 What’s the distance from Pinhurst to Silbury? How ________ is Pinhurst ________ Silbury?
   (a) long ago ... until  (b) long ... away  (c) away ... till  (d) far ... from
7 The pigeon flew from one garage to the other ________ three minutes.
   (a) in  (b) into  (c) with  (d) on

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Mr. Scott has a garage in Silbury. His ________ garage is in Pinhurst.
   (a) another  (b) other  (c) else  (d) different
9 Mr. Scott can’t get a telephone. Telephones are hard to ________.
   (a) take  (b) receive  (c) obtain  (d) find
10 He has sent requests for spare parts. He has ________ spare parts.
    (a) asked  (b) asked for  (c) begged  (d) pleased
11 Urgent messages are important, so they must be sent ________.
    (a) quickly  (b) slowly  (c) by hand  (d) largely
12 Mr. Scott’s ‘telephone service’ is private. It is ________.
    (a) general  (b) spare  (c) secret  (d) his own

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences together with but and so. Then check your answer against the text.

Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury. Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage. He has just bought twelve pigeons.
Lesson 6  Percy Buttons  珀西·巴顿斯

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Who is Percy Buttons?

I have just moved to a house in Bridge Street. Yesterday a beggar knocked at my door. He asked me for a meal and a glass of beer. In return for this, the beggar stood on his head and sang songs. I gave him a meal. He ate the food and drank the beer. Then he put a piece of cheese in his pocket and went away. Later a neighbour told me about him. Everybody knows him. His name is Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in the street once a month and always asks for a meal and a glass of beer.

New words and expressions
beggar /'begə/ n. 乞丐
food /fu:d/ n. 食物
pocket /ˈpokit/ n. 衣服口袋
call /kɔ:l/ v. 拜访，光顾

Notes on the text
1. He asked me for a meal and a glass of beer. 他向我索要一顿饭和一杯啤酒。
2. in return for this, 这是作为回报。
3. stand on one's head, 倒立。
4. He calls at every house in the street. 他光顾街上的每一幢房子。

Summary writing
Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 55 个单词。
1. Has the writer just moved to a house in Bridge Street or not?
2. Who knocked at her door yesterday?
3. Did he sing songs, or did he ask for money?
4. What did the writer give him in return for this?
5. What is the beggar's name?
6. Does he call at every house once a week or once a month?
**Key structures** 关键句型

**A. The and Some**

1. **A and Some** 定冠词和表示不确定数量的some
   - 我们可以说：
     - a pen, some pens; a book, some books; a picture, some pictures; a glass of milk, some milk; a bag of flour, some flour; a bar of soap, some soap.
   - We can also use some nouns without **a** or **some** in general statements. Read these sentences carefully.
     - 昨天我买了一本书。书不很贵。
     - I have just drunk a glass of milk. Milk is very refreshing. 我刚才喝了一杯奶，牛奶很提神。
     - Mrs. Jones bought a bag of flour, a bag of sugar and some tea. 琼斯太太买了一袋面粉、一袋糖和一些茶叶。
     - She always buys flour, sugar and tea at the grocer's. 她总是在食品店买面粉、糖和茶叶。

2. **A and The** 定冠词和定冠词
   - Read this paragraph. Pay close attention to the words **a** and **the**.
   - 注意以下段落中 **a** 和 **the** 的用法：
     - A man is walking towards me. *The man* is carrying a parcel. *The parcel* is full of meat. *The man* has just bought some meat. *A dog* is following *the man*. *The dog* is looking at *the parcel*. 一个男人朝我走来。他拿着一个包。包里装满了肉。他刚刚买了些肉。一条狗跟着他，它正盯着他的那个包。

3. **Names** 姓名
   - We cannot put **a** or **the** in front of names.
   - 姓名前不能用定冠词或定冠词。
     - John lives in England. He has a house in London. His house is in Duke Street. Last year he went to Madrid. John likes Spain very much. He goes there every summer. 约翰住在英国。他在伦敦有一栋房子。那栋房子在公爵街。去年他去了趟马德里。约翰很喜欢西班牙，他每年都去那里。

**Exercises** 练习

A Write these words again. Put in **a** or **some** in front of each one.
   - 重抄以下词组，分别加上 **a** 或 **some**。
     - meat, desk, tobacco, tin of beans, comb, city, cloth, oil, bottle of beer, day, word, student, sugar, rain, orange, rubber

B Read the passage again. Put a line under the words **a** and **the**.
   - 重读课文，划出不定冠词和定冠词。

C Put in the words **a** or **the** where necessary. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
   - 根据需要填上不定冠词或定冠词。完成练习后再对照课文：
     - I have just moved to _______ house in _______ Bridge Street. Yesterday _______ beggar knocked at my door. He asked me for _______ meal and _______ glass of beer. In return for this, _______ beggar stood on his head and sang _______ songs. I gave him _______ meal. He ate _______ food and drank _______ beer. Then he put _______ piece of cheese in his pocket and went away. Later _______ neighbour told me
Unit 1  Lesson 6

about him. Everybody knows him. His name is __________ Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in ________ street once ________ month and always asks for ________ meal and ________ glass of beer.

D Write sentences using a, the or some with the following:

用下列词组造句，选用 a, the 或 some：

1. found/coin/garden. 2. put/sugar/my tea. 3. cut/wood/fire. 4. bought/newspaper. 5. made/coffee. 6. like/curtains in this room.

Special difficulties 难点

Some verbs change in meaning when we put short words after them. Read these sentences. Do you know what the verbs in italics mean?

1. I put your book on the shelf. I put on my hat and left the house.
   Who took my umbrella?
2. It was very hot, so I took off my coat.
3. Come and look at my photograph album. I am looking for my pen. I lost it this morning.
4. Will you look after the children for me please? Will you look after the children for me please?

Read these sentences. Each one contains the verb knock. The verb has a different meaning in each sentence.

1. A beggar knocked at my door. (1.2)
   He always knocks off at six o'clock. (He finishes his work.)
2. I knocked the vase off the table and broke it. (It hit him hard and made him fall.)
3. He always knocks off at six o'clock. (He finishes his work.)
4. In the fight, the thief knocked the policeman out. (The policeman was unconscious for three minutes.)

Exercises 练习

A Put in the correct words.

根据上下文填入合适的介词或副词。

1. He did not know how to fight, but he knocked the boxer ________.
2. This flowerpot is broken, Who knocked it ________?
3. I knocked ________ early yesterday and went to a football match.
4. Listen! Someone is knocking ________ the window!

B Rewrite the following sentences using the correct form of the verb knock in place of the words in italics.

改写以下句子，用含有 knock 的短语动词来替换以下句子中带斜体的词组。

1. The old lady hit the thief over the head with a candlestick and now he is unconscious.
2. At what time do you finish work every day?
3. The shopkeeper reduced the price of all his goods by 20%. 
Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1. Percy Buttons stood on his head and sang songs because _______.
   (a) he wanted a piece of cheese
   (b) he liked doing this
   (c) he was a beggar
   (d) he wanted to ‘pay’ for his meal in this way

2. The writer didn’t know about Percy Buttons because _______.
   (a) she was new to the neighbourhood
   (b) he had never called at that house before
   (c) he was a beggar
   (d) he didn’t live near her

Structure

3. The writer has just moved to a new house. She was _______ yesterday.
   (a) at house
   (b) to the house
   (c) at home
   (d) in the home

4. She gave _______.
   (a) to him a meal
   (b) a meal for him
   (c) him to a meal
   (d) a meal to him

5. A neighbour told me about him. He _______ Percy Buttons was a beggar.
   (a) told
   (b) said me
   (c) told to me
   (d) said

   (a) They all
   (b) Each
   (c) Every
   (d) All they

7. _______ does he call? Once a month.
   (a) How seldom
   (b) How long
   (c) How soon
   (d) How often

Vocabulary

8. A beggar is a person who _______.
   (a) asks for money but doesn’t work
   (b) asks for food
   (c) works hard
   (d) is out of work

9. You can have a meal _______.
   (a) only in the morning
   (b) at any time
   (c) only at midday
   (d) only in the evening

10. She gave him a piece of cheese. He put the _______ of cheese in his pocket.
    (a) bit
    (b) bar
    (c) block
    (d) packet

11. He calls at every house in the street. He _______ everyone.
    (a) shouts at
    (b) calls
    (c) cries out at
    (d) visits

12. All the houses in our _______ are the same age and size.
    (a) street
    (b) way
    (c) road
    (d) route

Sentence structure

Arrange these groups of words in the correct order, then check your answer against the text.

and a glass of beer/he calls/for a meal/at every house/and always asks/in the street/once a month
Lesson 7  Too late  为时太晚

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Did the detectives save the diamonds?

The plane was late and detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. A few hours earlier, someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield. Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House. While two detectives were keeping guard at the door, two others opened the parcel. To their surprise, the precious parcel was full of stones and sand!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

detective (1.1) /dɪˈtɛktɪv/ n. 侦探
airport (1.1) /ˈeəpɔːt/ n. 机场
expect (1.2) /ɪkˈspekt/ v. 期待，等待
valuable (1.2) /ˈvæljuəbəl/ adj. 贵重的
parcel (1.2) /ˈpærkl/ n. 包裹
diamond (1.2) /ˈdaɪəmənd/ n. 钻石
steal (1.4) /stiːl/ (stole /stoʊl/, stolen /ˈstəʊlən/) v. 偷
main (1.5) /meɪn/ adj. 主要的
airfield (1.6) /ˈeəfɪلد/ n. 飞机起落的场地
guard (1.8) /ɡɑːd/ n. 警戒，守卫
precious (1.9) /ˈprɪʃəs/ adj. 珍贵的
stone (1.9) /stoun/ n. 石子
sand (1.9) /sænd/ n. 沙子

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 detectives were waiting at the airport all morning, 侦探们在机场等了整整一上午。句中的动词时态是过去进行时，过去进行时常用来表示过去某时正在进行的情况或动作。本课课文中 4 个句子使用了过去进行时。参看第 1 册第 117-119 等课中的例句。
2 keep guard, 守卫。
3 to their surprise, 使他们吃惊的是。

参考译文

飞机误点了，侦探们在机场等了整整一上午。他们正期待从南非来的包裹中装着钻石的贵重包裹。数小时以前，有人向警方报告，说有人企图偷走这些钻石。当飞机到达时，一些侦探等候在主楼内，另一些侦探则守候在停机坪上。有两个人把包裹拿下飞机，进了海关。这时两个侦探把住门口，另外两个侦探打开了包裹。令他们吃惊的是，那珍贵的包裹里面装的全是石头和沙子！
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. How long were detectives waiting at the airport?
2. What were they expecting from South Africa?
3. Where did two men take the parcel after the arrival of the plane?
4. How many detectives opened it?
5. What was the parcel full of?

Key structures 关键句型

What were you doing when I telephoned? 过去进行时

Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics.

When I was watering the garden, it began to rain. 当我正在花园里浇水时，开始下雨了。
I was having breakfast when the telephone rang. 我正在吃早饭时，电话铃响了。
While we were having a party, the lights went out. 当我们正在聚会时，灯熄灭了。
George was reading while his wife was listening to the radio. 乔治在看书时，他的妻子在听收音机。
As I was getting on the bus, I slipped and hurt my foot. 当我上公共汽车时，我滑了一下，撞伤了我的脚。
Someone knocked at the door just as I was getting into the bath. 就在我要进浴室洗澡时有人敲门。
The plane was late and detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. (II.1-2) 飞机晚点了，侦探在机场等了一个上午。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what was happening.

B What was happening when ...?

Read the passage again then answer these questions. Write a complete sentence in answer to each question.

1. What was happening when the plane arrived?
2. What was happening when two of the detectives opened the parcel?

C Write sentences of your own in answer to these questions. Each answer must begin with ‘I was...’

1. What were you doing when I telephoned you?
2. What were you reading when I saw you in the library this morning?
3. What were you saying when I interrupted you?

D What was happening? What happened? 过去进行时与一般过去时。

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. As my father ________ (leave) the house, the postman ________ (arrive).
Unit 1 Lesson 7

2 Tom ______ (work) in the garden while I ______ (sit) in the sun.
3 As I ______ (walk) down the street, I ______ (meet) Charlie.
4 While he ______ (read) the letter, he ______ (hear) a knock at the door.
5 While mother ______ (prepare) lunch, Janet ______ (set) the table.
6 She ______ (drop) the tray when I ______ (speak) to her.

Special difficulties 难点

Two men took the parcel off the plane. (II.6-7)

Do you remember these sentences? (SD6)

你还记得这些句子吗？（参见第 6 课的难点）

Come and look at my photograph album.

I am looking for my pen. I lost it this morning.

Will you look after the children for me please?

Now read these sentences:

Exercise 练习

We can change the position of the words in italics in some of the sentences below. For instance, we can change the position of the word out in this sentence: He put out the fire. But we cannot change the position of the word for in this sentence: He is looking for his pen. Where possible, change the position of the words in italics in the sentences below.

在下面的有些句子中我们可以调换用斜体印出的词的位置。比如说，在 “He put out the fire.” 这句话中，我们可以改变 out 的位置 (He put the fire out.)。但是，在 “He is looking for his pen.” 中，我们却不能改变 for 的位置，如有可能，调换下列句子中用斜体印出的词的位置。

1 He gave away all his books.
2 She woke up the children early this morning.
3 He is looking for his umbrella.
4 They cut off the king’s head.
5 Put on your hat and coat.
6 Give it back to your brother.
7 Help me to lift up this table.
8 Take off your shoes and put on your slippers.
9 He is looking at the picture.
10 Send her away or she will cause trouble.
11 They have pulled down the old building.
12 Make up your mind.
13 He asked for permission to leave.
14 She threw away all those old newspapers.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The detectives were at the airport ________.
   (a) to meet a plane  
   (b) to prevent a robbery  
   (c) to watch the building  
   (d) because the plane was late

2. The detectives ________.
   (a) found the diamonds  
   (b) didn’t open the parcel  
   (c) didn’t prevent the robbery  
   (d) caught the thieves

Structure 句型

3. ________ were detectives waiting? At the airport.
   (a) Why  
   (b) When  
   (c) Where  
   (d) What

4. ________ were they expecting? A valuable parcel of diamonds.
   (a) Why  
   (b) When  
   (c) Where  
   (d) What

5. Someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. This happened ________ the plane arrived.
   (a) before  
   (b) after  
   (c) when  
   (d) as soon as

6. The detectives went into the building and waited ________.
   (a) in  
   (b) into  
   (c) inside  
   (d) for

7. Two men took the parcel off the plane. They ________.
   (a) took off it  
   (b) it took off  
   (c) took off  
   (d) took it off

Vocabulary 词汇

8. The detectives were ________ a valuable parcel of diamonds.
   (a) expecting  
   (b) waiting  
   (c) expecting for  
   (d) expecting to

9. The parcel was valuable. It was ________.
   (a) worth  
   (b) worthy  
   (c) precious  
   (d) value

10. The thieves wanted to ________ the diamonds.
    (a) rob  
    (b) steal  
    (c) take from  
    (d) take to

11. The detectives waited inside the main building. This was the ________ building.
    (a) most important  
    (b) smallest  
    (c) first  
    (d) greatest

12. Someone had filled the parcel with stones and sand. It was ________ stones and sand.
    (a) full with  
    (b) full of  
    (c) full by  
    (d) full in

Sentence structure 句子结构

Arrange these groups of words in the correct order, then check your answer against the text.
按照正确的语序排列以下词组，然后对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。

into the Customs House/two men/and carried it/told the parcel/off the plane
Lesson 8  The best and the worst  最好的和最差的

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why is Joe’s garden the most beautiful one in the town?
乔的花园为什么是镇上最美的？

Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in our town. Nearly everybody enters for ‘The Nicest Garden Competition’ each year, but Joe wins every time. Bill Frith’s garden is larger than Joe’s. Bill works harder than Joe and grows more flowers and vegetables, but Joe’s garden is more interesting. He has made neat paths and has built a wooden bridge over a pool. I like gardens too, but I do not like hard work. Every year I enter for the garden competition too, and I always win a little prize for the worst garden in the town!

New words and expressions  生词和短语

competition (1.2) /ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃn/ n. 比赛，竞赛
neat (1.5) /niːt/ adj. 整齐的，整洁的
path (1.5) /paːθ/ n. 小路，小径
wooden (1.6) /ˈwʊdn/ adj. 木头的
pool (1.6) /pʊl/ n. 水池

Notes on the text  课文注释

1. Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in our town. 乔·桑德斯拥有我们镇上最漂亮的花园。在第 1 册的第 107-112 课中，我们讲到了英文中形容词和副词的比较级和最高级。本课的主要句型仍是形容词和副词的比较级和最高级。如果形容词或副词有两个以上音节，其比较级和最高级是在形容词或副词前加上 more 或 most，如 more interesting，the most beautiful。

2. enter for, 报名参加（各种竞赛，考试等活动）。

3. more flowers and vegetables, 更多的花卉和蔬菜。英语中有些形容词或副词的比较级和最高级并不规则，如课文中 good — better — best，bad — worse — worst， many — more — most。

4. for the worst garden in the town 是介词短语作定语，修饰 prize。

参考译文

乔·桑德斯拥有我们镇上最漂亮的花园。几乎每个人都参加每年举办的“最佳花园竞赛”，而每次都是乔获胜。比尔·弗里斯的花园比乔的花园大，他比乔也更勤奋，种植的花卉和蔬菜也更多，但乔的花园更富有情趣。他修筑了一条条整洁的小路，并在一个池塘上架了一座小木桥。我也喜欢花园，但我却不愿意辛勤劳动。每年的花园竞赛我也参加，但总因是镇上最劣的花园而获得一个小奖！

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 45 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 45 个单词。

1. Who has the best garden in town?
2 What does he win each year?
3 Who else has a fine garden?
4 Is Joe’s better or not?
5 Is the writer’s garden beautiful, or is it terrible?
6 What does he always win a prize for?

**Key structures** 关键句型

The best and the worst 比较

Read these sentences carefully:

详细阅读这些句子：

Mary is tall, but Jane is taller. Jane is taller than Mary. Caroline is very tall. She is the tallest girl in the class. 玛丽很高，但是简更高。简比玛丽高。卡罗琳非常高，她是班上最高的女孩子。

Jane’s handwriting is bad, but Mary’s is worse. Caroline’s handwriting is very bad. It is the worst handwriting I have ever seen. 简的书写很差，但是玛丽的更差。卡罗琳的书写非常糟糕，这是我见过的最差的书写。

The three girls collect photos of film stars. Mary hasn’t many photos, but Jane has more. Jane has more photos than Mary. Caroline has very many. She has the most. 这三个女孩子搜集影星的照片。玛丽的照片不多，但是简要多一些。简的照片比玛丽的多。卡罗琳有很多照片，她的照片最多。

Mary’s collection of photos is not very good. Jane’s is better. Caroline’s collection is the best. 玛丽的照片不太好，简的要好一些，卡罗琳的最好。

Last week the three girls bought expensive dresses. Caroline’s dress was more expensive than Jane’s. Mary’s was more expensive than Caroline’s. 上周这3个女孩子买了很昂贵的连衣裙。卡罗琳的连衣裙比简的贵，玛丽的又比卡罗琳的贵。玛丽的连衣裙是最贵的。

**Exercises 练习**

A These questions are about Mary, Jane and Caroline. Answer each question with a complete sentence.

这些问题都是关于玛丽、简和卡罗琳，用完整的句子来回答以下问题。

1 How does Mary’s handwriting compare with Jane’s?
2 How does Caroline’s handwriting compare with Mary’s and Jane’s?
3 How does Caroline’s dress compare with Jane’s?
4 How does Mary’s dress compare with Jane’s and Caroline’s?

B In the passage ‘The best and the worst’ there are seven comparisons. Can you find them?

找出本课中7个比较级的例子。

C Give the correct form of the words in parentheses and make other necessary changes. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用正确的词形填空，并对句子作必要的调整。完成练习后再对照课文。

Joe Sanders has the __________ (beautiful) garden in our town. Nearly everybody enters for ‘The __________ (Nice) Garden Competition’ each year, but Joe wins every time. Bill Frith’s garden is __________ (large) Joe’s. Bill works __________ (hard) than Joe and grows __________ (many) flowers and vegetables, but Joe’s garden is __________ (interesting). He has made neat paths and has built a wooden bridge over a pool. I like gardens too, but I do not like hard work. Every year I enter for the garden competition too, and I always win a little prize for the __________ (bad) garden in the town!
Unit 1 Lesson 8

D Put in of or in.

1 Which is the longest river ________ the world?
2 This is the finest picture ________ them all.
3 This stereo is the most expensive ________ all the ones in the shop.
4 He is the best boxer ________ our town.

Special difficulties 难点

a Everyone, Everybody, Everything 与 every 一起复合而成的不定代词 (everyone, everybody, everything) 是单数形式。

Read these sentences.

1 Everybody enters for 'The Nicest Garden Competition' (1.2)
2 Everything is ready. 万事俱备。
3 Everybody has come. 每个人都到了。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct verbs in the following sentences.

1 Everybody (believe) (believes) he will win.
2 I heard a noise and went downstairs. I found that everything (were) (was) in order.
3 Everyone (try) (tries) to earn more and work less.

b Enter

Read these sentences.

1 Everybody enters for the competition. (1.2)
2 Everyone stood up when he entered the room. 当他走进房间时每个人都站了起来。

Exercise 练习

Put in the word for where necessary.

1 He is very ill. No one is allowed to enter ________ his room.
2 Will you enter ________ this week’s crossword competition?
3 Many athletes have entered ________ the Olympic Games this year.
4 No one saw the thief when he entered ________ the building.
5 I have entered ________ the examination but I don’t want to take it.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 One of these sentences is true. Which one?
   (a) Bill Frith’s garden is the best and Joe Sanders’ is the worst.
   (b) Joe Sanders’ garden is the best and Bill Frith’s is the worst.
   (c) The writer’s garden is the best and Joe Sanders’ is the worst.
   (d) Joe Sanders’ garden is the best and the writer’s is the worst.

2 One of these sentences is true. Which one?
   (a) The writer doesn’t like gardens.
   (b) The writer likes gardens, but he is lazy.
   (c) The writer never enters for the competition.
   (d) The writer never wins a prize.

Structure 句型

3 Bill Frith’s garden is larger than Joe’s. It is ________.
   (a) larger garden      (b) a large garden      (c) large garden
   (d) largest garden

4 Bill is a hard worker. He works ________ than Joe.
   (a) harder      (b) more hard      (c) more hardly
   (d) hardier

5 Joe’s garden is more interesting ________ Bill’s.
   (a) by      (b) for      (c) than
   (d) from

6 The writer is fond of gardens. ________.
   (a) They like him     (b) They like to him     (c) He likes them
   (d) He likes

7 Joe’s garden is the best in the town. It’s the best ________ them all.
   (a) in      (b) of      (c) for
   (d) by

Vocabulary 词汇

8 Joe wins every time. He always ________ Bill Frith.
   (a) wins      (b) beats      (c) gains
   (d) earns

9 Joe grows more flowers. More flowers ________ in his garden.
   (a) grow      (b) grow tall      (c) grow up
   (d) grow big

10 Joe’s garden is interesting. Joe is ________ in gardening.
    (a) interesting      (b) interest      (c) interestingly
    (d) interested

11 The writer doesn’t like hard work. It’s ________ to look after a garden.
    (a) a hard work      (b) a hard job      (c) hard job
    (d) hardly a job

12 Every year the writer enters for the garden competition ________.
    (a) very      (b) also      (c) and
    (d) either

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子，然后对照课文第 3 行，核对你的答案。
Joe’s garden is not as large as Bill Frith’s.
Bill Frith’s ____________________________.
Lesson 9  A cold welcome 冷遇

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What does ‘a cold welcome’ refer to?

On Wednesday evening, we went to the Town Hall. It was the last
day of the year and a large crowd of people had gathered under the
Town Hall clock. It would strike twelve in twenty minutes’ time.
Fifteen minutes passed and then, at five to twelve, the clock stopped.
The big minute hand did not move. We waited and waited, but
nothing happened. Suddenly someone shouted, ‘It’s two minutes
past twelve! The clock has stopped!’ I looked at my watch. It was
true. The big clock refused to welcome the New Year. At that
moment, everybody began to laugh and sing.

New words and expressions 生词和短语
welcome (title) /welkam/ n. 欢迎; (1.8) v. 欢迎

crowd (1.2) /kraʊd/ n. 人群

gather (1.2) /'ɡæðə/ v. 聚集

hand (1.5) /hænd/ n. (表或机器的) 指针

shout (1.6) /ʃaʊt/ v. 喊叫

refuse (1.8) /rɪˈfjuːz/ v. 拒绝

laugh (1.9) /laːf/ v. 笑

Notes on the text 课文注释
1  Town Hall, 市政厅, 地方政府办公之处。
2  a large crowd of ..., 一大群……。
3  in twenty minutes’ time, 20分钟之后。

参考译文

星期三的晚上，我们去了市政厅。那是一年的最后一天，一大群人聚集在市政厅的大钟下面。再过20分钟，大钟将敲响12下。15分钟过去了，而就在11点55分时，大钟停了。那根巨大的分针不动了。我们等啊等啊，可情况没有变化。突然有人喊道:“已经12点零2分了!那钟已经停了!”我看了一下我的手表，果真如此。那座大钟不愿意迎接新年。此时，大家已经笑了起来，同时唱起了歌。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1  Where did we go on New Year’s Eve?
2  Were there a lot of people there or not?
3  In how many minutes would the Town Hall clock strike twelve?
4  At what time did it stop?
5 Did it refuse to welcome the New Year or not?
6 What did the crowd do then?

**Key structures**

When did you arrive? I arrived at 10 o’clock.

Read these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the phrases in italics. We can use phrases like these to answer questions beginning with *When.*

a Phrases with **at.** 带 **at** 的短语

I always leave home at 8 o’clock. I begin work at 9 o’clock. I work all day and often get home late at night. 我总是 8 点钟离家，9 点开始工作，我工作一整天，常常是晚上很晚才到家。

b Phrases with **in.** 带 **in** 的短语

I’m going out now. I’ll be back in ten minutes or in half an hour. 我现在出去，大概在 10 分钟或半小时以后回来。
The Second World War began in 1939 and ended in 1945. 第二次世界大战于 1939 年开始，于 1945 年结束。
Many tourists come here in summer. They usually come in July and in August. It is very quiet here in winter. The hotels are often empty in January, February and in March. 许多旅游者夏天到达这里。他们常在 7、8 月来。冬天这里很安静。1、2、3 月份酒店常常是空的。
I’ll see you in the morning. I can’t see you in the afternoon or in the evening. 我将在早上见你，下午或晚上不行。

c Phrases with **on.** 带 **on** 的短语

I shall see him on Wednesday. I’m not free on Tuesday or Thursday. 我将在星期二见他，星期二或四我都没空。
My brother will arrive from Germany on April 27th. He will return on May 5th. 我的弟弟将于 4 月 27 日从德国到达这里。他将在 5 月 5 日返回。

d Other phrases. 其他短语

The shops are open from 9 till 5. 商店营业从 9 点至 5 点。
It rained heavily during the night. 夜里雨下得很大。
He will not arrive until 10 o’clock. 他要到 10 点钟才能到。

**Exercises**

A Answer these questions on the passage.

1 When did we go to the Town Hall?
2 When would the clock strike twelve?
3 When did the clock stop?

B Supply the correct words in the following sentences.

1 He has gone abroad. He will return ________ two years’ time.
2 Saturdays I always go to the market.
3 I never go to the cinema ________ the week.
4 He ran a hundred metres ________ thirteen seconds.
5 I can’t see him ________ the moment. I’m busy.
6 My birthday is ________ November 7th. I was born ________ 1974.
7 The days are very short ________ December.
Unit 1 Lesson 9

8 We arrived at the village late ________ night. We left early ________ the morning.
9 I shall not hear from him ________ tomorrow.

C Write sentences using the following.

1 begin/3 o’clock.
3 shop/from ... till.
4 children/school/ morning.
5 finish/two years’ time.
6 go for a walk/evening.
7 went to church/Sunday.

Special difficulties 难点

Any, Not ... Any and No

We can answer these questions in two ways. Both answers mean the same thing.可以用两种不同的方式对以下疑问句作出否定的回答。这两种回答的意思是相同的。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there any tea in the pot?</td>
<td>There isn’t any tea in the pot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There’s no tea in the pot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there anyone at the door?</td>
<td>There isn’t anyone at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There’s no one at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there anybody at the door?</td>
<td>There isn’t anybody at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There’s nobody at the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there anything in the box?</td>
<td>There isn’t anything in the box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There’s nothing in the box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you go anywhere yesterday?</td>
<td>I didn’t go anywhere yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I went nowhere yesterday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises 练习

A Write negative answers to these questions in two different ways.

1 Have you any money?
2 Did you go anywhere in the holidays?
3 Did you buy anything this morning?
4 Was there anybody present when the accident happened?

B Change the form of these sentences.

He hasn’t any hobbies. He does not go anywhere. He does not see anybody. He is not interested in anything except — food!
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The crowd gathered under the clock because .
   (a) it was twenty to twelve (c) it was Wednesday evening
   (b) they wanted to welcome the New Year (d) the clock had stopped
2 They realized the clock had stopped .
   (a) before midnight (b) after midnight (c) at midnight (d) just in time

Structure 句型
3 They went to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening. They went .
   (a) the evening (b) on the evening (c) evening (d) in the evening
4 The people .
   (a) were (b) was (c) is (d) be
5 will it strike? In twenty minutes’ time.
   (a) When (b) How long (c) How long ago (d) How much
6 What time did it stop? five to twelve.
   (a) On (b) At (c) In (d) During
7 Did . No, nothing happened.
   (a) nothing (b) anything (c) any (d) a thing

Vocabulary 词汇
8 How many times did the clock ?
   (a) hit (b) beat (c) knock (d) strike
9 It was fifteen minutes .
   (a) pass (b) past (c) passed (d) pasted
10 A clock usually has two hands, a minute hand and .
   (a) a second (b) an hour (c) a time (d) a big
11 Most people wear or carry .
   (a) an alarm clock (b) an alarm (c) a clock (d) a watch
12 It refused to welcome the New Year. It .
   (a) denied it (b) wanted to (c) didn’t want to (d) wished to

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these two sentences, then check your answer against the text.
将以下两个简单句改写成为一个句子，然后对照课文第 1 行，核对你的答案。
It was Wednesday evening. We went to the Town Hall.
On .
First listen and then answer the question.

We have an old musical instrument. It is called a clavichord. It was made in Germany in 1681. Our clavichord is kept in the living room. It has belonged to our family for a long time. The instrument was bought by my grandfather many years ago. Recently it was damaged by a visitor. She tried to play jazz on it! She struck the keys too hard and two of the strings were broken. My father was shocked. Now we are not allowed to touch it. It is being repaired by a friend of my father’s.

New words and expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jazz</td>
<td>n. 爵士音乐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musical</td>
<td>adj. 音乐的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrument</td>
<td>n. 乐器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clavichord</td>
<td>n. 古钢琴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recently</td>
<td>adv. 最近</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damage</td>
<td>v. 损坏</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>n. 琴键</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>string</td>
<td>n. （乐器的）弦</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shock</td>
<td>v. 使不悦或生气, 震惊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>v. 允许, 让</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch</td>
<td>v. 触摸</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text

1. It is called a clavichord. It is a musical instrument that is played by striking the keys. The strings vibrate, producing sound. What happened to the clavichord?

2. What is the condition of the clavichord now?

Summary writing

Answer these questions in not more than 45 words.

1. Do we own an old clavichord, or do we own a new piano?
2 When was it made?
3 Who bought the instrument many years ago?
4 Who damaged it recently?
5 What did she try to do?
6 What did she break?
7 Who is repairing it now?

Key structures 关键句型

It was made in Germany in 1681. (一般过去时中的) 被动语态

在第 1 单的第 141-144 课中我们接触到了被动语态这一语法现象，现在我们来对比一下被动语态和主动语态在使用上的区别。

a  Read these two questions and answers.
读一读这两个问题并回答。
Who built this bridge? 谁修建了这座桥?
Prisoners of war built this bridge in 1942. 战俘于 1942 年建的这座桥。
When was this bridge built? 桥是什么时候建的?
This bridge was built in 1942. 这座桥是 1942 年建的。

In the first question we want to know who built the bridge. In the second question we want to learn about the bridge. 在第一个问题中我们想知道是谁建了这座桥，在第二个问题中我们想弄清有关桥的一些情况。因此，第一句使用了主动语态，第二句运用了被动语态。

We can still say who built it. We can say: 我们也可以讲清是什么人修建的这座桥，用“by + 动作执行者”的结构来表示，我们可以说:
This bridge was built by prisoners of war in 1942. 桥是战俘于 1942 年修建的。

b Now read these pairs of sentences carefully. The first sentence in each pair tells us about a person. (Who) The second tells us about a thing. (What or Which)
仔细地阅读以下几对句子，每对中的第一句话告诉我们一个人（回答“谁”），第二句话告诉我们一件事（回答“什么”或“哪一个”）。

Workmen are building a new road outside my house. (Who) 工人们正在我的房子外面修一条新路。
A new road is being built outside my house. (What) 我的房子外面有一条新路在建设之中。
The newsagent delivers our papers every morning. (Who) 每天上午送人来送我们的报纸。
Our papers are delivered every morning. (What) 我们的报纸每天上午送到。
The postman delivered a letter this morning. (Who) 今天上午邮递员送来了一封信。
A letter was delivered this morning. (What) 今天上午来了一封信。

c Now read these sentences:
仔细阅读以下句子：
Instead of saying:
除了这种表述方法外：
The police arrested the thief. 警察逮捕了小偷。
He gave me a present. 他给了我一件礼物。
The headmaster has punished the boy. 校长处罚了这个男孩。

We can say:
还可以说：
The thief was arrested (by the police). 小偷被（警察）逮捕了。
I was given a present. 我被给了一个礼物。
The boy has been punished (by the headmaster). 这个男孩被（校长）处罚了。
Unit 1  Lesson 10

Exercises 练习

A  Answer these questions on the passage. Write a complete answer to each question.

回答以下有关课文的问题，写出完整的句子。

1 What is our old musical instrument called?
2 Where was it made?
3 Where is it kept?
4 When was it bought?
5 When was it damaged?
6 How many strings were broken?
7 How did my father feel about this?
8 What aren’t we allowed to do?
9 What is being done to the clavichord?

B  Change the form of the phrases in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

将斜体印出的短语改成被动语态，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

We have an old musical instrument. We call it a clavichord. Someone made it in Germany in 1681. We keep our clavichord in the living room. My grandfather bought the instrument many years ago. Recently a visitor damaged it...

She struck the keys too hard and broke two of the strings. This shocked my father. Now he does not allow us to touch it. A friend of my father’s is repairing it.

Special difficulties 难点

a  Made in, Made of, Made from, Made by 与被动语态的 made 连用的几个介词

Made in (a country) 表示产地: It was made in Germany. (11.1-2)
Made of (a material) 表示用某种材料制成: The tea pot is made of silver. 茶壶是银制的。
Made from (a number of materials) 表示用多种材料制成: Glass is made from sand and lime. 玻璃是由沙和石灰制成的。
Made by (someone) 表示制造人: This cake was made by my sister. 这块蛋糕是我姐姐做的。

Exercise 练习

Supply the correct words in the following.

用正确的介词填空。

1 Is your watch made ________ gold?
2 These knives were made ________ Sheffield.
3 This cake was made ________ sugar, flour, butter and eggs.

b  A friend of my father’s (ll.7-8) 见课文中第 7-8 行的双重所有格

Instead of saying:

除了这种表述方法外:
He is one of my father’s friends.
Tom lent me one of his books.
He is one of my friends.

We can say:

还可以说:
He is a friend of my father’s.
Tom lent me a book of his.
He is a friend of mine.

Exercise 练习

Change the form of the phrases in italics.

改写以下斜体部分。

1 He borrowed one of my records.
2 She showed me one of John’s pictures.
3. It was one of her ideas.
4. One of your letters was found on my desk.
5. Some of their friends came to see me.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**

1. The old musical instrument ________.
   (a) has been in the family for a long time
   (b) was bought recently
   (c) was sold recently
   (d) was repaired recently

2. How did the visitor damage the clavichord?
   (a) She played jazz on it.
   (b) She played it.
   (c) She cut the strings.
   (d) She hit the keys too hard.

**Structure 句型**

3. Our clavichord is kept in the living room. That’s where we ________ it.
   (a) kept
   (b) have kept
   (c) are keeping
   (d) keep

4. It has belonged to our family for years. It’s the ________.
   (a) families
   (b) families’
   (c) family’s
   (d) familys’

5. The family have had the clavichord ________ many years.
   (a) since
   (b) for
   (c) from
   (d) by

   (a) buy
   (b) was bought
   (c) bought
   (d) did buy

7. We are not allowed to touch it. We ________ touch it.
   (a) mustn’t
   (b) mustn’t to
   (c) haven’t to
   (d) don’t have to

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. What’s it ________? A clavichord.
   (a) told
   (b) said
   (c) called
   (d) spoken

9. It’s kept in the living room. That’s where we ________ it.
   (a) have
   (b) hold
   (c) lift
   (d) carry

10. The visitor damaged it. She ________ it.
    (a) hurt
    (b) pained
    (c) broke
    (d) destroyed

11. Recently it was damaged. She damaged it ________.
    (a) late
    (b) lastly
    (c) lately
    (d) finally

12. A friend of my father’s is ________ the clavichord.
    (a) mending
    (b) making
    (c) doing
    (d) building

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第3-4行，核对你的答案。
It was my grandfather who bought the instrument many years ago.
The instrument ______________________________________.
Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another

First listen and then answer the question.

I was having dinner at a restaurant when Tony Steele came in. Tony worked in a lawyer’s office years ago, but he is now working at a bank. He gets a good salary, but he always borrows money from his friends and never pays it back. Tony saw me and came and sat at the same table. He has never borrowed money from me. While he was eating, I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. To my surprise, he gave me the money immediately. ‘I have never borrowed any money from you,’ Tony said, ‘so now you can pay for my dinner!’

New words and expressions

- turn (title) /tɜːn/ n. 行为, 举止
- deserve (title) /dɜːzv/ v. 应得到, 值得
- lawyer (1.2) /ˈleɪvər/ n. 律师
- bank (1.3) /bæŋk/ n. 银行
- salary (1.3) /ˈsæləri/ n. 工资
- immediately (1.7) /ɪˈmiːdɪətli/ adv. 立刻

Notes on the text

1. One good turn deserves another. 这是句谚语，意思是对于别人的善意或帮助应作出相应的回报。
2. gets a good salary. 有一份很高的薪水。
3. never pays it back. 从不归还。

Summary writing

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. Where were you having dinner?
2. Did you see Tony Steele after a while or not?
3. What does he always borrow from his friends?
4. Did Tony sit at your table, or did he sit somewhere else?
5. How much did you ask him to lend you?
Did he give you the money at once or not?
What did he want you to do?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Review KS2-10** 复习第 2-10 课的关键句型

Now, Often and Always (KS2) （第 2 课）
What happened? (KS3) （第 3 课）
What has happened? (KS4) （第 4 课）
What were you doing when I telephoned? (KS7) （第 7 课）
It was made in Germany. (KS10) （第 10 课）

**Exercises** 练习

A Which verbs in the passage tell us a what is happening now; b what always happens; c what happened; d what has happened; e what was happening when/while ...

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

I ________ (have) dinner at a restaurant when Tony Steele ________ (come) in. Tony ________ (work) in a lawyer's office years ago, but he now ________ (work) at a bank. He ________ (get) a good salary, but he always (borrow) money from his friends and never ________ (pay) it back. Tony ________ (see) me and ________ (come) and ________ (sit) at the same table. He never ________ (borrow) money from me. While he ________ (eat), I ________ (ask) him to lend me twenty pounds. To my surprise, he ________ (give) me the money immediately. 'I never ________ (borrow) any money from you,' Tony ________ (say), 'so now you can pay for my dinner!'

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 He usually ________ (get) up at 7 o'clock, but this morning he ________ (get) up at 6 o'clock.
2 So far, we not ________ (have) a reply.
3 While he ________ (write) on the blackboard, the children ________ (talk).
4 I can't come now. At the moment I ________ (type) a letter.
5 As the royal visitors ________ (pass), the people cheered.

D Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

The Taj Mahal ________ (build) in the seventeenth century for the emperor Shah Jehan. A few years after he ________ (become) ruler, his wife, Mumtaz-i-Mahal, ________ (die). The Taj Mahal ________ (build) in her honour. Experts ________ (call) in from many parts of the world to construct the domes and to decorate the walls. The Taj Mahal which ________ (begin) in 1632 and ________ (complete) in 1654 ________ (cost) a fortune. Up to the present day, it ________ (visit) by millions of people.
Unit 1 Lesson 11

**Special difficulties** 难点

a  I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. (1.6)

语序：有些动词的后面用动词不定式作宾语时，往往要在动词后面先加上一个名词或代词。

Study the word order in these sentences.

注意以下句中的语序，在动词后面均有一个代词或名词（用斜体印出）。

He wants *me* to ask you a question. 他让我问你一个问题。

Frank helped *Tom* to dig this hole. 弗兰克帮助汤姆挖了这个洞。

She taught *her son* to read. 她教儿子读书。

We advised *them* to stay at home. 我们建议他们呆在家里。

They did not allow *us* to enter the museum before 9 o’clock. 他们不允许我们在9点之前进博物馆。

**Exercises** 练习

A  Put the words in parentheses in their correct order.

将括号内的词按正确的语序排好。

1 The officer ordered (to fire, at the enemy, the men).
2 He wants (his wife, this dress, to wear).
3 She wants (us, it, to explain).
4 I cannot allow (the room, him, to enter).

B  Write similar sentences using the following.

模仿以上例句完成以下句子。

1 He asked __________
2 We prefer __________
3 He taught __________
4 My mother wished __________
5 Do you want __________?

b  Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

*Salary* (1.3) and *Wages*.

Salary: He collects his salary at the end of each month. 他每个月末领取工资。

Wages: The workmen collected their wages at the end of the week. 工人们每周末领工资。

c  *Borrow and Lend.*

Borrow: He has never borrowed money from me. (1.5)

Lend: I asked him to lend me £20. (1.6)

I asked him to lend £20 to me. (SD3) (参见第3课的难点)

**Exercise** 练习

Use any of the above words in the following sentences.

用上面的词填空。

1 He is a bank manager and he gets a good __________
2 I __________ him some money and he said he would give it back to me when he got his __________.
3 Yesterday he __________ my laptop. I hope he returns it soon.
4 The postmen are on strike again. They want higher __________
5 Workmen’s __________ have gone up a lot in the last year.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Tony sat at the same table as the writer and _______.
   (a) borrowed some money from him  (b) lent some money to him
   (c) paid back some money to him  (d) begged for some money
2 Tony wants the writer to pay for his dinner because _______.
   (a) he gave him £20
   (b) the writer hasn’t ever lent him any money before
   (c) the writer has never borrowed any money from Tony before
   (d) he hasn’t any money

Structure 句型
3 Tony Steele _______ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.
   (a) was going  (b) went  (c) has gone  (d) did go
4 Tony is working at a bank _______.
   (a) at the moment  (b) a year ago  (c) since last year  (d) for a year
5 _______ he has never borrowed any money from the writer.
   (a) Last week  (b) Up till now  (c) Since  (d) A week ago
6 _______ did he ask for? £20.
   (a) How many  (b) How  (c) How much  (d) How few
7 I have never borrowed any money from you. I _______ lend me some money.
   (a) want to  (b) want  (c) want you to  (d) you want to

Vocabulary 词汇
8 He gets a good salary. His salary is very _______.
   (a) good  (b) well  (c) fine  (d) beautiful
9 Tony usually gets his salary at the end of the _______.
   (a) day  (b) year  (c) month  (d) week
10 Tony must pay the money back. He must _______.
    (a) pay it again  (b) pay it  (c) repay it  (d) pay it once more
11 There aren’t enough chairs here for us all. Please bring _______ one.
    (a) other  (b) another  (c) extra  (d) a different
12 He gave him the money immediately. He gave him the money _______.
    (a) soon  (b) in a hurry  (c) once more  (d) at once

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。
I was surprised when he gave me the money immediately.
To _______.
Lesson 12  Goodbye and good luck  再见，一路顺风

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Where is Captain Alison going and how?

Our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow. We’ll meet him at the harbour early in the morning. He will be in his small boat, *Topsail*. *Topsail* is a famous little boat. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. Captain Alison will set out at eight o’clock, so we’ll have plenty of time. We’ll see his boat and then we’ll say goodbye to him. He will be away for two months. We are very proud of him. He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>luck (title)</th>
<th>harbour (1.2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>captain (1.1)</td>
<td>proud (1.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail (1.1)</td>
<td>important (1.7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text 课文注释

1  Captain Charles Alison, 查尔斯·艾利森船长。
2  the Atlantic, 大西洋，全称为“the Atlantic Ocean”。

参考译文

我们的邻居查尔斯·艾利森船长明天就要乘‘涛波赛’号启航。‘涛波赛’号是一艘有名的小艇，它已经多次横渡大西洋。艾利森船长将于8点钟启航，因此我们有充裕的时间。我们将参观他的船，然后和他告别。他要离开两个月，我们真为他感到自豪，他将参加一次重大的横渡大西洋的比赛。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 45 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过45个单词。
1  Whom shall we meet at Portsmouth Harbour early tomorrow morning?
2  Where will he be?
3  At what time will he leave?
4  Shall we say goodbye to him, or shall we travel with him?
5  What will he take part in?
Key structures 关键句型

I’ll see you tomorrow. 一般将来时

These sentences tell us about the future. Read them carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics. 这些句子讲的是将来要发生的事情。一般将来时用 shall 或 will 加上原形动词来表示，shall 常用在第一人称的代词 I 或 we 的后面；而 will 则可用于所有人称。在书写时和口语中，常可缩略为 ill。仔细读一读以下的例句，要特别注意用斜体印出的部分。

i will see you tomorrow. 明天我会见你。 I’ll see you at 3 o’clock. 我会在 3 点钟见你。

We will travel by air. We’ll be at the airport tomorrow morning. 我们将乘飞机旅行。明天上午我们将在机场。

George will be here this evening. He’ll come by train. 今晚乔治会到达这里。他会乘火车来。

Alice will meet him at the station. She’ll be there at 5 o’clock. 艾丽丝会在车站接他。她将在 5 点到达车站。

The train will arrive at 4.55. It’ll be here soon. 火车将在 4.55 分到达。它很快就到了。

You will miss the train. You’ll be late. 你会误了火车的，你会迟到。

They will come here on foot. They’ll walk from the station. 他们会走回来。他们会从车站走回来。

Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen. 在课文中所有表示将来发生的事情的动词下面划上横线。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise. 用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

Our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, ______ (sail) from Portsmouth tomorrow. We ______ (meet) him at the harbour early in the morning. He ______ (be) in his small boat, Topsail. Topsail is a famous little boat. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. Captain Alison ______ (set out) at eight o’clock, so we ______ (have) plenty of time. We ______ (see) his boat and then we ______ (say) goodbye to him. He ______ (be) away for two months. We are very proud of him. He ______ (take part) in an important race across the Atlantic.

C In the paragraph below, the verbs in italics tell us what happened. Write the passage again. Change the verbs in italics so that they tell us what will happen. 在下面这段文章中，用斜体印出的动词表示的是过去发生的事情，改写这些动词使它们表述将来要发生的动作。

I went to the theatre with my friend Reg. Reg and I saw the first performance of a play called ‘The End of the Road’. After the play, the producer gave a short speech. He spoke to the audience about the play. The play was very successful and I think a great many people enjoyed it very much.

Special difficulties 难点

a In each sentence, be combines with a different adverb. Each combination has a different meaning. 各句中的 be 与不同的副词连用，意思各不相同。

He will be away for two months. (l. 6)
I’m going out now. I’ll be back at six o’clock. 我要走了，将在 6 点钟的时候回来。

If anyone telephones, tell them I’ll be out all morning. 如果有人来电话，告诉他们我一上午都不在。

I went to Ted’s house and asked to see him but he wasn’t in. 我去特德的家，希望能见到他，但他不在。

Why don’t you forget about it? It’s all over. (It is finished.) 你为什么不把它忘掉？事情已经过去了。
Unit 1 Lesson 12

What's on at the local cinema this week? 这星期本地的电影院上映什么片子？
She is very ill. She can’t start work yet. She is not up to it. (She is not capable of it.) 她病很重，还不能开始工作。她的身体还不能胜任。

b  Now look at the verb set in these sentences.
注意下面句子中的动词 set。
Captain Alison will set out at eight o’clock. (Ⅱ.4-5) (He will start his journey.) 艾理森船长将于 8 点出发。
Tom and I set off early in the morning. (We started our journey.) 我和汤姆一早就出发了。
Jansen set up a new world record for the 400 metres. 珍森为 400 米跑创造了一个新的世界纪录。

Exercise 练习

Replace the words in italics by the correct phrase with be or set.
用短语动词 be 或 set 来替代下列句子中斜体印出的部分。
1  He has not yet returned. He will return in ten minutes.
2  A new play is being performed at the Globe Theatre.
3  When the concert ended, we went home.
4  They will leave very early tomorrow morning.
5  You can’t take the exam yet. You are not capable of it.
6  He will be absent from home for two months.
7  She swam across the English Channel and created a new world record.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Topsail is famous because ________.
   (a) it is a little boat
   (b) it belongs to Captain Alison
   (c) it is a little boat which has sailed across the Atlantic many times
   (d) it will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow

2 Topsail ________.
   (a) will win the race across the Atlantic
   (b) has won the race across the Atlantic
   (c) will be in the race across the Atlantic
   (d) was in the race across the Atlantic

Structure 句型

3 Our neighbour, ________ name is Charles Alison, will sail tomorrow.
   (a) whose
   (b) whose his
   (c) his
   (d) of whom

4 He will sail from Portsmouth. He is ________ Portsmouth now.
   (a) to
   (b) from
   (c) on
   (d) at

5 His boat, ________ is Topsail, is famous.
   (a) whose the name
   (b) the whose name
   (c) of whom the name
   (d) the name of which

6 We’ll have plenty of time. There will be ________ time to see him.
   (a) enough
   (b) almost enough
   (c) less than enough
   (d) hardly enough

7 We’ll ________.
   (a) say him goodbye
   (b) tell him goodbye
   (c) tell goodbye to him
   (d) say goodbye to him
Vocabulary 词汇

8 He’s our neighbour so he lives ________ us.
   (a) near         (b) a long way from       (c) in a different town from   (d) next door

9 It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. It has sailed across the Atlantic ________.
   (a) sometimes    (b) always            (c) often                      (d) usually

10 He will set out at eight o’clock. That’s when ________.
   (a) the trip ends (b) the journey ends (c) the voyage stops            (d) the journey begins

11 He will take part in a race. He will ________ in it.
   (a) be           (b) take place         (c) act                        (d) do

12 The Atlantic is ________.
   (a) an ocean     (b) a sea             (c) a river                     (d) a lake

Sentence structure 句子结构

Arrange these groups of words in the correct order, then check your answer against the text.
按正确的语序排列以下词组和短语，然后对照课文第 2 行，核对你的答案。

him/we shall meet/early/in the morning/at the harbour
Lesson 13  The Greenwood Boys  绿林少年

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why will the police have a difficult time?

The Greenwood Boys are a group of pop singers. At present, they are visiting all parts of the country. They will be arriving here tomorrow. They will be coming by train and most of the young people in the town will be meeting them at the station. Tomorrow evening they will be singing at the Workers’ Club. The Greenwood Boys will be staying for five days. During this time, they will give five performances. As usual, the police will have a difficult time. They will be trying to keep order. It is always the same on these occasions.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>group (1.1) /gru:p/ n. 小组, 团体</th>
<th>performance (1.7) /pa’foimans/ n. 演出</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pop singer (1.1) /’pop-.sirp/ 流行歌手</td>
<td>occasion (1.9) /a’kei3n/ n. 场合</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>club (1.5) /kλb/ n. 俱乐部</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. all parts of the country, 全各地。
2. will be arriving, 将要到达。
   这句话中的时态被称作将来进行时，用来表示最近的将来正在进行的动作或说话人设想已经安排好的事情。
3. by train, 乘火车（来）。此类推，我们可以说 by air, by sea, by bus 等。
4. as usual, 和往常一样。
5. keep order, 维持秩序。

参考译文

“绿林少年”是一个流行歌曲演唱团。目前他们正在全国各地巡回演出，明天就要到达此地。他们将乘火车来，镇上的大部分青年人将到车站迎接他们。明晚他们将在工人俱乐部演出。“绿林少年”准备在此逗留 5 天。在此期间，他们将演出 5 场。同往常一样，警察的日子将不好过，他们将设法维持秩序。每逢这种场合，情况都是这样。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 50 个单词。

1. Are the Greenwood Boys singers, or are they dancers?
2. When will they be coming here?
3 Who will be meeting them at the station?
4 How many performances will they give?
5 What will the police be trying to do as usual?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**What will you be doing tomorrow?** 将来进行时

a Read these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the verbs in italics.

仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的动词。

**Tomorrow**

*Now*

I am writing letters now.
我现在正在写信。

We are decorating this room.
我们正在布置这个房间。

He is working in the garden.
他正在花园里干活。

She is getting ready for the party.
她正在为聚会作准备。

*Are you washing your car?*

你正在洗你的汽车吗？

*They are playing football.*

他们正在踢足球。

*What will you be doing tomorrow?*

*What will you be doing tomorrow?* 明天你将进行什么？

b Now read these pairs of sentences. Each pair has the same meaning.

对比以下句子，用一般将来时和将来进行时所表述的含义是一致的。

**We can say:**

除了这种表达方法外：

*I'll come to your house tomorrow.*

我明天去你家。

*He'll arrive in a minute.*

他马上就到。

*I'll catch the 4 o'clock train.*

他将乘 4 点钟的火车。

*I'll see you next week.*

我下周见你。

*She'll meet him at the station.*

她将去车站接他。

**Exercises 练习**

**A** Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what will be happening.

在课文中所有表示将来进行时的动词下面划上横线。

**B** Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
The Greenwood Boys are a group of popular singers. At present, they are visiting all parts of the country. They \(\text{arrive}\) here tomorrow. They \(\text{come}\) by train and most of the young people in the town \(\text{meet}\) them at the station. Tomorrow evening they \(\text{sing}\) at the Workers' Club. The Greenwood Boys \(\text{stay}\) for five days. During this time, they will give five performances. As usual, the police will have a difficult time. They \(\text{try}\) to keep order. It is always the same on these occasions.

C Change the form of the verbs in italics so that they tell us what will be happening.

1 I \(\text{am ironing}\) the clothes.
2 The train \(\text{will arrive}\) in a few minutes.
3 We 'll see you in the morning.
4 We \(\text{are watching}\) the match.
5 He \(\text{is correcting}\) exercise books.

Special difficulties 难点

The Workers' club (1.5) (Compare SD60) 名词的所有格（对比第 60 课的难点）

Read these questions and answers. Pay close attention to the position of the apostrophe (') in each answer.

Whose is this car? It is Tom's.
Whose is this handbag? It is Susan's.
Whose is this hammer? It is the workman's. It belongs to the workman.
Whose are these exercise books? They are the students' exercise books.
Whose are these toys? They are the children's.
Whose are these tools? They are the workmen's.
Whose is this car? It is James' (or James's) car.
When will he arrive? He will arrive in three hours' time.
How much minced meat do you want? I want ten pounds' worth of minced meat.

Exercise 练习

Answer these questions, using the words in parentheses. Put the apostrophe in the right place.

1 Whose is this umbrella? (George)
2 Whose is this idea? (Jean)
3 Whose is this handbag? (That woman)
4 Whose poetry do you like best? (Keats)
5 Whose are these clothes? (The children)
6 Whose are these uniforms? (The soldiers)
7 When will you leave? (In six hours time)
8 How much damage was there? (A hundred pounds worth)

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The pop singers will attract \(\text{_____}\) in the town.
   \(\text{(a) all the people}\) \(\text{(b) mainly the young people}\)
   \(\text{(c) only the old people}\) \(\text{(d) no one}\)
2 The police will be there ________.
   (a) because there will be trouble       (b) because the singers are popular
   (c) because there will be a lot of young people there  (d) to prevent trouble

Structure 句型

3 Most of the young people will be there. ________ the young people will be there.
   (a) A lot       (b) Nearly all     (c) Some        (d) Many

4 How ________ staying? For five days.
   (a) long they will be   (b) they will be  (c) long will they be  (d) long they be

5 During this time, they will give five performances. That’s what they’ll do _____ this time.
   (a) in         (b) on       (c) for          (d) while

6 The police will have a difficult time ________.
   (a) as usually    (b) as usual  (c) than usual  (d) from usual

7 The police ________ expecting the singers to arrive soon.
   (a) is         (b) are       (c) will          (d) was

Vocabulary 词汇

8 They are pop singers. So ________.
   (a) they are folk singers      (b) they are public singers
   (c) everyone likes them        (d) no one likes them

9 At present they are visiting all parts of the country. They are doing this ________.
   (a) now         (b) for a short time  (c) in future  (d) all the time

10 They are visiting all parts of the country. So they will go ________.
   (a) to cities, towns and villages (b) only to villages
   (c) only to towns                 (d) only to cities

11 The Greenwood Boys will give five performances. They will give five ________.
   (a) recitals       (b) executions
   (c) plays          (d) songs

12 It’s always the same on these occasions. It’s always the same at ________ like this.
   (a) situations     (b) conditions
   (c) places         (d) times

Sentence structure 句子结构

Read this sentence:

They will be coming and the young people will be meeting them.

Now add the following phrases:

at the station, in the town, most of and by train.

Check your answer against the text.
Lesson 14  Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Did the young man speak English?

I had an amusing experience last year. After I had left a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town. On the way, a young man waved to me. I stopped and he asked me for a lift. As soon as he had got into the car, I said good morning to him in French and he replied in the same language. Apart from a few words, I do not know any French at all. Neither of us spoke during the journey. I had nearly reached the town, when the young man suddenly said, very slowly, ‘Do you speak English?’ As I soon learnt, he was English himself!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

amusing (1.1) /ˈɑːmjuːzɪŋ/ adj. 好笑的，有趣的
experience (1.1) /ɪkˈskɒriəns/ n. 经历
wave (1.3) /weɪv/ v. 招手
lift (1.4) /lɪft/ n. 拼车

language (1.5) /ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ/ n. 语言
journey (1.7) /ˈdʒɜːni/ n. 旅行

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 I drove on to the next town. 我继续驶往下一个城镇。
   句中的副词 on 有“继续地”，“不停顿地”的意思。
2 on the way, 在途中。
3 ask for a lift, 要求搭车。
4 apart from, 除……以外。
5 As I soon learnt, he was English himself! 我很快就知道，他自己就是个英国人。

参考译文

去年我有过一次有趣的经历。在离开法国南部的一个小村庄后，我继续驶往下一个城镇。途中，一个青年向我招手。我把车停下，他向我提出要求搭车。他一上车，我就用法语向他问早上好，他也同样用法语回答我。除了个别几个单词外，我根本不会法语。旅途中我们谁也没讲话。就要到达那个镇时，那青年突然开了口，慢慢地说道：“你会讲英语吗?”

我很快就知道，他自己就是个英国人。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过55个单词。

1 Whom did the writer give a lift to in the south of France last year?
2 Did they greet each other in English or in French?
3 Does the writer speak any French or not?
4 Did they sit in silence, or did they talk to each other?
5 What did the young man say at the end of the journey?
6 Was he English himself, or was he French?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**After he had finished work he went home. 过去完成时**

在第 1 册的第 119-120 课，我们第一次接触到了过去完成时。有人认为，过去完成时是表示“很久以前发生的事情”，这个概念是错误的。过去完成时常常用来表示发生在过去的两个事件，动作中哪一个发生在前。

Read these two sentences. 读一读这两句话。

*He finished work. He went home.* 他结束了工作。他回家了。

We can join these two sentences together with the word *after.*

我们可以用 after 把这两句话连在一起。

We can say: 我们可以说：

*After he had finished work he went home.* 他结束了工作。他回家了。

Note how these sentences have been joined. Pay close attention to the words in italics. 注意以下句子是如何连在一起的，要特别注意用斜体印出的词。

*The children ran away. They broke the window.* 孩子们跑了。他们打碎了玻璃。

*The children ran away after they had broken the window.* 孩子们打碎了玻璃之后跑了。

*The sun set. We returned to our hotel.* 太阳下山了。我们回到了旅馆。

*As soon as the sun had set we returned to our hotel.* 太阳一下山我们就回到了旅馆。

*He finished lunch. He asked for a glass of water.* 他吃完了午饭。他要一杯水。

*When he had finished lunch he asked for a glass of water.* 他吃完午饭后要了一杯水。

*I did not understand the problem. He explained it.* 我不懂这个问题。他解释了。

*I had not understood the problem until he explained it.* 在他解释之前我不懂这个问题。

**Exercises 练习**

**A** These questions are about the passage. Write a complete sentence in answer to each question. 这些问题都是有关课文的。用一个完整的句子来回答以下每个问题。

1 When did you drive on to the next town?
2 When did you say good morning to him in French?
3 When did the young man say ‘Do you speak English’?

**B** Join these sentences together. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise. 把以下句子连在一起，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

1 I left a small village in the south of France. I drove on to the next town.
2 He got into the car. I said good morning to him in French.
3 I nearly reached the town. The young man said ‘Do you speak English?’

**C** Join these pairs of sentences with the words given in parentheses. 用括号中的词将以下句子连在一起。

1 (After) She wrote the letter. She went to the post office.
Unit 1 Lesson 14

2 (After) He had dinner. He went to the cinema.
3 (When) I fastened my seat belt. The plane took off.
4 We did not disturb him. (until) He finished work.
5 (As soon as) He left the room. I turned on the radio.
6 He was very ill. (before) He died.

D Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 The moment he had said this, he _______ (regret) it.
2 It _______ (begin) to rain before she took a taxi.
3 When all the guests had left, Derek _______ (arrive).

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

a) Ask and Ask for. He asked me for a lift. (1.3-4)

Ask (a question) 问 (一个问题) : After the lesson, he asked me a question. 课后他问了我一个问题。
Ask for (something) 要求 (某样东西) : He asked for an apple. 他要一个苹果。

b) Except, except for, apart from. Apart from a few words ... (1.5-6):

When except is used at the beginning of a sentence , it is followed by for.
当 except 用在句首时，常用 except for 这个词组。

Read these sentences.
读一读下面的句子。
I invited everyone except George. 除了乔治之外我请了每一个人。
Except for/Apart from this, everything is in order. 除此之外，其他都已就绪。

c) Which of, either of, neither of, both of. Neither of us ... (1.6)

We use these words when we refer to two persons or things.
这些短语用于两个人或两件事。
Which of the two do you want? 这两个你要哪一个？
Either of them will do. 哪一个都行。
I like neither of them. 我哪一个也不喜欢。
I bought both of them. 这两个我都买了。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in these sentences.
选择正确的词或词组。

1 (Except) (Except for) a slight headache, I feel all right now.
2 I liked them very much so I bought (neither of) (both of) them.
3 (Except) (Apart from) being a bit too long, the play was very good.
4 I (asked) (asked for) a question. I did not (ask for) (ask) an answer.
5 He could not answer (neither of) (either of) the questions I (asked) (asked for).
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The young man stopped the writer because ________.
   (a) he wanted to speak to him
   (b) he wanted a free ride in the car
   (c) he recognized him
   (d) he spoke French
2 The two men didn’t speak to each other during the journey because ________.
   (a) neither of them spoke French
   (b) neither of them spoke English
   (c) they each thought the other was French
   (d) they each thought the other was English

Structure 句型
3 What kind of car did he ________?
   (a) drive
   (b) drove
   (c) driven
   (d) driving
4 As soon as he had got into the car, I said good morning. I said good morning ________ he had got into the car.
   (a) before
   (b) a long time after
   (c) just after
   (d) a moment before
5 ‘Good morning,’ I ________.
   (a) spoke
   (b) talked
   (c) said
   (d) said
6 I speak a few words of French. I don’t know ________ French.
   (a) many
   (b) much
   (c) plenty of
   (d) a little
7 Neither of us spoke. We ________.
   (a) neither spoke
   (b) either spoke
   (c) both didn’t speak
   (d) neither didn’t speak

Vocabulary 词汇
8 On the way, a young man waved to me. This happened ________.
   (a) before the writer’s journey
   (b) during the writer’s journey
   (c) after the writer’s journey
   (d) a long time ago
9 The young man waved to the writer. He ________ him.
   (a) saluted
   (b) greeted
   (c) signalled to
   (d) nodded
10 He asked for a lift. He was a ________.
    (a) tramp
    (b) hitch hiker
    (c) passenger
    (d) foreigner
11 He replied in French. He ________ the writer in French.
    (a) responded
    (b) answered
    (c) returned
    (d) remarked
12 The writer had ________ reached the town when the young man spoke.
    (a) often
    (b) almost
    (c) sometimes
    (d) just as

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 6 行，核对你的答案。
I know no French at all.
I do not ________________________________.
Lesson 15  Good news  佳音

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What was the good news?

The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me. I felt very nervous when I went into his office. He did not look up from his desk when I entered. After I had sat down, he said that business was very bad. He told me that the firm could not afford to pay such large salaries. Twenty people had already left. I knew that my turn had come.

‘Mr. Harmsworth,’ I said in a weak voice.
‘Don’t interrupt,’ he said.

Then he smiled and told me I would receive an extra thousand pounds a year!

News words and expressions  生词和短语

secretary (1.1) /ˈsekrətəri/ n. 秘书
nervous (1.2) /ˈnɜːvəs/ adj. 精神紧张的
afford (1.4) /əˈfɔːd/ v. 负担得起
weak (1.7) /wiːk/ adj. 弱的
interrupt (1.8) /ˌɪntəˈrʌpt/ v. 插话，打断

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 look up, 抬头看。
2 could not afford to ..., 不可能支付，afford 为 “有能力做……” ，常和 can, could 连用。
3 I knew that my turn had come. 我知道这次该轮到我了。my turn 指上文 中有人被公司解雇这件事。

参考译文

秘书告诉我哈姆斯沃思先生要见我。我走进他的办公室，感到非常紧张。我进去的时候，他连头也没抬。待我坐下后，他说生意非常不景气。他还告诉我，公司支付不起这么庞大的工资开支，有 20 人已经离去。我知道这次该轮到我了。

“哈姆斯沃思先生，”我无力地说。
“不要打断我的话，”他说。

然后他微笑了一下告诉我，我每年将得到 1,000 英镑的额外收入。

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.

回答下列问题，将答语组成一个段落，不要超过 55 个单词。

1 Who wanted to see you? 
2 How did you feel about this? 
3 Where did you go? 
4 Did he say that business was bad, or did he say that it was good? 
5 Could the firm pay such large salaries or not?
How many people had left already?
Did he ask you to leave as well or not?

Key structures 关键句型

He said that... He told me ...

Study these sentences carefully.

'I am busy,' he said. "忙," 他说道。
He says that he is busy. 他说他忙。
He said that he was busy. 他说过他忙。
He told me that he was busy. 他告诉我他忙。

'I never work on Sundays,' she said. "星期日从不工作," 她说。
She says that she never works on Sundays. 她说她星期日从不工作。
She said that she never worked on Sundays. 她说她星期日从不工作。
She told Mr. Harmsworth that she never worked on Sundays. 她告诉哈姆斯沃斯先生, 她星期日从不工作。

'I have just finished work,' Mr. Jones said. "刚刚完成工作," 先生说。
Mr. Jones says that he has just finished work. 先生说他刚刚完成工作。
Mr. Jones said that he had just finished work. 先生说过他刚刚完成工作。
Mr. Jones told his wife that he had just finished work. 先生告诉他的夫人, 他刚刚完成工作。

'I broke that plate,' he said. "把那个盘子打破了," 他说道。
He says that he broke that plate. 他说他打破了那个盘子。
He said that he had broken that plate. 他说过他打破了那个盘子。
He told me that he had broken that plate. 他告诉我他打破了那个盘子。

'Mr. Jones will see you now,' she said. "琼斯先生现在要见你," 她说。
She says that Mr. Jones will see you now. 她说琼斯先生现在要见你。
She said that Mr. Jones would see you now. 她说琼斯先生现在要见你。
She told me that Mr. Jones would see you now. 她告诉我琼斯先生现在要见你。

'You can go now,' the teacher said. "你现在可以走了," 老师说。
The teacher says that you can go now. 老师说你现在可以走了。
The teacher said that you could go now. 老师说过你现在可以走了。
The teacher told the pupil that he could go now. 老师告诉学生他可以走了。

Exercises 练习

A These questions are about the passage. Write a complete sentence in answer to each question.

1. a What did the secretary tell me?
   b What were the secretary’s exact words?
Unit 1 Lesson 15

2  a. What did Mr. Harmsworth say after I had sat down?
   b. What were Mr. Harmsworth’s exact words?

3  a. What did Mr. Harmsworth tell me about the firm?
   b. What were Mr. Harmsworth's exact words?

B Supply *said* or *told* in the following sentences. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

在下面的句子里填上 said 或 told，并用括号中动词的正确时态填空。

1. He _______ me that she ______ (come) tomorrow.
2. The gardener _______ that he _______ (cut) that tree down yesterday.
3. I _______ you I _______ (have) never played tennis before.
4. What _______ he _______ that he _______ (do)?
5. When _______ he _______ you that he _______ (buy) this car?
6. He _______ he _______ (cannot) understand me.
7. He _______ that he _______ (work) all day yesterday.
8. He _______ me he never _______ (write) letters to anybody.
9. Why _______ you _______ that you _______ (be) busy?
10. He _______ that he _______ (will wait) for me.

**Special difficulties**

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

a. *Nervous* and *Irritable*. I felt very nervous. (1.1-2)

*Nervous* 紧张不安的 (restless or uneasy): Examinations make me nervous. 考试使我感到紧张。

*Irritable* 易怒的 (easily made angry): He is such an irritable person, you can hardly speak to him. 他这个人如此容易发怒，你简直没有办法与他讲话。

b. *Office* (1.2), *Study* , *Desk* (1.3).

Study these examples:

There are six people in our office. 我们办公室有 6 个人。
The living room is next to the study. I often read in the study when I want peace and quiet. 起居室在书房的隔壁，当我需要安静时我常在书房里看书。

My desk is covered with books. 我的书桌上铺满了书。

c. *Afford* (1.4).

Study these examples:

Will you buy this car? I can't afford it. I can't afford £7,000. 你想买这辆车吗？我买不起，我掏不出 7,000 英镑。

You can afford this model. It's not very expensive. 你能买得起这种型号的，它不很贵。

I haven't been to the cinema lately, I can't afford the time. 最近我一直没去电影院，我没时间。

**Exercise**

Supply any of the above words in the sentences below.

用上面的词填空。

1. We shall use the spare room in our new house as a ________
2. Smith works in a lawyer's ________.
3. She felt very ________ before the plane took off.
4 I can only ______ to pay £100 a week rent.
5 Since his illness he has been very _______. He is always losing his temper.

**Multiple choice questions**

**Comprehension**

1. The writer felt nervous because _______.
   (a) Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see him
   (b) the secretary told him that Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see him
   (c) business was very bad
   (d) he thought he would lose his job

2. The writer _______.
   (a) expected to receive some extra money
   (b) was surprised to receive some extra money
   (c) wanted to receive some extra money
   (d) asked for some extra money

**Structure**

3. ‘Mr. Harmsworth _______ see you,’ the secretary said.
   (a) would
   (b) shall
   (c) will
   (d) could

4. _______ did he feel? Very nervous.
   (a) What
   (b) How
   (c) How much
   (d) Which

5. The firm couldn’t pay _______ large salaries.
   (a) so
   (b) such a
   (c) such
   (d) a such

6. _______ turn is it? It’s your turn.
   (a) Which
   (b) To whom
   (c) Whom
   (d) Whose

7. ‘Mr. Harmsworth,’ I said _______ a weak voice.
   (a) in
   (b) with
   (c) on
   (d) under

**Vocabulary**

8. Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see me. He wanted to _______ me.
   (a) watch
   (b) look at
   (c) look for
   (d) speak to

9. I felt nervous because I felt _______.
   (a) angry
   (b) cross
   (c) anxious
   (d) ill

10. It’s your turn. _______.
    (a) It’s your line
    (b) It’s your row
    (c) You’re next
    (d) It’s your chance

11. Don’t interrupt! Don’t _______.
    (a) speak
    (b) talk
    (c) talk while I’m talking
    (d) cut off

12. The writer would receive an extra £1,000 a year. He would get £1,000 a year _______.
    (a) less
    (b) more
    (c) over
    (d) up

**Sentence structure**

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.

The firm hadn’t the money to pay such large salaries.

The firm couldn’t ___________________________.
First listen and then answer the question.

What was the polite request?

If you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it. You will be very lucky if he lets you go without a ticket. However, this does not always happen. Traffic police are sometimes very polite. During a holiday in Sweden, I found this note on my car: ‘Sir, we welcome you to our city. This is a “No Parking” area. You will enjoy your stay here if you pay attention to our street signs. This note is only a reminder.’ If you receive a request like this, you cannot fail to obey it!

New words and expressions

- park (1.1) /pa:k/ v. 停车
- traffic (1.1) /'trakst/ n. 交通
- ticket (1.3) /'tikt/ n. 交通罚款单
- note (1.5) /naut/ n. 便条
- area (1.6) /'earia/ n. 地段
- sign (1.7) /sain/ n. 指示牌
- reminder (1.7) /ri'maindr/ n. 提醒
- fail (1.8) /feil/ v. 失败, 忘记
- obey (1.8) /'oeb/ v. 服从

Notes on the text

1. if he lets you go without a ticket, 如果他没给你罚款单就放你走，let (someone) go 意思是“放行”
2. traffic police, 交通警察。police 是集合名词, 后面用复数动词。
3. “No Parking” area, 禁止停车的地段。
4. street signs, 交通标志。

参考译文

一旦你把汽车停错了地方，交通警很快就会发现。如果他没给你罚款单就放你走了，算你走运。然而，情况并不都是这样，交通警有时也很客气。有一次在瑞典度假，我发现我的车上有这样一个字条：“先生，欢迎您光临我们的城市。此处是‘禁止停车’区。如果您对我们街上的标牌稍加注意，您在此会过得很快乐的。谨此提请注意。”如果你收到这样的恳求，你是不是不遵照执行的?

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.

1. Do traffic police usually give you a ticket if you park your car in the wrong place or not?
2. When did the writer find a polite note on his car?
3. What did the traffic policeman want him to do?
4 Can anyone fail to obey a request like this or not?

Key structures 关键句型

If you open the door you will get a surprise. 条件句

在第 1 册的第 137-138 课中我们接触到了 if 引导的条件句。下面的条件句主要是用来询问或谈论十分可能的事情。在这些条件句中，if 从句用现在时，主句用将来时 (will)。

Study these sentences. Pay close attention to the words in italics.

仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的词或词组。

a  If he is out, I’ll call tomorrow. 如果他不在，我明天打电话。
   If it rains tomorrow, we’ll stay at home. 如果明天下雨，我们将呆在家里。
   You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry. 你如果不快点儿，会误了火车的。
   If you see him, will you tell him about it? 如果你见到他，你能告诉他那件事吗？
   If he is working, I won’t disturb him. 如果他正在干活，我就不打扰他了。
   If I have time, I’ll be writing to him tomorrow. 如果我有时间，我明天给他写信。
   He will come tomorrow if he can. 如果有可能的话，他明天会来的。
   If they can help you they will. 如果他们有可能，他们会帮助你的。

b  If you make a mistake, correct it. 如果你出了一个错，纠正它。
   If you don’t like the food, don’t eat it. 如果你不喜欢，就别吃它了。
   Please don’t disturb him if he is busy. 如果他正忙着，请别打扰他。

Exercises 练习

A  How many times has the word if been used in the passage?

课文中有几个由 if 引导的条件句？

B  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用正确的时态填空。完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

1  If you _______ (park) your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman soon _______ (find) it.
2  You _______ (be) very lucky if he _______ (let) you go without a ticket.
3  You _______ (enjoy) your stay here if you _______ (pay) attention to our street signs.
4  If you _______ (receive) a request like this, you _______ (cannot) fail to obey it!

C  Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses in these sentences.

用正确的时态填空。

1  If it _______ (rain), I shall take an umbrella with me.
2  You never _______ (pass) this test if you don’t work hard.
3  If he _______ (be) here before 10 o’clock, I shall see him.
4  If he plays well, he _______ (get) into the team.
5  If he _______ (enjoy) concerts, why doesn’t he come with us?
6  Tell him to wait for me if he _______ (be) not in a hurry.

D  Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses in this paragraph.

用正确的时态填空。
A mother received a letter from her eight-year-old daughter. Here is part of it: “If I ______ (listen) to the radio, don’t tell me to do my homework. If I ______ (do) something wrong, ______ (not shout) at me. If the house ______ (be) untidy, ______ (not blame) me. If you ______ (want) me to do something, ______ (not forget) to say “please”. If I ______ (play) a nice game, ______ (not send) me to bed. If I ______ (ask) for something, don’t always say “No!” If it ______ (be) cold ______ (not put) the cat out. Don’t say “don’t” so often!”

**Special difficulties** 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

a  *Police*. Traffic police are sometimes very polite. (II.3-4)

Study these examples:

The police are looking for him. They have not found him. 警察正在找他，他们还没有找到他。

There were police everywhere. 到处都是警察。

b  *Pay attention to, Care, Take care of, Look after.*

Compare the following:

Please pay attention to the blackboard. 注意看黑板。

I don’t care if he breaks his neck! 他折断脖子，我也不在乎!

Don’t worry about the garden. I’ll take care of/look after it while you are on holiday. 别担心花园，你度假的时候我会照顾它的。

Please take care of/look after the children for me when I am out. 我出去的时候请代我照看孩子。

c  *Remind and Remember.* This note is only a reminder. (I.7)

I reminded him to post my letter. 我提醒他给我寄信。

I remembered to post your letter. 我没有忘记为你寄信。

Remember me to your mother. 代我向你的母亲问好。

d  *You.* If you receive a request like this ... (II.7-8)

Instead of saying:  

One must be careful these days.  

One must never tell lies.  

We can say:  

You must be careful these days.  

You must never tell lies.  

‘You’ can have the sense of ‘anyone’.  

英语中第二人称代词 you 有“任何人”的意思。

**Exercise** 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

选择正确的词。

1. You can only learn if you (look after) (pay attention).
2. Don’t forget to (remind) (remember) me about it tomorrow.
3. The police (is knocking) (are knocking) at the door.
4. Our neighbours will (pay attention to) (look after) our house when we are away.
5. (Remind me) (Remember me) to your wife.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Traffic police are ________.
   (a) occasionally very polite  (b) never very polite
   (c) always very polite      (d) seldom very polite

2 In Sweden, the writer ________.
   (a) parked his car in the wrong place and received a polite note from the police
   (b) parked his car in the wrong place and received a ticket from the police
   (c) parked his car in the wrong place and paid a fine
   (d) parked his car in the wrong place and quarrelled with a policeman

Structure 句型

3 If you park your car in the right place you ________ receive a ticket.
   (a) will            (b) wouldn’t        (c) didn’t   (d) won’t

4 Traffic police never let you ________ without a ticket.
   (a) go             (b) to go           (c) going    (d) have gone

5 We welcome you to our city. You ________ to our city.
   (a) welcome        (b) are welcome     (c) have welcomed (d) are welcoming

6 ‘No Parking’ means ________.
   (a) don’t leave your car here
   (b) without parking
   (c) don’t stop
   (d) there’s no room to park here

7 This note is only a reminder. It’s ________.
   (a) nothing        (b) no one          (c) nothing extra (d) nothing more

Vocabulary 词汇

8 This is a ‘No Parking’ area. Cars aren’t allowed in this ________.
   (a) district         (b) country          (c) surrounding (d) kingdom

9 You will enjoy your stay. It will ________ you.
   (a) amuse            (b) enjoy             (c) laugh at  (d) please

10 You will enjoy your stay. How long will you ________ here?
   (a) rest             (b) prevent           (c) sit        (d) remain

11 This note is only a reminder. It will help ________.
   (a) you remind       (b) your souvenir     (c) your remembrance (d) you to remember

12 You cannot fail to obey it. You can’t ________ to do this.
   (a) refuse          (b) deny              (c) resist     (d) withdraw

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.

改写下列句子，然后对照课文第一-二行，核对你的答案。

Park your car in the wrong place and a traffic policeman will soon find it.

If __________________________.
First listen and then answer the question.

Why doesn’t Aunt Jennifer tell anyone how old she is?

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She must be at least thirty-five years old. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will have to take part in a new play soon. This time, she will be a girl of seventeen. In the play, she must appear in a bright red dress and long black stockings. Last year in another play, she had to wear short socks and a bright, orange-coloured dress. If anyone ever asks her how old she is, she always answers, ‘Darling, it must be terrible to be grown up!’

New words and expressions

appear (1.2) /əˈpɪər/ v. 登场, 扮演
stage (1.2) /ˈsteɪdʒ/ n. 舞台
bright (1.4) /ˈbrɪt/ adj. 鲜艳的
stocking (1.5) /ˈstɒkɪŋ/ n. (女用) 长筒袜
sock (1.6) /sɒk/ n. 短袜

Notes on the text

1. She must be at least thirty-five years old. 她至少也有 35 岁了。
2. In spite of, 尽管。
3. In a bright red dress, 穿一身鲜红色的裙子。
4. Orange-coloured, 橘红色的。
5. Grown up, 成熟的, 成人的。

Summary writing

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. Is your aunt Jennifer an actress or a nurse?
2. Is she over thirty years old or is she under thirty years old?
3. Does she often appear on the stage as a young girl or not?
4 Will Jennifer act the part of a girl of seventeen in a new play soon or not?
5 Does she ever tell anyone how old she really is or not?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Must**

情态动词 must 常用来表示不可逃避的义务, 这种义务在说话人看来是必须选择的。另外, 还可以用 have to 或 have got to 来表示 must。这 3 种形式就它们所表达的意义而言, 一般可以互换。而 have to 这个短语可以与更多的时态连用。

**Study these sentences:**

**a** *Instead of saying:*

除了这种表达方法外:

- I must leave now.
- He must leave now.

- Must you leave now?
- We must leave early tomorrow.

We can say:

- I have to leave now.
- He has to leave now.

Or: I have got to leave now.
Or: He has got to leave now.

Or: Do you have to leave now?
Or: Have you got to leave now?
Or: We shall have to leave early tomorrow.
Or: We shall have got to leave early tomorrow.

We said he must leave early.

(有关间接引语的时态变化，请参看第 15 课的关键句型)

**b** We cannot use *must* in this sentence.

在下列句子中我们不能用 must, 也就是说, 在过去时的句子中, 要用 had to 来表示 “必须”。

She had to go shopping yesterday.

**c** *must* 用来表示推测。

*Instead of saying:*

除了这种表达方法外:

- I, personally, think he is a fool.
- I, personally, think she is over forty.

We can say:

- He must be a fool.
- She must be over forty.

**Exercises** 练习

**A** Underline the verbs *must* or *have to* in the passage.

挑选出文中的 *must* 或 *have to* 的例子。

**B** Supply *must* or the correct form of *have to* in the spaces below. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用 *must* 或 *have to* 来填空, 注意相应的时态, 完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She ______ be at least thirty-five years old. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will ______ take part in a new play soon. This time, she will be a girl of seventeen. In
the play, she appear in a bright red dress and long black stockings. Last year in another play, she wear short socks and a bright, orange-coloured dress. If anyone ever asks her how old she is, she always answers, ‘Darling, it be terrible to be grown up!’

C Write these sentences again using must or have to in place of the words in italics.

It is necessary for you to work hard.
You must (or have to) work hard.
1 It will be necessary for you to see a doctor.
2 Is it necessary for you to make so much noise?
3 She said it would be necessary for us to stay here.
4 It is necessary for me to have some help.
5 It was necessary for him to go out last night.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

a As. She often appears on the stage as a young girl. (1.2)
As can have a number of meanings:
As can have a number of meanings:
I cannot come as I am busy. (because) 由于忙，我不能来。
As I was leaving the house, the postman brought a letter. (at the time when) 在我离开房子的时候，邮递员送来一封 信。
Do as you are told. (the thing that) 叫你怎么做你就怎么做。
He works as an engineer. (in the position of) 他担任工程师的工作。

b Dress, Suit, Costume. She must appear in a bright red dress. (II.4-5)
Study these examples:
My sister bought a new dress yesterday. 我的妹妹昨天买了一条连衣裙。
My brother never wears ready-made suits. 我的弟弟从来不穿成衣。
All the actors wore fifteenth-century costumes. 所有的演员都穿着 15 世纪的服装。

c Grow and Grow up. It must be terrible to be grown up! (II.7-8)
Study these examples:
Children grow quickly. The grass has grown very high. 孩子们长得很快。草长得很高。
Some people never grow up. (mature in mind) 有些人总是成熟不起来。

Exercises 练习

A What does as mean in these sentences?
在下列句子中 as 是什么意思?
1 He works as a pilot.
2 You mustn’t shout so loudly as you’ll wake up the baby.
3 As we were listening to the radio, someone knocked at the door.
B Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

1. Trees take a long time to (grow) (grow up).
2. My father bought a new (suit) (costume) recently.
3. She hired a (suit) (costume) for the fancy-dress party.
4. Do you like my sister’s new (dress) (costume)?

**Multiple choice questions 多项选择题**

**Comprehension 理解**

1. The story about Jennifer suggests that ________.
   (a) she is not too old to appear on stage as a young girl
   (b) she is too young to appear on stage as a young girl
   (c) she is the right age to appear on stage as a young girl
   (d) she is too old to appear on stage as a young girl

2. One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) We know exactly how old Jennifer is.
   (b) We do not know exactly how old Jennifer is.
   (c) Jennifer is thirty-five years old.
   (d) Jennifer is over thirty-five years old.

**Structure 句型**

3. She must be at least thirty-five years old. In my opinion she ________.
   (a) has    (b) is    (c) can    (d) must

4. ________ is she? At least thirty-five years old.
   (a) How    (b) How big    (c) How much    (d) How old

5. She must appear in a bright red dress. She will be dressed ________ red.
   (a) with    (b) on    (c) in    (d) by

6. She must appear in a bright red dress. That’s what she ________.
   (a) has done    (b) have to do    (c) has to do    (d) had done

7. She had to wear short socks. It was ________ for her to wear them.
   (a) certain    (b) necessary    (c) important    (d) impossible

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. She often appears as a young girl. She ________ on the stage as a young girl.
   (a) is presented    (b) points    (c) shows    (d) seems

9. We went to the theatre to see a ________.
   (a) play    (b) game    (c) toy    (d) match

10. Jennifer will take part in the play. She ________ it.
    (a) will write    (b) won’t be in    (c) will be in    (d) will produce

11. Men usually wear ________.
    (a) socks instead of stockings    (b) stockings instead of socks
    (c) either socks or stockings    (d) neither socks nor stockings

12. She is grown up. She is ________.
    (a) very old    (b) an adolescent    (c) a teenager    (d) an adult.
Lesson 18 He often does this! 他经常干这种事!

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What had happened to the writer's bag?

After I had had lunch at a village pub, I looked for my bag. I had left it on a chair beside the door and now it wasn't there! As I was looking for it, the landlord came in.
‘Did you have a good meal?’ he asked.
‘Yes, thank you,’ I answered, ‘but I can’t pay the bill. I haven’t got my bag.’

The landlord smiled and immediately went out. In a few minutes he returned with my bag and gave it back to me.
‘I’m very sorry,’ he said. ‘My dog had taken it into the garden. He often does this!’

New words and expressions 生词和短语

pub (1.1) /pʌb/ n. 小酒店
landlord (1.3) /'lændləd/ n. 店主
bill (1.5) /bil/ n. 帐单

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 pay the bill, 付帐。
2 He often does this. 他经常干这种事。句中的 He 是指店主的狗。英语国家人士常用人称代词 he 或 she 来指自己喂养的宠物。

参考译文

我在一家乡村小酒店吃过午饭后，就找我的提包。我曾把它放在门边的椅子上，可这会儿不见了! 当我正在寻找时，酒店老板走了进来。
“您吃得好吗?”他问。
“很好，谢谢。”我回答，“但我付不了帐，我的提包没有了。”
酒店老板笑了笑，马上走了出去。一会儿工夫他拿着我的提包回来了，把它还给了我。
“实在抱歉，”他说，“我的狗把它弄到花园里去了，他常干这种事!”

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 40 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不超过 40 个单词。
1. Did the writer have lunch at a village pub or not?
2. Could she find her bag after her meal or not?
3. Could she pay the bill or not?
4 Who soon found it for her?
5 Where had his dog taken it?

Key structures 关键句型

Have

Study these uses of have:
研究一下 have 的多种用法:

a Have you had lunch yet? 现在完成时 (KS4)
After he had finished work he went home. 过去完成时 (KS14)

b Instead of saying:
除了这种表述方法外:

We can say:

He has a new house.
Or: He has got a new house.
He has a lot of money.
Or: He has got a lot of money.
Has he a lot of money?
Or: Has he got a lot of money?
He hasn't a lot of money.
Or: He hasn't got a lot of money.

c Instead of saying:
除了这种表述方法外:

We can say:

I had a bath before dinner.
Have a biscuit.
I had a good time at the party.
I had a letter from him yesterday.

Exercises 练习

A These questions are on the passage. Write a complete sentence in answer to each question.
以下这些问句都是有关本课课文的，用完整的句子来回答每个问题。

1 When did you look for your bag?
2 What had you done with your bag?
3 What did the landlord ask you?
4 Why can't you pay the bill?
5 What had the dog done with the bag?

B Supply the correct form of have in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用 have 的正确形式填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

1 After I _______ lunch at the village pub, I looked for my bag.
2 I _______ left it on a chair beside the door.
3 "_______ a good meal?" he asked.
4 I can't pay the bill. I _______ got my bag.
5 I'm very sorry. My dog _______ taken it into the garden.
Unit 1 Lesson 18

C In which of these sentences can we put the verb got after have?

在下面哪几句话中可用 have got 来代替 have?

1. He had a drink before dinner.
2. Mrs. Sullivan has a lot of money.
3. He had to leave early.
4. We have had a long conversation.
5. My mother has a headache.
6. They had a good time at the party.
7. This sock has a hole in it.
8. She has to be patient with him.
9. I have a bath every day.
10. This room has four windows.
11. He has a farm.
12. We had a letter from Jill yesterday.

Special difficulties 难点

a. Read these sentences. Each one contains the verb give. The verb has a different meaning in each sentence.

He returned with my bag and gave it back to me. (1.8) 给回
Give in your exercise books to me. 把你的练习本交给我。
He can't continue fighting. He will soon give in. (He will surrender.) 他不能继续战斗了, 很快将投降。
I gave away my collection of stamps to the little boy. (I have stopped.) 我已戒烟。
I have given up smoking. (I have stopped.) 我已戒烟。
Three of our officers gave themselves up to the enemy. (They surrendered.) 我方的3名军官向敌人投降了。

b. Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Beside (1.2), Besides.
Come and sit beside me. (next to me) 过来, 坐到我的身旁。
Besides this photograph, I have a number of others. (in addition to) 除了这张照片外, 我还有好几张其他的照片。

Exercises 练习

A Supply the missing words in the following sentences.

用适当的词填空。

1. Will the person who took my ruler please give it ________ to me?
2. When my children grew up, I gave all their toys ________
3. When do we have to give ________ our compositions?
4. We were losing the battle but we did not give ________

B Supply beside or besides in the following.

用 beside 或 besides 填空。

1. ________ football he plays tennis.
2. Can you see that boy standing ________ the tree?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The writer ________.
   (a) didn’t have her bag with her when she went to the pub
   (b) had her bag with her when she went to the pub
   (c) lost her bag on the way to the pub
   (d) lost her bag after she left the pub
2 The landlord ________.
   (a) was angry because the writer couldn’t pay her bill
   (b) was sorry that the writer couldn’t pay her bill
   (c) knew that the writer couldn’t pay her bill
   (d) knew that the writer could pay her bill

Structure 句型
3 After I had lunch ... After I had ________ it ...
   (a) paid for   (b) eaten   (c) kept   (d) bought
4 She couldn’t find her bag. It wasn’t ________.
   (a) their   (b) theirs   (c) they’re   (d) there
5 ________ I was looking for it, the landlord came in.
   (a) Because   (b) While   (c) But   (d) Even if
6 I haven’t got a bag. I don’t ________ one.
   (a) get   (b) buy   (c) own   (d) owe
7 My dog had taken it into the garden. It was ________ the garden.
   (a) to   (b) into   (c) at   (d) in

Vocabulary 词汇
8 I looked for my bag. I ________ it.
   (a) tried to look after   (b) tried to look at   (c) tried to find
   (d) tried to see
9 I had left it on the chair. That’s where I ________ it.
   (a) put   (b) let   (c) allowed
   (d) permitted
10 The chair was beside the door. It was ________ it.
    (a) near   (b) far from   (c) next to
    (d) besides
11 The landlord returned with my bag. He ________ quickly.
    (a) turned   (b) turned back   (c) came back
    (d) turned round
12 He gave it back to me. He ________ to me.
    (a) turned it   (b) returned it
    (c) turned it back   (d) turned it round

Sentence structure 句子结构
Write the words he actually spoke, then check your answer against the text.
将下列间接引语改写成直接引语，然后对照课文第 4 行，核对你的答案。
He asked me if I had had a good meal.
’ ________ ________? ’ he asked.
Lesson 19  Sold out  票已售完

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

When will the writer see the play?

‘The play may begin at any moment,’ I said.
‘It may have begun already,’ Susan answered.
I hurried to the ticket office. ‘May I have two tickets please?’ I asked.

‘I’m sorry, we’ve sold out,’ the girl said.
‘What a pity!’ Susan exclaimed.
Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office.
‘Can I return these two tickets?’ he asked.
‘Certainly,’ the girl said.

I went back to the ticket office at once.
‘Could I have those two tickets please?’ I asked.
‘Certainly,’ the girl said, ‘but they’re for next Wednesday’s performance. Do you still want them?’
‘I might as well have them,’ I said sadly.

New words and expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hurry (1.3)</td>
<td>/hʌri/</td>
<td>v. 匆忙</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket office (1.3)</td>
<td>/tɪkɪt</td>
<td>售票处</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity (1.6)</td>
<td>/'piti/</td>
<td>n. 令人遗憾的事</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exclaim (1.6)</td>
<td>/ɪk'skleɪm/</td>
<td>v. 大声说</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return (1.8)</td>
<td>/rɪ'tɜːn/</td>
<td>v. 退回</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sadly (1.13)</td>
<td>/'sædli/</td>
<td>adv. 悲哀地, 丧气地</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 The play may begin at any moment, 剧马上就要开演了。在这句话中，说话人指的并不是一种确信不疑的事实，而是可能发生的事情，因此用了 may + 动词的结构。
2 It may have begun already. 可能已经开始了。这句话同样表示可能发生的事情，但与上句的区别在于它指的是可能发生的事情，因此，要用“may + 动词的完成时”的结构。
3 we’ve sold out, 票已售完。
4 What a pity! 真遗憾！
5 at once, 立刻。
6 Could I ... please? 这里 could 是代替 can 的一种比较委婉地提出请求的用法。在时间上和 can 没有区别。
7 might as well ... 作“还是……好”、“不妨”解，与 may as well 的意思完全相同，只是前者更为委婉。

参考译文

“剧马上就要开演了，”我说。
“也许已经开演了呢，”苏珊回答说。
我匆匆赶到售票处，问：“我可以买两张票吗?”
“对不起，票已售完。”那位姑娘说。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

1. When was the play going to begin?
2. How many tickets did you ask for?
3. Were there any left or not?
4. Were Susan and you disappointed or not?
5. Who hurried to the ticket office just then?
6. How many tickets did he return?
7. Were they for that day's performance, or were they for next Wednesday's performance?
8. Did you buy them or not?

Key structures 关键句型

Can and May

Study these uses of can and may:

a 表示请求

Instead of saying:
Will you let me use your phone please?
We can say:
Can I use your phone please?
Or: Could I use your phone please?
Or: May I use your phone please?
Or: Might I use your phone please?

b 表示推测

Instead of saying:
Perhaps he will come tomorrow.
We can say:
He may come tomorrow.
Or: He might come tomorrow.
He may have telephoned last night, but I'm not sure.
Or: He might have telephoned last night, but I'm not sure.

Perhaps he telephoned last night, but I'm not sure.

Now study these expressions:

Do you want to come to the cinema with me? 你想要和我一起去看电影吗?
Unit 1 Lesson 19

I haven’t got anything to do. So I may as well (or: I might as well) come with you.

Do you think he’ll pass that exam? You think he’ll pass that exam?
He’ll never pass. He might as well give up.

Exercises 练习

A Read the passage again. Put a line under the verbs can, could, may and might.

B Use a phrase with can, could, may or might in place of the words in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

‘Perhaps the play will begin at any moment,’ I said.
‘Perhaps it has begun already,’ Susan answered.
I hurried to the ticket office. ‘Will you let me have two tickets, please?’ I asked.
‘I’m sorry, we’ve sold out,’ the girl said.

Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office.
‘Will you let me return these two tickets?’ he asked.
I went back to the ticket office at once.
‘Will you let me have those two tickets please?’ I asked.
‘Certainly,’ the girl said, ‘but they are for next Wednesday’s performance. Do you still want them?’
‘Not really, but I’ll have them,’ I said sadly.

Special difficulties 难点

Instead of saying:

1. I am sorry.
2. We have sold out.

We can say:

1. I’m sorry. (1.5)
2. We’ve sold out. (1.5)

Exercise 练习

Change the form of the verbs in italics.

1. I haven’t seen him for three years.
2. There are not many people here.
3. He doesn’t understand what you’re saying.
4. She did not tell me she had not seen you.
5. I shall not stay a moment longer.
6. He will not do as he is told.
7. When’ll I see you?
8. What’ve you done? You’ve broken that bottle!
9. He’s in the living room. He’s just come home.
10. I cannot understand why he hasn’t arrived.
11. You mustn’t believe him.
12. I wasn’t expecting you. You weren’t supposed to arrive until 6 o’clock.
13. That man’s been in prison.
14. They hadn’t seen the film before.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The writer couldn’t get tickets for the performance that evening because ________.
   (a) they had all been sold
   (b) there were only a few left
   (c) there was no one at the ticket office
   (d) the girl at the ticket office wouldn’t give him any
2. The writer ________.
   (a) was very pleased to get tickets for next Wednesday’s performance
   (b) didn’t buy tickets for next Wednesday’s performance
   (c) didn’t want tickets for next Wednesday’s performance
   (d) wasn’t too pleased to get tickets for next Wednesday’s performance

Structure 句型
3. The play may begin at any moment. It ________.
   (a) has begun
   (b) won’t begin for a long time
   (c) hasn’t begun yet
   (d) began a long time ago
4. May I have two tickets please? ________ two tickets please?
   (a) You must give me
   (b) You have got to give me
   (c) Could I have
   (d) You may give me
5. May I have two tickets? Please let me ________ two tickets.
   (a) having
   (b) to have
   (c) had
   (d) have
6. The performance ________ next Wednesday.
   (a) was
   (b) will be
   (c) shall be
   (d) has been
7. I might as well have them. I am ________ to have them.
   (a) very pleased
   (b) very glad
   (c) not very glad
   (d) delighted

Vocabulary 词汇
8. I hurried to the ticket office. I ________.
   (a) went there
   (b) went there quickly
   (c) went there slowly
   (d) didn’t go there
9. ‘What a pity!’ Susan exclaimed. Susan was ________.
   (a) pleased
   (b) glad
   (c) sorry
   (d) amused
10. Can I return these tickets? I want to ________.
    (a) give them back
    (b) give them in
    (c) give them up
    (d) give them off
11. ‘Certainly,’ the girl said. ‘_______,’ the girl said.
    (a) Off course
    (b) Course
    (c) Of course
    (d) Surely not
12. Do you still want them? Do you want them ________?
    (a) yet
    (b) even
    (c) now
    (d) more

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 13 行，核对你的答案。
I don’t really want them, but I’ll have them.
I might ________.
Lesson 20  One man in a boat  独坐孤舟

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音, 然后回答以下问题。

Why is fishing the writer’s favourite sport?

Fishing is my favourite sport. I often fish for hours without catching anything. But this does not worry me. Some fishermen are unlucky. Instead of catching fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. I am even less lucky. I never catch anything — not even old boots. After having spent whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag. ‘You must give up fishing!’ my friends say. ‘It’s a waste of time.’ But they don’t realize one important thing. I’m not really interested in fishing. I am only interested in sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all!

New words and expressions  生词短语

catch (1.1) /kætʃ/ (caught /kɔtʃt/, caught) v. 抓到
fisherman (1.2) /'fɪʃəmən/ n. 钓鱼人, 水手
boot (1.3) /bu:t/ n. 靴子
waste (1.6) /weist/ n. 浪费
realize (1.7) /'rɪəlaɪz/ v. 意识到

Notes on the text  课文注释

1. Fishing is my favourite sport. 钓鱼是我最喜欢的一项运动。在这句话中, 主语是 fishing, 这是一个动词, 由动词加上-ing组成。

2. I often fish for hours without catching anything. 我经常一钓数小时却无所获。这句话中的 catching 也是动名词, 它作介词 without 的宾语, 动名词也有动词的特性, 它可以有自己的宾语。

3. After having spent whole mornings on the river, 我在河上呆了整整一个上午之后。由于作介词 after 的宾语的动名词所表示的动作发生在谓语动词 go 之前, 因此, 动名词要用完成形式, 即 having spent。

4. be interested in doing sth., 对做……感兴趣。

参考译文

钓鱼是我特别喜爱的一项运动。我经常一钓数小时却无所获，但我从不为此烦恼。有些垂钓者就是不走运，他们往往鱼钓不到，却钓上来些旧靴子和垃圾。我的运气甚至不及他们。我什么东西也未钓到过——就连旧靴子也没有。我总是在河上呆整整一上午，然后空着袋子回家。“你可别再钓鱼了!”我的朋友们说，“这是浪费时间。”然而他们没有认识到重要的一点，我并不是真的对钓鱼有兴趣，我感兴趣的只是独坐孤舟，无所事事！

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 50 个单词。
1 What is the writer's favourite sport?
2 What do some unlucky fishermen catch?
3 Is the writer as lucky as they are, or is he not so lucky?
4 Does he ever catch anything?
5 Is he really interested in fishing?
6 What is the only thing that interests him?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**You must give up fishing.** 动名词

Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the verbs in italics. All these verbs end in -ing.

细读下面的例句，特别注意用斜体印出的以 -ing 结尾的词。

a 动名词作主语

*Eating* is always a pleasure. 吃总是一件愉快的事情。

*Watching* television is my favourite pastime. 看电视是我最喜爱的业余爱好。

*Reading* in bed is something I always enjoy. 我总喜欢躺在床上看书。

b 动名词作宾语

I am very keen on *cycling*. 我非常喜欢骑自行车。

She is afraid of *staying* in that house alone. 她害怕单独住在那间屋子里。

He is capable of *doing* anything. 他能胜任任何事情。

c Note how these sentences have been joined.

注意在以下例句中如何用动名词将两个短句连到一起。

He sat there. He did not say anything. 他坐在那儿，他什么话也不说。

He sat there without *saying* anything. 他默默地坐在那里。

He turned off the radio. He left the room. 他关掉了收音机，他离开了房间。

Before *leaving* the room, he turned off the radio. 离开房间之前，他关掉了收音机。

He looked at this watch. He hurried to the station. 他看了看手表，他匆忙赶到火车站。

*After* looking at his watch, he hurried to the station. 他看了看手表之后，就匆忙赶往火车站。

Or: *After having looked* at his watch, he hurried to the station.

I must apologize. I interrupted you. 我得表示道歉，我打断了你的谈话（工作）。

I must apologize for *interrupting* you. 由于打断了你的谈话（工作），我得表示道歉。

Or: I must apologize for *having interrupted* you.

I must apologize. I did not let you know earlier. 我没有早一点让你知道。

I must apologize for *not letting* you know earlier. 由于没有早点让你知道，我得表示道歉。

Or: I must apologize for *not having let* you know earlier.

He congratulated me. I won the competition. 他向我祝贺，我赢得了这次比赛。

He congratulated me on *winning* the competition. 在我赢得这次比赛之际，他向我祝贺。

Or: He congratulated me on *having won* the competition.

**Exercises** 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage that end in -ing.

在课文中所有动词加 -ing 的例子下面划上横线。
Unit 1 Lesson 20

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

______ (Fish) is my favourite sport. I often fish for hours without ______ (catch) anything. But this does not worry me. Some fishermen are unlucky. Instead of ______ (catch) fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. I am even less lucky. I never catch anything — not even old boots. After ______ (have spend) whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag. ‘You must give up ______ (fish)!’ my friends say. ‘It’s a waste of time.’ But they don’t realize one important thing. I’m not really interested in ______ (fish). I am only interested in ______ (sit) in a boat and ______ (do) nothing at all!

C Join these pairs of sentences with the words given in parentheses. Make any other necessary changes.

1 He went out of the restaurant, (without) He did not pay the bill.
2 She bought a pair of boots, (instead of) She did not get a pair of shoes.
3 She was afraid, (of) She did not spend the night alone.
4 (After) She heard the news. She fainted.
5 Think carefully, (before) Answer my question.
6 (On) I saw the plane coming towards me. I dashed for cover.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a Interest and Interesting. Excited and Exciting.

Fishing is not interesting. I am not really interested in fishing. (l.7-8)

The match was very exciting. The crowd got very excited.

b It’s and Its. It’s a waste of time. (l.6-7)

It’s (= it is) cold today. It’s raining too. 今天天气冷，而且正在下雨。

The cat drank its milk. 猫喝了它的牛奶。

This engine has lost its power. 这台发动机已失去了动力。

c Realize and Understand. They don’t realize ... (l.7)

I realized he was mad. 我意识到他疯了。

He didn’t realize that he had made a mistake. 他没有意识到他犯了一个错误。

I don’t understand English. 我不懂英语。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following.

1 I (realized) (understood) he was not telling me the truth.
2 This poem is difficult. (It’s) (Its) impossible for you to (understand) (realize) (its) (it’s) meaning.
3 There was some (excited) (exciting) news on the radio.
4 He is not an (interesting) (interested) person.
5. He is an explorer. He leads an (excited) (exciting) life.
6. I am not (interesting) (interested) in other people’s affairs.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**
1. The writer ________.
   (a) always catches something  (b) never catches anything
   (c) sometimes pulls up old boots and rubbish  (d) never goes home with an empty bag
2. The writer enjoys ________.
   (a) catching fish  (b) fishing
   (c) doing nothing  (d) swimming in the river

**Structure 句型**
3. ________ is your favourite sport? Fishing.
   (a) Who  (b) Which  (c) Whom  (d) Whose
4. He doesn’t catch anything. He never catches ________.
   (a) nothing  (b) anything  (c) something  (d) everything
5. I am even less lucky. I am ________ lucky.
   (a) more  (b) as  (c) not so  (d) so
6. His bag is empty. He has ________.
   (a) a empty bag  (b) an empty bag  (c) empty bag  (d) one empty bag
7. I am only interested in doing nothing. That’s ________ I’m interested in.
   (a) only  (b) the one  (c) all  (d) the only

**Vocabulary 词汇**
8. Fishing is my favourite sport. It is ________.
   (a) the one I like best  (b) prefer  (c) my best  (d) the best
9. A fisherman usually ________ fish.
   (a) buys  (b) sells  (c) tries to catch  (d) keeps
10. He never ________ any fish.
    (a) holds  (b) takes hold of  (c) catches  (d) takes
11. He always goes ________ with an empty bag.
    (a) to home  (b) to house  (c) to the house  (d) home
12. You must give up fishing. You must ________.
    (a) stop  (b) begin  (c) surrender  (d) end

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Join these two sentences with without, then check your answer against the text.

I often fish for hours. I don’t catch anything.
Lesson 21 Mad or not? 是不是疯了？

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why do people think the writer is mad? 为什么人们认为作者疯了？

Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. I live near an airport and passing planes can be heard night and day. The airport was built years ago, but for some reason it could not be used then. Last year, however, it came into use. Over a hundred people must have been driven away from their homes by the noise. I am one of the few people left. Sometimes I think this house will be knocked down by a passing plane. I have been offered a large sum of money to go away, but I am determined to stay here. Everybody says I must be mad and they are probably right.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

mad (1.1) /mæd/ adj. 发疯
reason (1.3) /ˈriːzanoʊ/ n. 原因
sum (1.7) /sʌm/ n. 量
determined (1.8) /dɪˈtɜːrnɪd/ adj. 坚定的，下决心的

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. 飞机正在逐渐把我逼疯。drive someone mad, 逼疯。
2. passing planes can be heard night and day. 过往飞机日夜不绝于耳。在句中 passing 用来修饰名词 planes, 起形容词作用, 是一个现在分词。
3. came into use, 启用。
4. Over a hundred people must have been driven away from their homes by the noise. 有 100 多人肯定是被噪音逼得离家远去。情态动词 must + 完成时态, 是对过去事情的推测, 猜想某一事情肯定已经发生。drive away, 赶走, 逼走。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words. 回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 50 个单词。

1. Is the writer slowly going mad or not?
2. Where does he live?
3. What can be heard night and day?
4. Have most of his neighbours left their homes or not?
5. Has he been offered money to leave or not?
6. What is he determined to do?
7. What does everyone say?
8. Are they probably right or wrong?

**Key structures**

Passing planes can be heard night and day. (KS10) (参见第10课关键句型)

a. Read these pairs of sentences carefully. The first sentence in each pair tells us about a person (Who).
   The second tells us about a thing (What or Which).
   他将会修理你的表。
   你的表将会被修理。
   他能修理你的表。
   你的表能被修理。
   他们必须测试这辆新车。
   这辆新车必须被测试。
   你必须重写这封信。
   这封信必须被重写。
   我告诉过他会这么做。
   我告诉过他可以这么做。
   我告诉过他会做这件事。
   我告诉过它可以做这件事。
   我找不到我的包。有人偷走了。
   我找不到我的包。它已经被偷走了。
   我找不到我的包。有人肯定把它偷走了。
   我找不到我的包。它肯定被人偷走了。

b. Instead of saying:
   We can say:
   The police will arrest the thieves.
   The thieves will be arrested (by the police).
   You must pay me for this.
   I must be paid for this.
   They cannot find him.
   He cannot be found.

**Exercises**

A. There are some verbs in the passage which are like the examples given above. Can you find them?
   找出课文中所有被动语态的例子。

B. Change the form of the phrases in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
   将斜体印出的部分改写成被动语态, 完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
   I live near an airport and I can hear passing planes night and day. They built the airport years ago, but for some reason they could not use it then. Last year, however, it came into use. The noise must have driven over a hundred people away from their homes. I am one of the few people left. Sometimes I think a passing plane will knock down this house. They have offered me a large sum of money to go away, but I am determined to stay here.
Unit 1 Lesson 21

C Change the form of these sentences. Your sentences must begin with the words in italics.

1. I will send a message immediately.
2. We must sell all these goods.
3. I told you he would receive the parcel in time.
4. He has to deliver the letter by hand.
5. They must have lost your letter in the post.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study these examples:

a. Drive. This verb can be used in many ways. 这个动词的词义很多。
Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. (1.1)
He drives his car very badly. 他开车开得很糟糕。
The farmer drove the cattle into the field. 农夫把牛赶进田里。
Our army drove the enemy back. 我们的军队把敌人撵了回去。
During the war, many people were driven out of their homes. 战争期间，许多人被赶出了家园。

b. Home (1.5) and House (1.6).
After work I always go home. I stay at home during the weekend. 下班后我总是回家。周末我呆在家里。
They are building many new houses in our district. Houses are very expensive. I paid a lot of money for a new house. 他们正在我们这区修建大量新房子。住宅很昂贵。我为一栋新房子付了一大笔款。

Exercises 练习

A Write sentences using drive out of, drive back and drive into.

B Supply house(s) or home in the following:

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The airport _________.
   (a) has been used since it was completed  (b) has never been used
   (c) came into use recently  (d) has just come into use


2 The writer _______.
(a) will be leaving his house soon  (b) has accepted a lot of money for his house
(c) likes the noise of passing planes  (d) has refused to leave his house

Structure 句型
3 Passing planes can be heard night and day. You _______ them all the time.
(a) can heard  (b) can to hear  (c) can hear  (d) can be heard
4 It couldn’t be used then. It wasn’t _______ to use it.
(a) able  (b) allowed  (c) impossible  (d) possible
5 Over a hundred people must have been driven away. _______ they were.
(a) I think  (b) I’m sure  (c) Certain  (d) Of course
6 I am one of the few people left. So there _______.
(a) are none left  (b) is one left  (c) are some left  (d) are a lot left
7 How much _______? A large sum of money.
(a) you have been offered  (b) have you been offered
(c) you have offered  (d) they offered you

Vocabulary 词汇
8 I have been offered some money. They want to _______ me some money.
(a) serve  (b) give  (c) take  (d) make
9 I have been offered a large _______ of money.
(a) amount  (b) number  (c) some  (d) piece
10 I am determined to stay here. I _______ stay here.
(a) am will to  (b) want to  (c) may  (d) am going to
11 Everyone says I must be mad and they are probably right. _______ they are.
(a) Of course  (b) It’s certain  (c) Perhaps  (d) It’s sure
12 Everyone says I must be mad and that is probably _______.
(a) just  (b) fair  (c) correct  (d) equal

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子, 然后对照课文第 2-3 行, 核对你的答案。
They built the airport years ago, but for some reason they couldn’t use it then.
The airport ________________, but for some reason it _________________.

95
Lesson 22  A glass envelope  玻璃信封

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
How did Jane receive a letter from a stranger?

My daughter, Jane, never dreamed of receiving a letter from a girl of her own age in Holland. Last year, we were travelling across the Channel and Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle. She threw the bottle into the sea. She never thought of it again, but ten months later, she received a letter from a girl in Holland. Both girls write to each other regularly now. However, they have decided to use the post office. Letters will cost a little more, but they will certainly travel faster.

New words and expressions  生词和短语

dream (1.1) /dri:m/ v. 做梦, 梦想

age (1.2) /eid^f/ n. 年龄

channel (1.3) /'tʃænl/ n. 海峡

throw (1.4) /θrəu/ (threw /θru:/, thrown /θrən/) v. 扔, 扔

Notes on the text  课文注释

1  dreamed of receiving a letter, 梦想到收到一封信。dream of 作“梦想”, “幻想”讲; receiving 是动名词, 作介词 of 的宾语。

2  Last year, we were travelling across the Channel and ..., 去年, 当我们横渡英吉利海峡时……。这是过去进行时的一种用法, 用来叙述故事情节的背景。过去进行时描述背景, 由此引出一般过去时表示的新动作。

3  with her name and address on it 用来进一步说明 a piece of paper。可译作“写有她姓名和地址的（一张纸条）”。

参考译文

我的女儿简从未想过会接到荷兰一位同龄姑娘的来信。去年, 当我们横渡英吉利海峡时, 简把写有她姓名和住址的一张纸条装进了一只瓶子, 又将瓶子扔进了大海。此后她就再没有去想那只瓶子。但 10 个月以后, 她收到了荷兰一位姑娘的来信。现在这两位姑娘定期通信了。然而她们还是决定利用邮局。这样会稍微多花点钱, 但肯定是快得多了。

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 55 个单词。

1  When did Jane cross the Channel?

2  What did she throw into the sea?

3  What did it contain?
What did she receive ten months later?
Do they write to each other regularly now or not?
Do they send their letters by post, or do they send them in bottles?

Key structures 关键句型

Verbs followed by of, from, in and on 后面可跟 of, from, in 和 on 的动词

We can put of, from, in, or on after certain verbs:
of, from, in, on 可以用在某些动词的后面:
Jane never dreamed of receiving a letter ... (11.1-2)
She never thought of it again. (11.4-5)
She received a letter from a girl in Holland. (11.5-6)

Use this list for reference:

以下搭配表可供参考:

a OF: accuse, approve, assure, beware, boast (or about), complain (or about), consist, convince (or about), cure, despair, dream (or about), expect (or from), hear (or from), be/get rid, smell, suspect, think (or about), tire(d), warn (or against).

b FROM: borrow, defend (or against), demand (or of), differ, dismiss, draw (SD 64), emerge, escape, excuse (or for), hinder, prevent, prohibit, protect (or against), receive, separate, suffer.

c IN: believe, delight, employ(ed), encourage, engage(d), experience(d), fail, help (or with), include, indulge, instruct, interest(ed), invest, involve(d), persist, share.

d ON: act, base(d), call (SD 34), comment, concentrate, congratulate, consult (or about), count, decide, depend, economize, embark, experiment, insist, lean (or against), live, operate, perform (or in), pride (oneself), rely, vote (on a motion; for someone), write (or about).

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing words (of, from, in or on) without referring to the above lists as far as possible:

1 I withdrew a lot of money _________ the bank yesterday.
2 I refuse to comment _________ his work.
3 The waiter's tip is included _________ the bill.
4 He congratulated me _________ having got engaged.
5 This warm coat will protect you ______ the cold.
6 Did anything emerge ______ your discussion?
7 I dreamt ______ you last night.
8 You can never rely ______ him to be punctual.
9 Nothing will prevent him ______ succeeding.
10 Are you interested ______ music?
11 I suppose I can count ______ you for help ______ this matter?
12 Beware ______ the dog.
13 He persisted ______ asking questions.
14 I insist ______ your telling me the truth.
15 It took me a long time to get rid ______ him.
16 Do you mean to say you have never heard ______ Beethoven?
17 I separated them ______ each other because they were fighting.
18 They can only cure him ______ his illness if they operate ______ him.
19 You can depend ______ me.
20 I haven’t accused him ______ anything, but I suspect him ______ having taken it.
21 Whatever made you think ______ such a thing?
22 We expect a great deal ______ you, Smith.
23 My hands smell ______ soap.
24 They differ ______ each other so much.
25 He invested a lot of money ______ shipping.
26 The film was based ______ a novel by Dickens.
27 Don’t lean ______ that shelf! You’ll regret it.
28 She often suffers ______ colds.
29 We have embarked ______ a new scheme.
30 I believe ______ taking my time.
31 Jones was dismissed ______ the firm.
32 They began by experimenting ______ rats.
33 Please concentrate ______ what you are doing.
34 She prides herself ______ her clean house.
35 The climber failed ______ his attempt to reach the summit.
36 Many people escaped ______ prisons during the last five years.
37 We must economize ______ fuel.
38 He’s never done any work. He lives ______ his mother.
39 He was employed ______ a factory before he joined the army.
40 And what does this horrible drink consist ______?
41 I shall certainly act ______ your advice.
42 Don’t write ______ the desk!
43 You should not boast ______ your success.
44 You must encourage him ______ his efforts.
45 He should be instructed ______ his duties.
46 Two or three people were involved ______ the accident.
47 Children should be prohibited ______ smoking.
48 I can assure you ______ my support.
49 Do you approve ______ hunting?
50 I despair ______ ever teaching him anything!
51 Has this play ever been performed ________ the stage?
52 I warned him ________ the danger, but he wouldn’t listen to me.
53 How much have you borrowed ________ me already?
54 He delights ________ annoying me.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension** 理解

1 Jane never dreamed of receiving a letter from a girl in Holland because ________.
   (a) it is a long way away (b) she has never been abroad
   (c) no one in Holland knows her address (d) she didn’t expect anyone to find the bottle

2 Both girls ________.
   (a) meet regularly now (b) correspond in the normal way now
   (c) send notes to each other in bottles (d) travel regularly now

**Structure** 句型

3 Jane never dreamed ________ a letter.
   (a) to receive (b) to receiving (c) of receive (d) that she would receive

4 She received a letter from a girl of her own age. The girl is ________ she is.
   (a) the same age with (b) the same age (c) as old (d) the same age as

5 Did she ________ the bottle into the sea?
   (a) threw (b) throw (c) thrown (d) throwing

6 She never thought ________ it again.
   (a) for (b) to (c) at (d) about

7 The girls write ________ regularly now.
   (a) to one another (b) the one to the other (c) each to other (d) to other

**Vocabulary** 词汇

8 We were travelling across the Channel. We went on a ________ across the Channel.
   (a) sail (b) travel (c) trip (d) run

9 Jane wrote her name and address on a ________ of paper.
   (a) lump (b) bar (c) tube (d) sheet

10 Both girls often write to each other now. They write ________.
    (a) frequently (b) occasionally (c) sometimes (d) now and again

11 You can buy ________ at the post office.
    (a) sweets (b) stamps (c) apples (d) sugar

12 They will travel faster. They will travel ________.
    (a) sooner (b) more quickly (c) hurriedly (d) shorter

**Sentence structure** 句子结构

Join these statements together to make one sentence. Then check your answer against the text.
将下列几个句子合成一句话，然后对照课文第 24 行，核对你你的答案。

Last year we were travelling across the Channel. Jane put a piece of paper into a bottle. It had her name and address on it.
Lesson 23  A new house  新居

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why is the new house special?

I had a letter from my sister yesterday. She lives in Nigeria. In her letter, she said that she would come to England next year. If she comes, she will get a surprise. We are now living in a beautiful new house in the country. Work on it had begun before my sister left. The house was completed five months ago. In my letter, I told her that she could stay with us. The house has many large rooms and there is a lovely garden. It is a very modern house, so it looks strange to some people. It must be the only modern house in the district.

New words and expressions  生词和短语

complete (1.5) /'kam'pli:t/ v. 完成
modern (1.7) /'modn/ adj. 新式的，与以往不同的
strange (1.8) /'streindʒ/ adj. 奇怪的
district (1.9) /'distrikt/ n. 地区

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 get a surprise 中的, surprise 这里作“使人惊奇，意外的事物”解，是可数名词。
2 Work on it had begun ..., 住宅的建设在……就开始了。work 是名词，作主语，it 指房屋。
3 The house has many large rooms and there is a lovely garden. 这栋房子里有许多房间，还有一个漂亮的花园。
   there is 这个结构在第 1 册第 42-44 谈中曾经出现过，用来说明人、物的存在。

参考译文

昨天我收到了姐姐的一封信，她住在尼日利亚。在信中她说她明年将到英国来。如果她来了，她会感到非常惊奇的。我们现在住在乡间的一栋漂亮的新住宅里。这栋房子在我姐姐离开之前就已动工了，是5个月以前竣工的。我在信中告诉她，她可以和我们住在一起。这栋房子里有许多房间，还有一个漂亮的花园。它是一栋非常现代化的住宅，因此在有些人看来很古怪。它肯定是这个地区唯一的一栋现代化住宅。

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 50 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 50 个单词。

1 What will your sister do next year?
2 Will she get a surprise if she comes or not?
3 Have you a new house in the country or not?
4 Have you invited your sister to stay with you or not?
5 Is it a very modern house, or is it an old house?
6 Has it got many large rooms and a lovely garden or not?

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Review KS 12-21** 复习第 12-21 课的关键句型

I’ll see you tomorrow. (KS12) (第 12 课)

What will you be doing tomorrow? (KS13) (第 13 课)

After he had finished work he went home. (KS14) (第 14 课)

He said that … He told me … (KS15) (第 15 课)

If you open the door you will get a surprise. (KS16) (第 16 课)

Must (KS17) (第 17 课)

Have (KS18) (第 18 课)

Can and May (KS19) (第 19 课)

Passing planes can be heard night and day. (KS21) (第 21 课)

**Exercises** 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage. Revise any Key Structures you have forgotten.

划出课文中所有的动词。复习你已忘记的关键句型。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案:

I ______ (have) a letter from my sister yesterday. She ________ (live) in Nigeria. In her letter, she ________ (say) that she ________ (come) to England next year. If she ________ (come), she ________ (get) a surprise.

We now ________ (live) in a beautiful new house in the country. Work on it ________ (begin) before my sister ________ (leave). The house ________ (complete) five months ago. In my letter, I ________ (tell) her that she ________ (can stay) with us. The house ________ (have) many large rooms and there ________ (be) a lovely garden. It ________ (be) a very modern house, so it ________ (look) strange to some people.

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

用正确的时态填空:

1 After he had read the book, he ________ (write) a review of it.

2 He did not leave his office until he ________ (finish) work.

3 If he ________ (break) his promise, I’ll never speak to him again.

4 If the weather is fine, we ________ (go) for a picnic.

D Supply said or told in the following sentences. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

用 said 或 told 填空，用动词的正确时态填空:

1 She ________ me she ________ (will) be absent from work.

2 I ________ my mother that I ________ (lose) the key.

3 The manager ________ that he ________ (not like) my work.
Unit 1 Lesson 23

E Which verbs can we use in place of the verbs or phrases in italics? Make any other changes necessary.

1 He owns a new house.
2 He possesses a lot of money.
3 I took a bath before dinner.
4 Take a biscuit.
5 Will you let me use your telephone please?
6 Perhaps the play will begin at any moment.
7 Perhaps it has begun already.
8 It is necessary for me to take a taxi.

Special difficulties 难点

There is and It is

Study these examples:

The house has many large rooms and there is a lovely garden. It is a very modern house, so it looks strange to some people. (1.6-7)

There is a new school in our neighbourhood. It was only built last year. There are 250 pupils at the school. Last year there were only 180. Next year there will be over 300.

What’s the time? It is five o’clock. How far away is the station from here? It is five miles away. What’s the weather like? It is very cold.

Exercise 练习

Supply it or there in the following sentences:

1 ______ is a pity that he could not come.
2 ______ is a bus that leaves in ten minutes.
3 ______ were some men digging up the road outside my house.
4 Look at those clouds. I think ______ will be a thunderstorm.
5 ______ is unusual for him to be late.
6 ______ has been very cold this year.
7 ______ has been no news of him.
8 I am sure ______ will be fine tomorrow.
9 After dinner ______ will be a long discussion on politics.
10 When will ______ be convenient for you to come?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The writer's sister will be surprised  
   (a) when she sees the writer's new house  
   (b) when she comes to England  
   (c) when she sees the writer  
   (d) when she leaves Nigeria

2. Some people will find the house strange because  
   (a) it is modern  
   (b) it is new  
   (c) it is large  
   (d) it is old

Structure 句型

3. If she _____ she will get a surprise.  
   (a) comes  
   (b) came  
   (c) has come  
   (d) will come

4. I like my sister's house. It's a  
   (a) new beautiful house  
   (b) beautiful house new  
   (c) beautiful new house  
   (d) new house beautiful

5. The house _____ five months ago.  
   (a) has completed  
   (b) completed  
   (c) was completed  
   (d) has been completed

6. I told her she could stay with us. That's what I  
   (a) said to her  
   (b) said her  
   (c) told to her  
   (d) told

7. The house has many large rooms. _____ many large rooms.  
   (a) They have  
   (b) They are  
   (c) There have  
   (d) There are

Vocabulary 词汇

8. I had a letter yesterday. I _____ one.  
   (a) sent  
   (b) took  
   (c) wrote  
   (d) received

9. She will come to England _____ year.  
   (a) last  
   (b) next  
   (c) the other  
   (d) the last

10. Our house is in the country. It's not in  
    (a) Nigeria  
    (b) the city  
    (c) England  
    (d) France

11. Work on it had begun before my sister left. My sister left _____ it had begun.  
    (a) after  
    (b) without  
    (c) behind  
    (d) soon

12. It is a very modern house. It was built  
    (a) last  
    (b) late  
    (c) latest  
    (d) recently

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.  
改写下列句子，然后对照课本第 5-6 行，核对你的答案。

'You can stay with us,' I told her.  
I told her that

103
Lesson 24  It could be worse  不幸中之万幸

First listen and then answer the question.

Had the writer’s money been stolen?

I entered the hotel manager’s office and sat down. I had just lost £50 and I felt very upset. ‘I left the money in my room,’ I said, ‘and it’s not there now.’ The manager was sympathetic, but he could do nothing. ‘Everyone’s losing money these days,’ he said. He started to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted by a knock at the door. A girl came in and put an envelope on his desk. It contained £50. ‘I found this outside this gentleman’s room,’ she said. ‘Well,’ I said to the manager, ‘there is still some honesty in this world!’

New words and expressions  生词和短语

manager (1.1) /ˈmænɪdʒə/ n, 经理
upset (1.2) /ˈæpset/ adj. 不安
sympathetic (1.3) /ˈsɪmpəθetɪk/ adj. 表示同情的
complain (1.5) /kəmˈplɛn/ v. 抱怨

wicked (1.5) /ˈwɪkɪd/ adj. 很坏的, 邪恶的
contain (1.7) /kənˈteɪn/ v. 包含, 内装
honesty (1.8) /ˈɒnɪsti/ n. 诚实

Notes on the text  课文注释

1. 本文的题目可以有几种不同的理解方式: “如果我丢失的不止50英镑” “如果经理没有任何同情心” “如果捡到钱的姑娘没有把钱送回来”，结局会更糟糕。
2. Everyone’s losing money these days. 现在大家都在丢钱。

用现在进行时来表示不断重复的动作, 其中常含有埋怨的意思。

参考译文

我走进饭店经理的办公室，坐了下来。我刚刚丢了50英镑，感到非常烦恼。“我把钱放在房间里，”我说，“可现在没有了。”经理深表同情，却限无能为力。“现在大家都在丢钱，”他说。他开始抱怨起这个邪恶的世界来，却被一阵敲门声打断了。一个姑娘走了进来，把一个信封放在了他桌上。这本书装着50英镑。“这是我在候位先生的房门外捡到的，”她说。“是啊，”我对那位经理说，“这世界上还是有诚实可言的!”

Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.

1. How much money had you just lost?
2. How did you feel?
3. Did you tell the manager about it or not?
Could he do anything or not?
What did he begin complaining about?
Who came in with the money just then?
Where had she found it?
Is there still some honesty in this world or not?

Special difficulties 难点

Review SD2-23 复习第2至23课的难点

Exercises 练习

A Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

1. I (took) (received) a letter from him yesterday. (SD4) (第 4 课)
2. I met Harry (in the) (on the) way to the station. (SD5) (第 5 课)
3. (In the) (On the) way from Athens to London, the plane stopped at Rome. (SD5) (第 5 课)
4. Everybody (believe) (believes) he will win. (SD8) (第 8 课)
5. Is your watch made (of) (from) gold? (SD10) (第 10 课)
6. At the end of the month I received my (salary) (wages). (SD11) (第 11 课)
7. Can you (borrow) (lend) me £5? (SD11) (第 11 课)
8. I (asked) (asked for) an explanation. (SD14) (第 14 课)
9. (Except) (Apart from) that, everything is all right. (SD14) (第 14 课)
10. He is such a(n) (irritable) (nervous) person. He is always bad tempered. (SD15) (第 15 课)
11. The police (is) (are) looking for him. (SD16) (第 16 课)
12. Please (look after) (pay attention to) the blackboard. (SD16) (第 16课)
13. (Remind) (Remember) me to your mother. (SD16) (第 16 课)
14. Father bought a new (suit) (costume) yesterday. (SD17) (第 17 课)
15. When I (grow) (grow up) I shall be a pilot. (SD17) (第 17 课)
16. He was standing (besides) (beside) the window. (SD18) (第 18 课)
17. (It’s) (Its) a very (excited) (exciting) film. (SD20) (第 20 课)
18. He does not (realize) (understand) English. (SD20) (第 20 课)
19. It was raining heavily so I was glad to get (house) (home). (SD21) (第 21 课)
20. (It is) (There is) someone at the door. (SD23) (第 23 课)

B What a day! 感叹句 (SD2)（参见第 2 课难点）

英语中的感叹句通常用 What 来引导，用来表示惊奇、愤怒、赞赏、喜悦等感情，结构通常为：What + 形容词 + 名词 + 主语 + 谓语动词（包括连系动词）。

Write these sentences again. Each sentence must begin with What.
改写以下句子, 用 What 来引导每句话。

1. This is a wonderful garden!
2. He is causing a lot of trouble!
3. It is a tall building!
4. You are a clever girl!
Unit 1 Lesson 24

C He lent me a book. He lent a book to me. (SD3)
直接宾语与间接宾语（参见第3课难点）
She bought me a tie. She bought a tie for me.
Write each of the following sentences in a different way.
用另一种形式来表示以下句子中的直接宾语和间接宾语
1 He handed me the prize.
2 The waiter brought a bottle of beer to the man.
3 I’ve ordered some soup for you.
4 Bring that book to me please.
5 She promised a reward to the finder.

D Is there any tea in the pot? (SD9)（参见第9课难点中的 there be 结构）
There isn’t any tea in the pot.
There’s no tea in the pot.
Write negative answers to these questions in two different ways:
用两种不同方式写出下列问题的否定回答
1 Have you any money?
2 Did you go anywhere in the holidays?
3 Was there anybody present when the accident happened?

E Answer these questions. Put the apostrophe in the right place. (SD13)
回答以下问题，注意所有格符号的位置。（参见第13课难点）
1 Whose umbrella is this? (George)
2 Whose is this handbag? (That woman)
3 Whose poetry do you like best? (Keats)
4 Whose are these clothes? (The children)
5 Whose are these uniforms? (The soldiers)

F Knock (SD6) (第6课难点)；Be (SD12) (第12课难点)；Give (SD18) (第18课难点)。
Complete these sentences by adding any of the following words: up, off, over, back, on, or away.
用 up, off, over, back, on, or away 填空。
1 He usually knocks ________ at 6 o’clock, but today he’s working late.
2 I’m going out now, but I’ll be ________ in half an hour.
3 I gave ________ smoking last year but I have just started again.
4 The concert was _________ and everybody left the hall.
5 A new play is _________ at the Phoenix.
6 I’ve given ________ all my old furniture.

G Change the position of the words in italics.
改变斜体印出的词的位置。（SD6, SD7）（参见第6、7课的难点）
1 I put on my hat.
2 I took off my coat.
3 He put out the fire.
4 They cut off the king’s head.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The writer thought _________.
   (a) he had lost his money  (b) someone had stolen his money
   (c) the manager had the money  (d) the girl had stolen the money
2. What had really happened?
   (a) The writer had lost the money.  (b) The girl had stolen the money.
   (c) The manager had taken the money.  (d) Someone had stolen the money.

Structure 句型
3. The money ________ in his room.
   (a) was  (b) were  (c) are  (d) has
4. He could do nothing. He couldn’t do ________.
   (a) something  (b) nothing  (c) anything  (d) everything
5. A knock at the door ________ him.
   (a) interrupted  (b) was interrupted  (c) interrupting  (d) was interrupting
6. Where did she find the money? ________ the room.
   (a) Outside  (b) Out of  (c) Out  (d) Without
7. ________ room was it? This gentleman’s.
   (a) To whom  (b) Who  (c) Whose  (d) Of whom

Vocabulary 词汇
8. The writer had lost his money. He felt upset. He must have been ________.
   (a) sick  (b) ill  (c) worried  (d) tired
9. The manager was sympathetic. ________.
   (a) Everyone liked him  (b) He liked everyone
   (c) He was sorry for the writer  (d) He liked the writer
10. He lost his money. His money was ________.
    (a) losing  (b) missing  (c) going away  (d) disappearing
11. You can’t post this letter without ________.
    (a) an envelope  (b) a packet  (c) some string  (d) a pen
12. The girl returned the money. She was very ________.
    (a) honourable  (b) honest  (c) honoured  (d) trusting

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子, 然后对照课文第 4-6 行, 核对你的答案。
When he started to complain about this wicked world, he was interrupted by a knock at the door.
He started ____________________________.
PRE-UNIT TEST 2
测试 2
IF YOU CAN DO THIS TEST GO ON TO UNIT 2

Key structures 关键句型

A Word order in simple statements 简单陈述句的语序

There is a line under each word or group of words in the statements below. The words are not in the right order. Arrange them correctly.

a There is a line under each word or group of words in the statements below. The words are not in the right order. Arrange them correctly.

1 The film I enjoyed yesterday.
2 My mother to market went.
3 The children asked continuously questions in class this morning.
4 We at home stay on Sundays.
5 This morning a book I borrowed from the library.

b Write these sentences again. Put the words in parentheses in the right place.

1 She answers my letters. (rarely)
2 The shops close on Saturday afternoons. (always)
3 We work after six o’clock. (never)
4 We spend our holidays abroad. (sometimes)
5 Do you buy CDs? (ever)

B Verbs 动词

a Now and Always 表示现在和经常发生的动作

The verbs in parentheses tell us what is happening now and what always happens. Give the correct form of each verb.

I am looking out of my window. I can see some children in the street. The children (play) football. They always (play) football in the street. Now a little boy (kick) the ball. Another boy (run) after him but he cannot catch him.

b What happened? 一般过去时

The verbs in parentheses tell us what happened. Give the correct form of each verb.

My friend, Roy. (die) last year. He (leave) me his CD player and his collection of CDs. Roy (spend) a lot of money on CDs. He (buy) one or two new CDs every week. He never (go) to the cinema or to the theatre. He (stay) at home every evening and (listen) to music. He often (lend) CDs to his friends. Sometimes they (keep) them. He (lose) many CDs in this way.

c What has happened? 现在完成时

The verbs in parentheses tell us what has happened. Give the correct form of each verb.

My friend, Roy. (die) last year. He (leave) me his CD player and his collection of CDs. Roy (spend) a lot of money on CDs. He (buy) one or two new CDs every week. He never (go) to the cinema or to the theatre. He (stay) at home every evening and (listen) to music. He often (lend) CDs to his friends. Sometimes they (keep) them. He (lose) many CDs in this way.
I just ______ (receive) a letter from my brother Tim. He is in Australia. He ______ (be) there for six months. Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm and he already ______ (visit) a great number of different places in Australia. He just ______ (buy) an Australian car and ______ (go) to Alice Springs.

d What happened? What has happened? 一般过去时和现在完成时
The verbs in parentheses tell us *what happened* and *what has happened*. Give the correct form of each verb.
括号中的动词告诉我们过去发生和现在已经完成的动作。给出这些动词的正确形式。
1 What ______ you (buy) yesterday?
2 Up till now, he never ______ (lend) me anything.
3 ______ you (burn) those old papers yet?
4 He ______ (fight) in Flanders in the First World War.
5 We just ______ (win) the match.

e What was happening? What happened? 过去进行时和一般过去时
The verbs in parentheses tell us *what was happening* and *what happened*. Give the correct form of each verb.
括号中的动词告诉我们过去正在进行和过去发生的动作。给出这些动词的正确形式。
1 As my father (leave) the house, the postman (arrive).
2 Tom (work) in the garden while I (sit) in the sun.
3 As I (walk) down the street, I (meet) Charlie.
4 While he (read) the letter, he (hear) a knock at the door.
5 She (drop) the tray when I spoke to her.

f What will happen? 一般将来时
In the paragraph below, the verbs in italics tell us *what happened*. Write the passage again. Change the verbs in italics so that they tell us *what will happen*.
在下面这个段落中，斜体印出的动词告诉我们过去发生的动作。重写这个段落，将斜体印出的动词改为一般将来时。
I went to the theatre with my friend Reg. Reg and I saw the first performance of a play called 'The End of the Road'. After the play, the producer gave a short speech. He spoke to the audience about the play. The play was very successful and I think a great many people enjoyed it very much.

g What will be happening? 将来进行时
Change the form of the verbs in italics so that they tell us *what will be happening*.
将斜体印出的动词改为将来进行时。
1 I am ironing the clothes.
2 The train will arrive in a few minutes.
3 We'll see you in the morning.
4 We are watching the match.
5 He is correcting exercise books.

h After he had finished work he went home. 过去完成时
Join these pairs of sentences with the words given in parentheses.
用括号内所给的词连接以下各对句子。
1 (After) she wrote the letter. She went to the post office.
2 (After) He had dinner. He went to the cinema.
3 (When) I fastened my seat belt. The plane took off.
Pre-Unit Test 2

4 We did not disturb him. (until) He finished work.
5 (As soon as) He left the room, I turned on the radio.

i It was made in Germany in 1681. 被动语态
Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

The Taj Mahal (build) in the seventeenth century for the emperor Shah Jehan. A few years after he (become) ruler, his wife, Mumtaz-i-Mahal, (die). The Taj Mahal (build) in her honour. Experts (call) in from many parts of the world to construct the domes and to decorate the walls. The Taj Mahal which (begin) in 1632 and (complete) in 1654 (cost) a fortune. Up to the present day, it (visit) by millions of people.

j He said that ... He told me ... 间接引语
Supply said or told in the following sentences. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 He (said) me that she (come) tomorrow.
2 The gardener (said) that he (cut) that tree down yesterday.
3 I (said) you I (have) never played tennis before.
4 What (he) that he (do) last weekend?
5 When (he) you that he (buy) this car?

k If 条件句
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 If it (rain) I shall take an umbrella with me.
2 You never (pass) this test if you don’t work hard.
3 If he (be) here before 10 o’clock, I shall see him.
4 If he plays well, he (get) into the team.
5 If he (enjoy) concerts, why doesn’t he come with us?

l Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

(Fish) is my favourite sport. I often fish for hours without (catch) anything. But this does not worry me. Some fishermen are unlucky. Instead of (catch) fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. I am even less lucky. I never catch anything — not even old boots. After (have spend) whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag. ‘You must give up (fish)!’ my friends say. ‘It’s a waste of time.’ But they don’t realize one important thing. I’m not really interested in (fish). I am only interested in (sit) in a boat and (do) nothing at all!

C Must, Have, Can and May 助动词

a Write these sentences again using must or have to in place of the words in italics.

1 It will be necessary for you to see a doctor.
2 Is it necessary for you to make so much noise?
3 She said it would be necessary for us to stay here.
4 It is necessary for me to have some help.
5 It was necessary for him to go out last night.

b Write these sentences again in a different way using must be in place of the words in italics.

改写以下句子，用 must be 来代替斜体印出的词组。
1 I, personally, think he is a fool.
2 I, personally, think he is mad.
3 I, personally, think she is over forty.

c Write these sentences again in a different way using can or may in place of the words in italics.

改写以下句子，用 can 或 may 来代替斜体印出的词组。
1 Will you let me use your telephone please?
2 Perhaps he will telephone tomorrow.
3 Will you let me have two tickets please?
4 Perhaps the play has begun already.
5 Will you let me leave the table please?

D A, The and Some 冠词和 some

a Write these words again. Put in a or some in front of each one.

在下列词前加上 a 或 some。

soap, picture, milk, money, woman, window, bus, sand, rice, newspaper, water, cloud, son, coal, secretary, oil.

b Put in a or the where necessary in the passage below.

在需要的地方加上 a 或 the。

I have just moved to ________ house in ________ Bridge Street. Yesterday ________ beggar knocked at my door. He asked me for ________ meal and ________ glass of beer. In return for this, ________ beggar stood on his head and sang ________ songs. I gave him ________ meal. He ate ________ food and drank ________ beer. Then he put ________ piece of cheese in his pocket and went away. Later ________ neighbour told me about him. Everybody knows him. His name is ________ Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in ________ street once ________ month and always asks for ________ meal and ________ glass of beer.

E The best and the worst 形容词的比较级和最高级

Give the correct form of the words in parentheses. Supply than where necessary.

给出括号中形容词的正确形式，必要时加上 than。
1 It is ________ (unusual) film I have ever seen.
2 Mr. Jones is a ________ (good) teacher ________ Mr. Brown.
3 This book is ________ (interesting) ________ that one.
4 She is ________ (lazy) pupil in the class.
5 The weather today is ________ (bad) ________ it was yesterday.

F When did you arrive? I arrived at ten o’clock. 表示时间的短语

Supply the correct words in the following sentences.

用正确的词填空。
1 He has gone abroad. He will return ________ two years’ time.
2 ________ Saturdays I always go to the market.
3 I never go to the cinema ________ the week.
4 I can’t see him ________ the moment. I’m busy.
Pre-Unit Test 2

5 My birthday is _______ November 7th. I was born _______ 1988.
6 The days are very short _______ December.
7 We arrived at the village late _______ night. We left early _______ the morning.

G Verbs followed by of, from, in and on 带有 of, from, in 和 on 的动词短语

Supply the missing words in the sentences below.

1 Is this included _______ the bill?
2 I received a telephone call _______ him yesterday.
3 You can rely _______ me.
4 I am thinking _______ going abroad next year.
5 Are you interested _______ music?
6 I am tired _______ telling you the same thing again and again.

Special difficulties 难点

A Words often confused 经常混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

1 (By the way) (On the way) have you seen Tom lately?
2 I (borrowed) (lent) this book from the library.
3 Can you (ask) (ask for) questions in English?
4 That tree has (grown) (grown up) a lot since I last saw it.
5 (Besides) (Beside) being a teacher, he is also a novelist.
6 The cat has drunk (it's) (its) milk.
7 Have you seen Tom (yet) (still)?
8 I put the papers on your (desk) (office).
9 You can't jump over that fence. (It is) (There is) impossible.
10 I like staying at (house) (home) during the weekend.

B Knock, Give and Be

Supply the missing words in the following.

1 Someone is knocking _______ the door.
2 The doctor told him to give _______ smoking.
3 What's _______ at the cinema this week?
4 You can't see Mr Jones. He is _______ at the moment. He will be _______ in ten minutes.
5 The soldier hit the guard very hard and knocked him _______.

C Where possible, change the position of the words in italics.

在可能的情况下改变斜体印出的词的位置。

1 Who knocked over this vase?
2 She is looking after the children.
3 Put on your jacket.
4 Bring it back quickly.
5 The thieves woke up the night watchman.

D Put the words in parentheses in their correct order.

1 The officer ordered (to fire — at the enemy — the men).
2 He wants (his wife — this dress — to wear)
3 She wants (us — it — to explain)
4 I cannot allow (the room — him — to enter).
5 She taught (to read — her son).

E Write these sentences in a different way. Omit the words in italics.

1 She made this dress for me.
2 I lent my book to him.
3 I showed the letter to George.
4 Pass that cup to your mother.
5 Johnny gave the doll to his sister.
Unit 2
第 2 单元
INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT

In Unit 1 you learned how to write simple statements. In Unit 2 you will learn how to join simple statements together with words like ‘and’, ‘but’ and ‘so’. You will learn how to write sentences which contain more than one idea.

Before you begin each exercise, read these instructions carefully. Read them each time you begin a new piece. They are very important.

How to work — Summary writing

Unit 2 contains twenty-four short passages. There are questions under each piece. Your answers to these questions will often contain more than one idea. Put your answers together to make a short paragraph.

1 Read the passage carefully two or three times. Make sure you understand it.

2 Write a full answer to each question. When you find two or three questions together, join up your answers with the joining words given in parentheses. Each answer you write must be a complete sentence.

3 Your answers to the questions must follow one another. All your answers together will then make a complete paragraph.

4 Read through your work and correct your mistakes.

5 Count the number of words in your paragraph. Words like ‘the’, ‘a’, etc. count as single words. Words which are joined by a hyphen (e.g. hold-up) also count as single words. Do not go over the word limit. At the end of your paragraph write the number of words that you have used.

Example

Work through this example carefully and then try to do the exercises in Unit 2 in the same way.

What’s the time?

People often collect things. Stamps, books and records are fairly common. But the strangest collection I have ever seen belongs to a man who possesses 1,500 clocks. There are clocks in every room of his house. The living room is lined
with shelves which have been filled with clocks. As there is not enough room for so many clocks, the man has filled several trunks and stored them in the garage. His wife complains every day about the work she has to do, for it is not easy to dust several hundred clocks. She also complains about the noise. Each clock keeps its own time, so chimes can be heard almost any time during the day and night. In her opinion, however, there is something even worse than dust and noise. Even with so many clocks around, she never knows what time it is!

**Summary writing** 摘要写作

Answer these questions **in not more than 70 words**.

1. How many clocks has a man collected? Has he put them in every room of his house or not? *(and)*
2. Has he lined his living room with them or not? What else has he filled? *(not only ... but ... as well)*
3. Does his wife have to dust hundreds of clocks or not?
4. Does she complain about the work and the noise or not?
5. Does each clock keep the correct time, or does it keep its own time?
6. What does she hear day and night? Does she ever know the correct time or not? *(Because of this ... not only ... but)*

**Answer** 答案

A man has collected 1,500 clocks and has put them in every room of his house. He has not only lined his living room with them, *but* has filled several trunks *as well*. His wife has to dust hundreds of clocks. She complains about the work and noise. Each clock keeps its own time. *Because of this*, she *not only* hears chimes day and night, *but* never knows the correct time. *(70 words)*

**Composition** 如何作文

In Unit 2 Composition has been dealt with separately. This Unit contains two types of composition exercise:

1. Learning how to select correct verbs and joining words. *(Passages 25-36.)*
2. Joining simple sentences together. *(Passages 37-48.)*

Work through these examples carefully and then try to do the composition exercises in the same way.

1. **Sample composition** 作文范例 1

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

He never *(knows) (understands)* the correct time *(and) (but)* is often late for work. It was his birthday last week *(so) (yet) his wife *(took) (bought)* him a present. She *(brought) (bought)* him an alarm clock *(but) (and)* he was *(delighted) (enjoyed)* with it.

**Answer** 答案

He never *knows* the correct time *and* is often late for work. It was his birthday last week *so* his wife *bought* him a present. She *bought* him an alarm clock *and* he was *delighted* with it.
2 Sample composition 作文范例 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses.

1. His wife tells him he must sell the clocks. He must give them away to a museum. 
   (either ... or)

2. He refuses to do so. He spends even more money on clocks. 
   (not only ... but)

3. He says he will not sell them. He will not give them away. 
   (neither ... nor)

Answer 答案

His wife tells him he must either sell the clocks or give them away to a museum. He not only refuses to do so but spends even more money on clocks. He says he will neither sell them nor give them away.

Letter writing 书信写作

This is begun in Unit 2. Carefully follow the instructions given under each passage.

Key structures and Special difficulties 关键句型和难点

When you finish the Letter writing exercise, go on to the language exercises that follow. The Key structures deal with exactly the same problems that were considered in Unit 1. You may refer back if you have forgotten anything. A little more new information about the Key structures is added here. Special difficulties are dealt with after the Key structures. The work you do in grammar is based on material contained in the passages. Refer to the passages frequently. They will help you to understand the grammar and to do the exercises.

当你结束“书信写作”后，就可以开始紧随其后的语言练习。“关键句型”的问题与第 1 单元相同。如果你有遗忘的地方，可以在第 1 单元查找。这里增加了有关句型的一点新内容。“关键句型”之后是“难点”。其中的语法练习是以课文中的语言点为基础的，经常查找课文可以帮助你理解语法并完成练习。
Lesson 25  Do the English speak English?  英国人讲的是英语吗？

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why does the writer not understand the porter?

I arrived in London at last. The railway station was big, black and dark. I did not know the way to my hotel, so I asked a porter. I not only spoke English very carefully, but very clearly as well. The porter, however, could not understand me. I repeated my question several times and at last he understood. He answered me, but he spoke neither slowly nor clearly. ‘I am a foreigner,’ I said. Then he spoke slowly, but I could not understand him. My teacher never spoke English like that. The porter and I looked at each other and smiled. Then he said something and I understood it. ‘You’ll soon learn English!’ he said. I wonder. In England, each person speaks a different language. The English understand each other, but I don’t understand them! Do they speak English?

New words and expressions  生词和短语

railway (1.1) /ˈreɪlaɪ/ n. 铁路
porter (1.2) /ˈpɔːtə/ n. 搬运工
several (1.5) /ˈsɛrvəl/ quantifier 几个

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 at last, 终于。
2 the way to my hotel, 去（我住的那家）饭店的路。
3 not only ... but ... as well, 不但……而且……，与 not only ... but also 是同义词，所连接的前后两部分的成分必须一致。
4 neither ... nor ..., 既不……又不……，这个结构所连接的两个否定概念也必须是对应的成分。
5 like that, 像那样，介词短语作状语，修饰动词 spoke。
6 the English, 英国人。与定冠词连用，表示一个群体、所跟的动词用复数。

参考译文

我终于到了伦敦。火车站很大，又黑又暗。我不知道去饭店的路该怎么走，于是向一个搬运工打听。我的英语讲得不但非常认真，而且咬字也非常清楚。然而搬运工却听不懂我的话。我把问题重复了很多遍。他终于听懂了。他回答了，但他讲得既不慢也不清楚。“我是个外国人，”我说。于是他说得慢了，可我还是听不懂。我的老师从来不那样讲英语！我和搬运工相视一笑。接着，他说了点什么，这回我听懂了。“您会很快学会英语的！”他说。我感到奇怪。在英国，人们各自说着一种不同的语言。英国人之间相互听得懂，可我却不懂他们的话！他们说的是英语吗？
Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 70 个单词。
1. Did you arrive at a railway station in London or not? Did you ask a porter the way to your hotel or not? Could he understand you or not? (and ... but)
2. Did he understand you at last or not? Could you understand his answer? (but)
3. Did your teacher ever speak English like that or not?
4. What did the porter say to you?
5. Does each person speak a different language in England or not?
6. Do they understand each other or not? Do you understand them? (but)

Letter writing  书信写作

The address appears at the top right-hand corner of the page. It is called 'the Heading'. The address is always followed by the date:
写信人的地址位于信纸的右上角，被称为“信头”。地址后面总是接着写日期：

14 Grafton St., Croydon, Surrey, England.
24th April, 19—

Exercise  练习

Write your home address. Follow the above pattern carefully.
仔细按照上面的格式，写出你家的地址。

14 Grafton St.,  格拉夫顿大街14号
Croydon,  克莱敦市
Surrey,  萨里郡
England.  英格兰
24th April, 19— 19—年4月24日

Key structures  关键句型

Word order in compound statements  并列句中的语序

a) Do you remember the six parts of a simple statement? Refer to KS 1 if you have forgotten them.
你还记得简单句中的6个组成部分吗？如果记不清，可以查看第1课的关键句型。

b) We can join simple statements together to make compound statements. Here are some of the joining words we use:
我们可以将几个简单句连在一起，组成并列句。我们常用以下连词：
and, but, so, yet, or, both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but ... as well (or also).

Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the way they have been joined:
仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意它们是如何连接起来的：
He finished lunch. He went into the garden.  他吃完午饭。他走进花园。
He finished lunch and went into the garden.  他吃完午饭，走进花园。
I ran to the station. I missed the train.  我跑到车站。我误了火车。
I ran to the station but missed the train.  我跑到车站，但未能赶上火车。
I saw him yesterday. He did not greet me.  我昨天见到了他。他没有理我。
I saw him yesterday but he did not greet me. 我昨天见到了他，但他没有理我。
Unit 2 Lesson 25

He teaches English. I teach English. 他教英语。我教英语。
Both he and I teach English. 他和我都教英语。
He teaches English. He teaches French. 他教英语。他教法语。
He teaches both English and French. 他既教英语又教法语。
You must tell him. I must tell him. 你必须告诉他。我必须告诉他。
Either you or I must tell him. 或是你或是我必须告诉他。
He plays soccer. He plays rugby. 他踢英式足球。他玩橄榄球。
He plays either soccer or rugby. 他或是英式足球或是玩橄榄球。
He does not speak English. I do not speak English. 他不讲英语。我不讲英语。
Neither he nor I speak English. 他和我都不讲英语。
He does not speak English. He does not speak French. 他不讲英语。他不讲法语。
He speaks neither English nor French. 他既不讲英语也不讲法语。
He cannot read. He cannot write. 他不会读。他不会写。
He can neither read nor write. 他既不会读也不会写。
You must wash the dishes. You must sweep the floor. 你必须洗碗。你必须擦地。
You must not only wash the dishes but sweep the floor as well. 你不仅需要洗碗而且还要擦地。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the joining words in the passage.
选出课文中所有连词。

B Join these pairs of sentences. Use the joining words in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用括号中的连词将每组句子连到一起, 完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
1 I did not know the way to my hotel. I asked a porter. (so)
2 I spoke English very carefully. I spoke very clearly. (not only ... but ... as well)
3 I repeated my question several times. At last he understood. (and)
4 He answered me. He did not speak slowly. He did not speak clearly. (but ... neither ... nor)
5 Then he spoke slowly. I could not understand him. (but)
6 Then he said something. I understood it. (and)
7 The English understand each other. I don’t understand them. (but)

C Join these sentences with the words in parentheses:
用括号中的斜体字连接以下句子:
1 I knocked at the door. He did not open it. (but)
2 He went on holiday. I went on holiday. (Both ... and)
3 He must be mad. He must be very wise. (either ... or)

Composition 作文

Join the following sentences using the words in parentheses:
用括号中的词连接下列句子:
1 My sister went shopping. I went shopping. (Both ... and)
2 We got very tired. We got very hungry. (not only ... but ... as well)
3 It was three o’clock. We could not get lunch. We had a cup of tea. (and ... so)
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Why couldn’t the writer understand the porter?
   (a) The writer didn’t know any English.    (b) The porter didn’t speak English.
   (c) The writer couldn’t understand the porter’s English.    (d) The writer was a foreigner.

2 The writer ________.
   (a) didn’t think the porter was English    (b) expected everyone in England to speak like his teacher
   (c) doesn’t think the English speak English    (d) thinks that the English speak many different languages

Structure 句型

3 English ________ not a difficult language.
   (a) are    (b) is    (c) was    (d) has

4 ________ did you repeat your question? Several times.
   (a) How many times    (b) How many    (c) How much    (d) How

5 He didn’t speak slowly and he didn’t speak clearly ________.
   (a) neither    (b) either    (c) too    (d) nor

6 The porter and I looked at each other. ________ both smiled.
   (a) I    (b) He    (c) We    (d) They

7 He said something and I understood it. He said something ________ I understood.
   (a) who    (b) whose    (c) whom    (d) which

Vocabulary 词汇

8 I repeated my question several times. I repeated it ________ times.
   (a) much    (b) a number of    (c) only a few    (d) three

9 At last he understood. He understood ________.
   (a) in the end    (b) at least    (c) lastly    (d) at the finish

10 I come from abroad. I am ________.
   (a) a foreigner    (b) strange    (c) overseas    (d) abroad

11 My teacher ________ me English.
   (a) learnt    (b) trained    (c) instructed    (d) taught

12 ‘You’ll soon learn English,’ he said. I wonder. I ________.
   (a) am not sure    (b) am sure    (c) wander    (d) know

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子，然后对照课文第 2 行，核对你答案。
Because I did not know the way to my hotel, I asked a porter.

I ________.
Lesson 26 The best art critics

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音, 然后回答以下问题。
Who is the student’s best critic?

I am an art student and I paint a lot of pictures. Many people pretend that they understand modern art. They always tell you what a picture is ‘about’. Of course, many pictures are not ‘about’ anything. They are just pretty patterns. We like them in the same way that we like pretty curtain material. I think that young children often appreciate modern pictures better than anyone else. They notice more. My sister is only seven, but she always tells me whether my pictures are good or not. She came into my room yesterday.

‘What are you doing?’ she asked.
‘I’m hanging this picture on the wall,’ I answered. ‘It’s a new one. Do you like it?’
She looked at it critically for a moment. ‘It’s all right,’ she said, ‘but isn’t it upside down?’
I looked at it again. She was right! It was!

New words and expressions

art (title) /a:t/ n. 艺术
critic (title) /'kritik/ n. 评论家
paint (1.1) /penti/ v. 画
pretend (1.2) /pretend/ v. 假装
pattern (1.4) /'pætn/ n. 图案
curtain (1.5) /'k3:tn/ n. 窗帘, 幕布
critically (1.12) /'kriti.kli/ adv. 批评地
upside down (1.12) /,ʌpsaɪd-ˈdaун/ 上下颠倒地

appreciate (1.6) /əˈprɪʃiət/ v. 鉴赏
notice (1.7) /ˈnəʊtɪs/ v. 注意到
whether (1.8) /ˈweðə/ conj. 是否
hang (1.11) /hæŋ/ (hung /hʌŋ/, hung) v. 吊, 吊

Notes on the text

1 art student, 学美术的学生。
2 They always tell you what a picture is ‘about’. 他们总是告诉你一张画的“意思”是什么。很明显，作者认为那些自以为懂得现代艺术的人的评论根本不着边际。因此，把 about (“对画的分析”) 这个词放在引号里，以示一种讽刺的口吻。
3 It’s a new one. 这是一幅新画。句中间的 one 用来代替前一句中的名词 picture, 以免重复。

参考译文

我是个学艺术的学生，画了很多画。有很多人装成很懂现代艺术的样子，总是告诉你一幅画的“意思”是什么。当然，有很多画是什么“意思”也没有的。它们就是些好看的图案。我们喜欢它们就像我们喜欢漂亮的窗帘布一样。我觉得小孩子们往往比任何人都更能欣赏现代绘画，他们观察到的东西更多。我的妹妹只有 7 岁，但她总能说出我的画是好还是坏。昨天她到我房里来了。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 70 个单词。

1 Does the writer study art, or does he study music? Does he paint a lot of pictures or not? (and)
2 Do many people really understand modern art or not?
3 Do paintings always have a meaning or not?
4 Are they sometimes pretty patterns or not?
5 Do young children appreciate modern paintings better than others or not? Do they notice more or not? (not only ... but)
6 When did the writer’s young sister go into his room? Did she examine his new picture or not? (and)
7 Had he hung it upside down, or had he hung it the right way up? Did she notice this immediately or not? (and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

改写以下句子，选用正确的动词和连词：

I (looked at) (watched) the picture (but) (and) I could not (understand) (realize) it. It was in black and white and was (called) (named) ‘Trees and snow’. I could see (neither) (not only) trees (or) (nor) snow.

Letter writing 书信写作

Which of the following headings is correct?

下列信头中哪一个正确？

John Madgewick, 14 Grafton St., Croydon, Surrey, England.

14 Grafton St., Croydon, Surrey, England.

24th April, 19__

24th April, 19__

Key structures 关键句型

These things always happen. 经常发生的事情

a I am having breakfast. Do you always get up so late? （Now and Always KS2 见第 2 课的关键句型）

b The earth goes round the sun. 地球围绕太阳转。

The sun rises in the east and sets in the west. 太阳从东方升起，在西方落下。

c We rarely put -ing at the end of these verbs: 以下动词很少用于进行时态。
appear, appreciate, believe, feel, forget, hear, know, like, look like, notice, remember, resemble, see, think (that), understand.

These verbs tell us what always happens: 这些动词告诉我们经常发生的事情：
I hear that you like classical music. 我听说你喜欢古典音乐。
I remember Tom very well. Do you know him?

**Exercises**

**A** Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what *always* happens and those which tell us what is happening *now.*

**B** What is happening? What *always* happens? 现在进行时和一般现在时

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

'Some people still *believe* the world is flat,' he said.

'You *joke*,' I replied. 'I *not know* anyone who does.'

'Well, you *know* me,' he replied. 'I *believe* that the earth is flat. I met a man the other day. I *forget* his name now. He said that the earth *look* like a flat dish.'

'_____ you *try* to tell me that you *believe* him?' I asked.

'I certainly do,' he answered. 'I *think* that he is right.'

'And which side of the dish _____ you *live* on?'

'Oh, I *not know*. He didn’t tell me that!'

**Special difficulties**

**Speech marks** 引号

In written conversation, we put speech marks ('...') or ( "..." ) round the words that are actually spoken. 在书面会话中，我们用引号（单引号或双引号）把实际的对话括起来。

Read this carefully: 细读以下例句:

'What are you doing?' she asked.

'I’m hanging this picture on the wall,' I answered. 'It’s a new one. Do you like it?'

She looked at it critically for a moment. 'It’s all right,' she said, 'but isn’t it upside down?' (1.12)

Some things to notice: 注意事项:

a The speech marks are above the line. They go outside all other marks like commas (,) full stops (.) and question marks (?).

引号位于一行之上，它们应放在句尾其他标点符号 — 如逗号、句号、问号 — 之外。

b The speaker’s first word begins with a capital letter.

引语的第一个词以大写字母开头。

c Words like *said* and *asked* are followed by a comma. We put a full stop after them only when they come at the end of a sentence.

在 *said, asked* 等词后面用逗号，只有当它们位于句尾时，才在它们的后面用句号。

d When words like *said* or *asked* interrupt the speaker, the second half of the sentence begins with a small letter.

当 *said, asked* 等词置于引语之间时，句子的后半部分以小写字母开始。

e We begin a new paragraph each time a new speaker is introduced.

当一个新的说话人开始讲话时，要另起一个段落。
Exercise 练习

Write this piece of conversation again using speech marks: 用引号改写以下对话:

Look! she said, isn’t that man drunk? I think we should cross the road, answered her husband. It’s too late now, she replied. Eh, you two. Look where you’re going, called the drunk. Can’t you walk in a straight line?

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The writer thinks ________.
   (a) you can’t always ‘explain’ modern pictures  (b) you can always ‘explain’ modern pictures
   (c) modern pictures are always about something  (d) we can use modern pictures as curtain material

2 The writer’s sister ________.
   (a) paints pictures  (b) didn’t like her brother’s picture
   (c) didn’t see her brother’s picture  (d) noticed that her brother had made a mistake

Structure 句型

3 Many people pretend that they ________ modern art.
   (a) understood  (b) are understanding  (c) understand  (d) understands

4 What is it about? Tell me ________.
   (a) what is it about  (b) what it is about  (c) what about it is  (d) what about is it

5 She tells me ________ my pictures are good or not.
   (a) weather  (b) that  (c) if  (d) unless

6 Do you like my picture? It’s ________.
   (a) a new  (b) one new  (c) new one  (d) a new one

7 I looked at it again. She ________ right! It was!
   (a) had  (b) has  (c) is  (d) was

Vocabulary 词汇

8 We like them ________ we like pretty curtain material.
   (a) just as  (b) the same  (c) just the same  (d) so

9 This curtain material is very good ________.
   (a) clothes  (b) cloth  (c) substance  (d) matter

10 Young children often appreciate modern pictures. They ________ them.
    (a) estimate  (b) esteem  (c) value  (d) understand and enjoy

11 They notice more. They ________ more.
    (a) remark  (b) observe  (c) say  (d) take care

12 It’s upside down. It isn’t ________.
    (a) up  (b) down  (c) the right way down  (d) the right way up

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子, 然后对照课文第 7-8 行，核对你的答案。

Are my pictures good or not?
Please tell me _______________________.

129
Lesson 27  A wet night  雨夜

*First listen and then answer the question.*

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What happened to the boys in the night?

Late in the afternoon, the boys put up their tent in the middle of a field. As soon as this was done, they cooked a meal over an open fire. They were all hungry and the food smelled good. After a wonderful meal, they told stories and sang songs by the campfire.

But some time later it began to rain. The boys felt tired so they put out the fire and crept into their tent. Their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable, so they all slept soundly. In the middle of the night, two boys woke up and began shouting. The tent was full of water! They all leapt out of their sleeping bags and hurried outside. It was raining heavily and they found that a stream had formed in the field. The stream wound its way across the field and then flowed right under their tent!

**New words and expressions** 生词和短语

tent (1.1) /tent/ n. 帐篷  
field (1.2) /fi:d/ n. 田地, 田野  
smell (1.3) /smel/ (smelled or smelt /smelt/) v. 闻起来  
wonderful (1.4) /'wʌndəfl/ adj. 极好的  
campfire (1.4) /'kaempfaio/ n. 营火，篝火  
creep (1.6) /kri:p/ (crept /krept/, crept) v. 爬行  
sleeping bag (1.6) /'slipŋ-bæg/ 睡袋  
comfortable (1.7) /'kəmfortəbl/ adj. 舒适的, 安逸的  
soundly (1.7) /'saʊndli/ adv. 香甜地  
leap (1.9) /lip/ (leapt /lept/, leapt) v. 跳跃, 跳起  
heavily (1.9) /'heviLI/ adv. 大量地  
stream (1.10) /strɪm/ n. 小溪  
form (1.10) /fɔ:m/ v. 形成  
wind (1.10) /waind/ (wound /woun/, wound) v. 蜿蜒  
right (1.10) /rɛt/ adv. 正好

**Notes on the text** 课文注释

1. late in the afternoon, 快到傍晚的时候。
2. put up (= set up), 搭起。
3. put out, 熄灭（灯，火）。
4. wake up, 醒来。

参考译文

傍晚时分，孩子们在田野中央搭起了帐篷。这件事刚刚做完，他们就在篝火上烧起了饭。他们全都饿了，饭菜散发出阵阵香味。他们美美地吃了一顿饭后，就围在营火旁讲起了故事，唱起了歌。但过了一阵子，天下起雨来，于是他们扑灭了篝火，钻进了帐篷。睡袋既暖和又舒服，所以，他们都睡得很香。午夜前后，有两个孩子醒了，大声叫了起来。原来帐篷里到处都是水！他们全都跳出睡袋，跑到外面。雨下得很大，他们发现地上已经形成了一条小溪。那小溪弯弯曲曲穿过了田野，然后正好从他们的帐篷底下流过去！

130
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
1. Where did the boys put up their tent? What did they cook? (and)
2. What did they do after their meal? Did it begin to rain or not? Did they creep into their tent or not? (but ... so)
3. Did the boys wake up in the middle of the night or not?
4. Was the tent full of water or not? Did they rush outside or did they stay in their tent? (so)
5. Where had a stream formed? Where did it flow? (and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
I am very tall (so) (but) I must be careful. Doorways are often low (and) (but) I usually (beat) (knock) my head against them. My head always (hurts) (pains). I have never (met) (recognized) a tall architect. Have you?

Letter writing 书信写作

The order of the heading is as follows: the number of the house, the name of the street, the town or city, the area, the country and the date. Put in the name of the country only when you are writing to someone who lives abroad.

Exercise 练习

Arrange the following heading in the correct order:
California, Woodside, 21st Feb, 19—, U.S.A., 21 Brook St.,

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? 一般过去时 (KS3) （参见第3课的关键句型）

What happened? 一般过去时 (KS3) （参见第3课的关键句型）

Read these sentences carefully. The verbs in italics tell us what happened:
1. I lost my umbrella a few days ago. 几天前我把伞丢了。
2. I bought this coat yesterday. 昨天我买了这件外套。
3. I dreamt of you last night. 昨晚我梦见了你。
4. She paid the bill and left the shop. 她交了钱，离开了商店。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what happened.

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
Late in the afternoon, the boys put up their tent in the middle of a field. As soon as this was done, they cooked a meal over an open fire. They were all hungry and the food smelled good. After a wonderful meal, they told stories and sang songs by the campfire. But some time later it began to rain. The boys felt tired so they put out the fire and crept into their tent. Their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable, so they all slept soundly. In the middle of the night, two boys woke up and began shouting. The tent was full of water! They all leapt out of their sleeping bags and hurried outside. It was raining heavily and they found that a stream had formed in the field. The stream wound its way across the field and flowed right under their tent!

Special difficulties

(SD6, SD7) 参见第 6. 7 课的难点。

Study these sentences. Each one contains the verb put. The verb has a different meaning in each sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... the boys put up their tent in the middle of a field. (11.1-2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... they put out the fire and crept into their tent. (11.5-6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I put on my coat and left the house. I穿上外衣, 离开房子。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You needn’t go back to London tonight. We can put you up for the night. (We can provide you with a bed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The teacher sent the boy to the headmaster. He could not put up with him any longer. (He could not stand him.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take out your notebooks. Put down all the sentences that are on the blackboard. (Write all the sentences ...)拿出你的笔记本, 抄下黑板上的所有句子。</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We cannot have the meeting tonight. We shall have to put it off until tomorrow. (We shall have to postpone it.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close your books and put them away. 把书合上, 放到一边去。</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise

Use the correct expression with put in each of the following:

1. Mrs. Bowers told her children to put their toys away, and go to bed.
2. You can stay here tonight. We can put you up in the spare room.
3. I'm not ready yet. I haven't put on my shoes.
4. 'Open your exercise books and put down the following,' the teacher said.
5. Father is putting out the fire he lit in the garden.
6. When they have put on that new building, it will spoil the view.
7. I have put off my trip to Japan until next month.
8. I am getting a divorce. I can't put up with him any longer.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The boys went to bed because ________.
   (a) it was late
   (b) they had sung songs
   (c) it began to rain
   (d) it had begun to rain and they felt tired

2. The boys ________.
   (a) had a good night’s sleep
   (b) stayed in their tent all night
   (c) had camped in the path of a stream
   (d) had camped beside a stream

Structure 句型
3. Where did they ________?
   (a) it put up
   (b) their tent put up
   (c) put up it
   (d) put their tent up

4. ________ this was done, they cooked a meal over an open fire.
   (a) As soon
   (b) Just as
   (c) Until
   (d) Just after

5. They cooked a meal because ________.
   (a) they had hunger
   (b) they had hungry
   (c) they were hunger
   (d) they felt hungry

6. They sang songs by the campfire. They sang songs ________ the campfire.
   (a) close
   (b) near
   (c) besides
   (d) at

7. Where did the stream ________?
   (a) flow
   (b) flowed
   (c) flew
   (d) fly

Vocabulary 词汇
8. They cooked a meal because they wanted to ________.
   (a) sing songs
   (b) tell stories
   (c) play
   (d) eat

9. The boys had put out the campfire. The fire wasn’t ________.
   (a) switched on
   (b) on fire
   (c) on
   (d) alight

10. They crept into their tent, so they ________.
    (a) made a lot of noise
    (b) ran quickly
    (c) were very quiet
    (d) were very noisy

11. The boys slept comfortably. Their sleeping bags were ________.
    (a) a comfort
    (b) in comfort
    (c) comfortable
    (d) comfortably

12. They slept soundly. They slept ________.
    (a) noisily
    (b) fast
    (c) deeply
    (d) good

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 2-3 行，核对你的答案。
As soon as they did this, they cooked a meal over an open fire.
As soon as this ________.
Lesson 28  No parking  禁止停车

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What is Jasper White’s problem?
Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths. He has just bought a new house in the city, but ever since he moved in, he has had trouble with cars and their owners. When he returns home at night, he always finds that someone has parked a car outside his gate. Because of this, he has not been able to get his own car into his garage even once. Jasper has put up ‘No Parking’ signs outside his gate, but these have not had any effect. Now he has put an ugly stone head over the gate. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa, the Gorgon. Jasper hopes that she will turn cars and their owners to stone. But none of them has been turned to stone yet!

New words and expressions  生词和短语
rare (1.1) /rɛər/ adj. 稀有的
ancient (1.1) /'ænsint/ adj. 古老的，古老的
myth (1.2) /maθ/ n. 神话
trouble (1.3) /'trʌbl/ n. 麻烦
effect (1.7) /i'fekt/ n. 结果，效果
Medusa (1.9) /mi'djuːzə/ n. 美杜莎（古希腊神话中的3位蛇发女怪之一）
Gorgon (1.9) /'gɔːɡən/ n. （古希腊神话中的）蛇发女怪之一（凡见其貌者都会变成石头）

Notes on the text  课文注释
1. one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths, 少有的相信古代神话的人之一。其中 who believes in ancient myths 是一个从句，起定语作用，修饰 one; 由于 one 是单数，因此，从句中需用单数动词。of those rare people 是另一个定语，也用来修饰 one。
2. he has not been able to get his own car into his garage even once, 他甚至一次也未能把自己的车开进他的车库。虽然 be able to 和 can 表达相同的意思，但这个短语可以用在各种不同的时态中。even 用来修辞 once，加强语气。
3. stone head, 石雕头像。
4. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen, 这是我见过的最丑陋的头像之一。这句话中也有一个定语从句 I have ever seen, 引导词 that 被省略了。

参考译文

贾斯珀·怀特是少有的相信古代神话的人之一。他刚在城里买下一所新房子，但自从搬进去后，就和汽车及车主们发生了摩擦。当他夜里回家时，总是发现有人把车停在他家大门外。为此，他甚至一次也未能把自己的车开进车库。贾斯珀曾把几块“禁止停车”的牌子挂在大门外边，但没有任何效果。现在他把一个丑陋的石雕头像安在了大门上边，这是我见过的最丑陋的头像之一。我问他那是什么？他告诉我那是蛇发女怪美杜莎。贾斯珀希望她能把汽车和车主们都变成石头。但到目前为止还没有一个人变成石头呢！
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过65个单词。
1. What does Jasper White believe in?
2. Where do car owners always park their cars? Has he put up 'No Parking' signs or not? Have they paid any attention to them or not? (so ... but)
3. What has he put over his gate now?
4. Whose head is it?
5. What does he want her to do? Has she done so yet or not? (but)

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子：
My wife (drives) (leads) a car. She has (driven) (ridden) a car for many years (and) (but) she says that women drivers (do not deserve) (are not worth) their bad reputation. Yet, on the road, she often (criticizes) (judges) other women drivers.

Letter writing 书信写作

I am writing to someone who lives in the same country as I do. Which of these two headings would be correct?
我给同住在英国的人写信，以下哪个信头是正确的？

19 High Lane, 19 High Lane,
Newton, Newton,
Middlesex, Middlesex,
10th September, 19__ 10th September, 19__

Key structures 关键句型

What has happened? 现在完成时
Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics.
仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的、与现在完成时连用的、表示时间的词或词组：
I have just received a letter from my brother, Tim. (KS4) (参见第4课关键句型)
I have not seen Tim since last January. 从1月份以来我一直没有见过蒂姆。
I have not seen Tim since 1994. 从1994年以来我一直没有见过蒂姆。
I have not seen Tim for three years. 我有3年没有见过蒂姆了。
Tim has been abroad for three years. 蒂姆出国已有3年。
Up till now he has won five prizes. 至今他已得了5次奖。
Up till now I have been to New York three times. 至今我已3次去纽约。
I have been to New York three times so far. 迄今为止我3次去纽约。
Have you been to New York? 你去过纽约吗？
Have you read this book? 你读过这本书吗？
Unit 2  Lesson 28

Exercises 练习

A  Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what has happened.

B  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths. He just bought a new house in the city, but ever since he moved in, he has trouble with cars and their owners. When he returns home at night, he always finds that someone parks a car outside his gate. Because of this, he is not able to get his own car into his garage even once. Jasper put up 'No Parking' signs outside his gate, but these did not have any effect. Now he put an ugly stone head over the gate. It is one of the ugliest faces I ever saw. I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa, the Gorgon. Jasper hopes that she will turn cars and their owners to stone. But none of them has turned to stone yet!

Special difficulties 难点

Who, Which, That, and Whose

Instead of saying:

The man whom you met yesterday is an actor.

The book which you lent me is not very interesting.

The flowers that I love best are roses.

We can say:

The man you met yesterday is an actor.

The book you lent me is not very interesting.

The flowers I love best are roses.

We cannot leave out who, which, that or whose in these sentences:

Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths.

This is the hotel which was built last year.

This is the island that was bought by a millionaire.

The pilot whose plane landed in a field was not hurt.

Exercise 练习

Supply who, which, that or whose only where necessary:

1. The only games I play are football and tennis.
2. He is the only student who understands English well.
3. He is a writer whose books are seldom read.
4. This is the hotel at which we are staying.
5. Is this the money whose you lost?
6. That is the horse whose won the race.
7. He is the sort of person whose everyone admires.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Jasper White ________.
   (a) doesn’t like cars and their owners
   (b) doesn’t like cars
   (c) is angry with cars and their owners who park in front of his house
   (d) can’t get his car out of his garage
2 Jasper White has put Medusa’s head over his gate because ________.
   (a) she turns cars and their owners to stone
   (b) she is ugly
   (c) she is made of stone
   (d) he believes in ancient myths

Structure 句型

3 How many people ________ in ancient myths?
   (a) believes  (b) believe (c) are believing  (d) believing
4 He has just bought a new house. He has been in it ________ a short time.
   (a) since (b) for (c) about (d) ago
5 There is always a car outside his gate. ________ he can’t get into his garage.
   (a) For this (b) Because (c) That’s why (d) Because of
6 It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I’ve never seen ________.
   (a) an ugly one (b) an ugliest one (c) the ugliest one (d) an uglier one
7 ________ of them has been turned to stone.
   (a) No one  (b) Not one  (c) No  (d) Even one

Vocabulary 词汇

8 The myth is an ancient one. Jasper himself isn’t ________.
   (a) an ancient (b) ancient (c) an old (d) old
9 He is a rare person. You ________ meet such people.
   (a) often (b) never (c) seldom (d) sometimes
10 Not all car owners are good ________.
    (a) guides (b) conductors (c) leaders (d) drivers
11 You can see some ________ outside his gate. They say ‘No Parking’.
    (a) labels (b) notices (c) signals (d) notes
12 The signs haven’t had any effect. They haven’t ________ anyone.
    (a) affected (b) effected (c) resulted in (d) imposed

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 9 行，核对你的答案。
‘What is it?’ I asked.
I asked him what ____________________________.
Lesson 29 Taxi! 出租汽车!

First listen and then answer the question.

Does Captain Fawcett think any trip is too dangerous?

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought an unusual taxi and has begun a new service. The ‘taxi’ is a small Swiss aeroplane called a ‘Pilatus Porter’. This wonderful plane can carry seven passengers. The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere: on snow, water, or even on a ploughed field. Captain Fawcett’s first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a lonely village in the Welsh mountains. Since then, Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual places. Once he landed on the roof of a block of flats and on another occasion, he landed in a deserted car park. Captain Fawcett has just refused a strange request from a businessman. The man wanted to fly to Rockall, a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean, but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taxi (title)</td>
<td>/ˈtæksi/</td>
<td>出租汽车</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilatus Porter</td>
<td>/pɪˈlætəs ˈpɔːtər/</td>
<td>皮勒特斯·波特 (飞机机名)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land</td>
<td>/laend/</td>
<td>着陆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plough</td>
<td>/plaʊ/</td>
<td>耕地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lonely</td>
<td>/ˈlounli/</td>
<td>偏僻的，人迹罕至的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welsh</td>
<td>/ˈwelʃ/</td>
<td>威尔士的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roof</td>
<td>/ruːf/</td>
<td>楼顶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>block</td>
<td>/blɒk/</td>
<td>一座大楼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat</td>
<td>/flæt/</td>
<td>公寓房</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desert</td>
<td>/dɛˈzɜːt/</td>
<td>废弃</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere. 然而，最令人惊奇的是它能在任何地方降落。这句话中 that it can land anywhere 是一个从句，起表语作用，被称为表语从句。
2. on another occasion, 还有一次。
3. car park, 汽车停车场。
4. a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean, 大西洋中的一个孤岛。这个短语用来补充说明名词 Rockall。

参考译文

本·弗西特机长买了一辆不同寻常的出租汽车，并开始了一项新的业务。这辆“出租汽车”是一架小型瑞士飞机，叫“皮勒特斯·波特”号。这架奇妙的飞机可以载7名乘客。然而，最令人惊奇的是它能够在任何地方降落：雪地上，水面上，甚至刚耕过的田里。弗西特机长的第一名乘客是位医生，他从伯明翰飞往威尔士山区一个偏僻的村庄。从那时开始，弗西特机长已经载乘客到过许多不寻常的地方。一次，他把飞机降落在了一栋公寓楼的屋顶上；还有一次，降落在了一个废弃的停车场上。弗西特机长刚刚拒绝了一位商人的奇怪要求。这个人想要飞往大西洋上的一个孤岛——罗卡尔岛，弗西特机长之所以不送他去，是因为那段飞行太危险了。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 60 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 60 个单词。

1 Has Captain Ben Fawcett bought a small Swiss aeroplane, or has he bought an ordinary taxi? Does he use it as a taxi or not? (and)
2 What is it called?
3 How many passengers can it carry? Can it land anywhere or not? (not only ... but)
4 Has Captain Fawcett taken passengers to many strange places in his plane or not?
5 Did he refuse to fly a businessman to Rockall or not?
6 Was the journey too dangerous or not?

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子:
The plane (not only) (neither) (flew) (threw) close to the river, (but) (or) also flew under a bridge. (Then) (However) it (climbed) (ran) into the air. The people on the bridge (waved) (shook) to the pilot (and) (yet) he did not (notice) (look after) them.

Letter writing 书信写作

I am writing to someone who lives abroad. Which of these two headings would be correct?
我给居住在国外的人写信，以下哪个信头是正确的?

19 High Lane, 19 High Lane,
Newton,  Newton,  England.
Middlesex, Middlesex,
10th September, 19_ 10th September, 19_

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? What has happened? 对比一般过去时和现在完成时 (KS5) (参见第 5 课关键句型)

Study these pairs of sentences. Pay close attention to the words in italics:
仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的部分:
I saw him in 1994. 我在 1994 年见到了他。
I have not seen him since 1994. 从 1994 年以来我一直没有见过他。
I saw him three years ago. 我 3 年前见过他。
I have not seen him for three years. 我有 3 年没有见到他了。
He stayed at this hotel last month. 上个月他住在这个酒店。
Have you ever stayed at this hotel? 你在这个酒店住过吗?
I went abroad last year. 去年我出国了。
Up till now, I have never been abroad before. 至今我还没有出过国。
Unit 2  Lesson 29

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what happened and what has happened.
在课文中选出表示过去发生的事件和已经发生的事件的动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案:
Captain Ben Fawcett ________ (buy) an unusual taxi and ________ (begin) a new service. The ‘taxi’ is a small Swiss aeroplane called a ‘Pilatus Porter’. This wonderful plane can carry seven passengers. ... Captain Fawcett’s first passenger ________ (be) a doctor who ________ (fly) from Birmingham to a lonely vilage in the Welsh mountains. Since then, Captain Fawcett ________ (fly) passengers to many unusual places. Once he ________ (land) on the roof of a block of flats and on another occasion, he ________ (land) in a deserted car park. Captain Fawcett just ________ (refuse) a strange request from a businessman. The man ________ (want) to fly to Rockall, but Captain Fawcett ________ (not take) him because the trip ________ (be) too dangerous.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词
a  Refuse and Deny.
  Refuse (a request or something offered) 拒绝（一个请求或给予的某种东西）：Captain Fawcett has just refused a strange request from a businessman. (11.9-10)
  Deny (an accusation) 否认（一种指控）：He denied that he had stolen the money. 他否认曾偷过钱。
b  Bring, Take, and Fetch.
  Bring (come from somewhere with something) 带来（从某地带来某物）：He brought the book with him when he came to see me. 他来看我时把书带来了。
  Take (away from somewhere or someone) 拿走（从某地或某人处带走）：He took the book with him when he left. 他走的时候把书带走了。（SD4 对比第4课难点）
  Fetch: (go somewhere, pick something up and bring it back) 取来（去某地, 取某物并带回）：I asked him to go to my room and fetch my glasses. 请他去我的房间取来我的眼镜。

c  Very and Too.
  Very 很, 非常: I arrived very late but I caught the train. 我到得很迟, 但赶上火车。
  Too 太, 过于: I arrived too late and I missed the train. 我到得太迟, 错过了火车。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following:
选择正确的词:
1  When you go to the kitchen, please (fetch) (bring) me a glass of water.
2  The ball went over the fence and the football player asked a boy to (fetch) (bring) it.
3  When I asked him he (refused) (denied) to tell me.
4  Do you (deny) (refuse) that you have told me a lie?
5  How are you? (Too) (Very) well, thank you.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The most remarkable thing about the ‘Pilatus Porter’ is that ________.
   (a) it can be used as a taxi  
   (b) it doesn’t need a runway to land on 
   (c) it can carry seven passengers  
   (d) it is a Swiss aeroplane
2. Captain Fawcett ________.
   (a) is prepared to fly passengers anywhere  
   (b) flies passengers anywhere 
   (c) will fly passengers anywhere except very dangerous places 
   (d) will fly passengers anywhere except Rockall

Structure 句型
3. The ‘taxi’ is a small Swiss aeroplane ________ called a ‘Pilatus Porter’.
   (a) who is  
   (b) whom is  
   (c) which is  
   (d) whose is
4. This is the most surprising thing about it. It is ________ than anything.
   (a) most surprising  
   (b) more surprising  
   (c) more surprised  
   (d) most surprised
5. He flew a doctor to a Welsh village ________ he has flown to many unusual places.
   (a) From then  
   (b) By then  
   (c) By that time  
   (d) Since that time
6. He was asked ________ a businessman to fly to Rockall and he refused.
   (a) from  
   (b) by  
   (c) with  
   (d) out of
7. The man wanted to fly to Rockall ________ to take him there.
   (a) He wanted the pilot  
   (b) He wanted  
   (c) The pilot he wanted  
   (d) The pilot the man wanted

Vocabulary 词汇
8. It’s an unusual taxi. It isn’t very ________.
   (a) accustomed  
   (b) common  
   (c) usually  
   (d) used to
9. The ploughed field is ready for ________.
   (a) sewing  
   (b) sowing  
   (c) seeding  
   (d) growing
10. It’s a lonely village. It is ________.
    (a) far  
    (b) far from anywhere  
    (c) alone  
    (d) the only one
11. Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual ________.
    (a) parts  
    (b) pieces  
    (c) spots  
    (d) sections
12. The car park was deserted. It was ________.
    (a) a desert  
    (b) empty  
    (c) abandoned  
    (d) wasted

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下两个句子, 然后对照课文第 5-7 行, 核对你的答案。
Captain Fawcett’s first passenger was a doctor. The doctor flew from Birmingham to a lonely village.
Lesson 30  Football or polo?  足球还是水球？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What happened to the man in the boat?

The Wayle is a small river that cuts across the park near my home. I like sitting by the Wayle on fine afternoons. It was warm last Sunday, so I went and sat on the river bank as usual. Some children were playing games on the bank and there were some people rowing on the river. Suddenly, one of the children kicked a ball very hard and it went towards a passing boat. Some people on the bank called out to the man in the boat, but he did not hear them. The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. I turned to look at the children, but there weren’t any in sight: they had all run away! The man laughed when he realized what had happened. He called out to the children and threw the ball back to the bank.

New words and expressions

polo (title) /'pələʊ/ n. 水球
Wayle (1.1) /'weɪl/ n. 威尔 (河名)
cut (1.1) /kʌt/ (cut, cut) v. 穿过
row (1.4) /raʊ/ v. 划 (船)
kick (1.5) /kɪk/ v. 踢
towards (1.6) /tə'wɔːdz/ prep. 朝，向
nearly (1.8) /ˈnɪəli/ adv. 几乎
sight (1.9) /saɪt/ n. 眼界，视野

Notes on the text

1 a small river that cuts across the park. 横穿公园的一条小河。其中，以 that 引导的定语从句用来修饰 a small river。

2 on fine afternoons. 天气晴朗的下午。当 morning, afternoon, evening 这些词的前面或后面有修饰词时要用介词 on。

3 as usual. 像往常一样。

4 called out to the man in the boat. 对船上的人高喊。

5 The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. 球重重地打在他身上，使他差点落入水中。“so + 形容词 + that”从句往往表达“如此……以至于……”的意思。

6 in sight: 可以看到，反义词为 out of sight。

参考译文

威尔河是横穿我家附近公园的一条小河。我喜欢在天气晴朗的下午到河边坐坐。上星期日天气很暖和。于是我和往常一样，又去河边坐着。河岸边有些孩子正在玩耍，河面上有些人正在划船。突然，一个孩子狠狠地踢了一脚球，球便向着一只划过的小船飞去。岸边的一些人对着小船上的人高喊，但他没有听见。球重重地打在他身上，使他差点儿落入水中。我转过头去看那些孩子，但一个也不见，全都跑光了！当那个人明白了发生的 事情时，笑了起来。他大声叫着那些孩子，把球扔回到岸上。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 70 个单词。
1. Did the writer sit by the river last Sunday or not?
2. Were some children playing games nearby or not?
3. Who kicked a ball hard? Where did it go? (and)
4. Did the man in the boat see the ball? Did he hear people shouting? (neither ... nor)
5. Did the ball hit the man or not? What did the children do? (and)
6. Was the man angry or not? Where did he throw the ball? (However ... and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子:
The wind (threw) (blew) his hat into the river. He (put) (took) out his hand (and) (but) tried to (reach) (catch) it (so)
(but) he could not (so) (but) he (jumped) (fell) into the river (and) (but) got it.

Letter writing 书信写作

Arrange the following heading in the correct order:
接正确的顺序编排以下信头的各个组成部分:
Middlesex, England, 10th September, 19—, 19 High Lane, Newton.

Key structures 关键句型

A. The, Some and Any (KS6) (参见第 6 课关键句型)

a Some and Any. (对比第 9 课难点)
注意下句子中 some 和 any 的用法:
Is there any milk in the bottle? 瓶子里有牛奶吗?
There isn’t any milk in the bottle, but there is some in this jug. 瓶子里没有一点儿奶，但是罐子里有一些。
Is there any soap in the bathroom? 卫生间里有肥皂吗?
There isn’t any soap in the bathroom, but there’s some in the cupboard. 卫生间里没有肥皂，但是箱子里有一些。
Are there any nails in that tin? 那个罐头盒子里有钉子吗?
There aren’t any in the tin, but there are some in this box. 罐头盒子里没有，但这个盒子里有一些。

b Names. 姓名
We cannot put a or the in front of names. (KS 6c)
在人名和地名前面不加冠词 a 或 the。 (参见第 6 课关键句型 c)
John lives in England. He has a house in London. 约翰住在英国，他在伦敦有座房子。

But we must put the in front of the names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges and certain countries:
但在海洋、河流、山脉和部分国名前，一定要用定冠词 the:
Who was the first person to sail across the Pacific? 谁是第一个横渡太平洋的人?
It can get very rough in the Mediterranean. 地中海中可能会非常不平静。
Many great cities are built on rivers. Paris is on the Seine, London is on the Thames and Rome is on the Tiber. 我们知道很多大城巿都建在河岸上。巴黎在塞納河上，伦敦在泰晤士河上，罗马在第伯尔河上。

I know a man who has been on climbing expeditions in many parts of the world. He has climbed in the Alps, the Himalayas, and the Rocky Mountains. 我认识一个参加过世界各地登山探险的人，他曾攀登过阿尔卑斯山、喜马拉雅山和洛矶山。

Instead of saying: We can say:
除了这种表述方法外：还可以说：

I went to America last year. I went to the United States of America last year. 我去年去了美国。我去年去了美国。

Would you like to go to China? Would you like to go to the People’s Republic of China? 你愿意去中国吗？你愿意去中华人民共和国吗？

**Exercises 练习**

A Underline the words *a, the, some* and *any* in the passage.
划出文中的 *a, the, some* 和 *any*。

B Put in the words *a, the, some*, and *any* where necessary. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
在必要的地方加上 *a, the, some* 和 *any*。完成练习后再对照原文核对你的答案。

Wayle is a small river that cuts across a park near my home. I like sitting by Wayle on fine afternoons. It was warm last Sunday, so I went and sat on a river bank as usual. Some children were playing games on the bank and there were any people rowing on any river. Suddenly, one of some children kicked a ball very hard and it went towards a passing boat. Some people on the bank called out to a man in the boat, but he did not hear them. A ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. I turned to look at some children, but there weren’t any in sight.

C Answer these questions in two ways using *some* and *any*:
用 *some* 和 *any* 对以下问题作出肯定和否定的答话：

1. Did you take any photographs? Yes, ______; No, ______
2. Did you buy any bread? Yes, ______; No, ______
3. Did you see any people outside the cinema? Yes, ______; No, ______

D Put in *a* or *the* where necessary.
在必要的地方填上冠词 *a* 或 *the*。

1. ______ refrigerators are necessary in ______ hot countries.
2. Which river is ______ longest, Nile, Amazon, or Mississippi?
3. Heyerdahl crossed ______ Pacific on ______ raft.
4. Why is ______ Britain sometimes called ______ United Kingdom?
5. We sailed up ______ Red Sea and then went through ______ Suez Canal.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The writer ________.
   (a) likes sitting on the bank of the river when it’s fine
   (b) rarely goes to the river
   (c) likes sitting on the bank of the river all the time
   (d) likes sitting on the bank of the river on Sundays

2 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) Some people tried to warn the man about the ball.
   (b) Some people shouted to the writer, but he didn’t hear them.
   (c) The children laughed when they realized what had happened.
   (d) The man was angry with the children and kept their ball.

Structure 句型

3 There is a river near the writer’s home. It is called ________.
   (a) a Wayle (b) Wayle (c) this Wayle (d) the Wayle

4 It cuts across the park. It goes ________ it.
   (a) through (b) over (c) round (d) along

5 Why did they kick the ball so ________?
   (a) hardly (b) hard (c) hardy (d) hardly

6 The ball went towards a passing boat. It went ________ of a passing boat.
   (a) forwards (b) forward (c) in the direction (d) in direction

7 There weren’t any in sight. They ________.
   (a) couldn’t see (b) hadn’t seen (c) couldn’t be seen (d) weren’t seen

Vocabulary 词汇

8 The man was rowing, so he was using ________.
   (a) rows (b) sticks (c) oars (d) rudders

9 Some people on the bank ________ the man.
   (a) cried (b) cried with (c) cried for (d) cried to

10 The man in the boat didn’t ________ anyone shouting.
    (a) hear (b) listen to (c) mind (d) take care of

11 The ball ________ him very hard.
    (a) knocked at (b) beat (c) bounced (d) hit

12 They had run away, so they had ________.
    (a) dismissed (b) disturbed (c) displaced (d) disappeared

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The ball struck him hard. He nearly fell into the water.

The ball struck him so ________________________.
Lesson 31 Success story 成功者的故事

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What was Frank's first job?

Yesterday afternoon Frank Hawkins was telling me about his experiences as a young man. Before he retired, Frank was the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he used to work in a small shop. It was his job to repair bicycles and at that time he used to work fourteen hours a day. He saved money for years and in 1958 he bought a small workshop of his own. In his twenties Frank used to make spare parts for aeroplanes. At that time he had two helpers. In a few years the small workshop had become a large factory which employed seven hundred and twenty-eight people. Frank smiled when he remembered his hard early years and the long road to success. He was still smiling when the door opened and his wife came in. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

retire (1.2) /ˈraɪtaɪ/ v. 退休
company (1.3) /ˈkʌmpəni/ n. 公司
bicycle (1.4) /ˈbaɪsɪkl/ n. 自行车
save (1.5) /seɪv/ v. 积蓄
workshop (1.6) /ˈwɜːkʃɒp/ n. 车间
helper (1.8) /ˈhelpə/ n. 帮手，助手
employ (1.9) /ɪmˈploʊ/ v. 雇佣
grandson (1.11) /ˈɡrændsʌn/ n. 孙子

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. but as a boy he used to work in a small shop, 但他小时候在一家小铺里工作。used to do 表示“过去经常做，而现在已经停止，不再重复的动作”.
2. of his own, 自己的。
3. in his twenties, 20 多岁的时候。

参考译文

昨天下午弗兰克·霍金斯向我讲述了他年轻时的经历。在退休前，弗兰克是一家非常大的商业公司经理，但他小时候却在一家小铺里做工。那时他的工作是修理自行车，并且通常是一天工作 14 个小时。他多年积蓄，于 1958 年买下了自己的一个小铺子。20 多岁的时候，弗兰克曾生产飞机零配件。那时他有两个帮手。几年之后，小铺子已经发展成了一个雇有 728 人大的工厂。弗兰克回想起他早年的艰难经历和走过的漫长的成功的路，微笑了。他正笑着的时候门开了，他的妻子走了进来。她叫他去买孙子的自行车。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 80 个单词。
1 What was Frank Hawkins telling the writer about?
2 Where did Frank use to work as a boy?
3 What did he use to do there?
4 When did he buy his own shop? What did he make in his twenties? (and)
5 Did he employ a lot of people in a few years or not?
6 Who came into the room after a while?
7 What did she want him to repair?

**Composition 作文**

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

Frank (not only) (neither) (repaired) (made) his grandson’s bicycle, (but) (also) went for a ride on it (as well) (both). He (said) (told) me later: 'I (make) (do) aeroplanes, (and) (but) I prefer bicycles.'

**Letter writing 书信写作**

Which of the following headings is correct?

以下的哪一个信头是正确的？

Mr. Bill Howard, 214 Duke St., Perth, Western Australia.
14th May, 19_

**Key structures 关键句型**

He used to work fourteen hours a day.

Do you remember these sentences? (KS7)

When I was watering the garden, it began to rain.

I have given up smoking. I used to smoke very heavily.

My uncle used to live in New Zealand but he’s now living in Australia.

**Exercises 练习**

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what was happening, what happened and what used to happen.

在课文中挑出所有过去进行时、一般过去时和含有 used to do 的句子:
Unit 2 Lesson 31

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

1. Before he retired, Frank was the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he ________ (work) in a small shop. It ________ (be) his job to repair bicycles and at that time he ________ (work) fourteen hours a day. He ________ (save) money for years and in 1958 he ________ (buy) a small workshop.

2. Frank ________ (smile) when he ________ (remember) his hard early years. He still ________ (smile) when the door ________ (open) and his wife ________ (come) in.

C What was happening? What happened? What used to happen? Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

While my wife ________ (work) in the kitchen, I ________ (sit) in the garden. I ________ (look) at cars which ________ (pass) in the street, when a small car ________ (stop) outside my gate and a man ________ (get) out. I was most surprised to see that the man was Ted Hale. We ________ (be) at the same school years ago. In those days, Ted ________ (come) to our house nearly every day and we often ________ (go) out together. We ________ (be) great friends, but one day we ________ (quarrel) and I never ________ (see) him again. As he ________ (get) out of his car, I ________ (call) my wife and we both ________ (hurry) out to greet an old friend.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often misused and confused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

a. Experience.

Frank Hawkins was telling me about his experiences. (11. 1-2)

This job requires a lot of experience. 这种工作需要有丰富经验。

He is an experienced worker. 他是一位有经验的工人。

b. Save.

He saved money for years. (1.5)

The young man dived into the river and saved the boy’s life. 那位年轻人跳入水中，救了那个男孩的性命。

c. Work and Job.

It was his job to repair bicycles. (1.4)

I’ve just found a new job. I begin work on Monday. 我找到了一份新的工作，我星期一开始上班。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选择正确的词填空:

1. He is a very (experience) (experienced) doctor.

2. My father enjoys doing (jobs) (works) about the house.

3. I am looking for a new (work) (job).

4. The government is trying to persuade people to (economize) (save) money.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 When he was a young man, Frank ________.
   (a) owned a small shop  (b) made spare parts for aeroplanes
   (c) made spare parts for bicycles  (d) worked hard and saved his money
2 Frank has been very successful ________.
   (a) and he still repairs bicycles for a living  (b) but he might occasionally repair a bicycle
   (c) and he would never repair a bicycle now  (d) and he is only interested in aeroplanes

Structure 句型
3 Frank used to work in a small shop. He ________.
   (a) doesn’t anymore  (b) still does
   (c) is now  (d) has never done anything else
4 He used to work fourteen hours a day. He did this ________ day.
   (a) one  (b) some
   (c) each  (d) a
5 He had a shop of his own. It was ________ shop.
   (a) his own  (b) his’s
   (c) his’ own  (d) his’
6 In his twenties, 728 people ________ in the shop.
   (a) were employed  (b) employed
   (c) are employed  (d) employ
7 ________ this bicycle? Their grandson’s.
   (a) Who’s is  (b) Whoses
   (c) Who’s  (d) Whose is

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Frank is the ________ of a business company.
   (a) director  (b) headmaster
   (c) superior  (d) leader
9 He saved money, so he had to ________.
   (a) spare it  (b) economise
   (c) keep it  (d) rescue it
10 Spare parts for aeroplanes are made in Frank’s ________.
    (a) industry  (b) fabric
    (c) factory  (d) workhouse
11 He employed over seven hundred people. ________.
    (a) They worked for him  (b) He worked for them
    (c) They employed him  (d) They were in charge
12 He was still smiling when the door opened and his wife ________.
    (a) went in  (b) entered in
    (c) entered  (d) entered into

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写下列句子, 然后对照课文第 11 行, 核对你的答案。
She asked him if he would repair their grandson’s bicycle.
She wanted ________________________.
Lesson 32  Shopping made easy  购物变得很方便

First listen and then answer the question.

Who was the thief?

People are not so honest as they once were. The temptation to steal is greater than ever before — especially in large shops. A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman who always went into a large store on Monday mornings. One Monday, there were fewer people in the shop than usual when the woman came in, so it was easier for the detective to watch her. The woman first bought a few small articles. After a little time, she chose one of the most expensive dresses in the shop and handed it to an assistant who wrapped it up for her as quickly as possible. Then the woman simply took the parcel and walked out of the shop without paying. When she was arrested, the detective found out that the shop assistant was her daughter. The girl ‘gave’ her mother a free dress once a week!

New words and expressions  生词和短语

once (1.1) /wa ns/ adv. 曾经, 以前
temptation (1.1) /tɛmpə'teɪʃən/ n. 诱惑
article (1.7) /'ɑːtɪkəl/ n. 物品, 东西
wrap (1.8) /ra p/ v. 包裹
simply (1.9) /'sɪmpli/ adv. 仅仅
arrest (1.10) /əˈrest/ v. 逮捕

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 People are not so honest as they once were. 人们不再像以前那样诚实了。其中的句型“not so + 形容词 + as ...”是比较状语从句，可以译成“不如……那样……”。
2 The temptation to steal is greater than ever before. 偷窃的诱惑力比以往任何时候都强烈。to steal 是动词不定式，用来作 temptation 的定语。
3 well-dressed, 穿着入时的, 这是复合形容词。
4 than usual, 比平常。
5 so it was easier for the detective to watch her, 因此，侦探比较容易监视她。在这句话中，it 只是一个先行词，实际主语是后面的不定式短语 for the detective to watch her。
6 wrap up, 包起来。
7 as ... as possible, 尽可能……。
8 without paying, 没有付款, 这里用介词短语作状语, 表示方式; 其中的动名词 paying 作介词 without 的宾语。

参考译文

人们不再像以前那样诚实了。偷窃的诱惑力比以往任何时候都更强烈——特别是在大的商店里。一名侦探最近注意上了一位穿着讲究的妇女，她总是在星期一上午进入一家大商场。有一个星期一，当这位妇女走进这家商场时，里面的人比往常少，因此，侦探比较容易监视她。这位妇女先是买了几样小商品。过了一会儿，
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 70 个单词。
1 Whom did a detective watch in a large store one Monday?
2 What did she buy? Did she choose an expensive dress or not? (and then)
3 Did the assistant wrap it up for her or not? Did the woman take it with her or not? (and)
4 Did she pay for it or not? Did the detective arrest her or not? (so)
5 Who was the assistant?
6 What did she give her mother once a week?

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子:
I (came) (arrived at) the office late as usual (so) (but) Mr. Blake (saw) (understood) me (and) (or) he was very angry. ‘This is your last day here, Jones,’ he said. ‘You can (neither) (either) (stay) (sit) here (or) (nor) go home!’

Letter writing 书信写作

Each line of the address is followed by a comma. The last line is followed by a full stop. We do not put a comma or a full stop after the date.
地址的每一行都以逗号结尾，最后一行用句号。在日期后面不用标点符号。

Exercise 练习

Arrange the following heading in the correct order. Put in full stops or commas where necessary:
按正确的顺序排列以下信头，在必要地方加上逗号和句号:
New York/504 West 94th St./N.Y./24th June, 19—/U.S.A.

Key structures 关键句型

People are not so honest as they once were.
Do you remember these sentences? (KS8)
你还记得这些表示对比的句子吗？(参见第 8 课关键句型)
Mary is tall, but Jane is taller. Jane is taller than Mary. Betty is very tall. She is the tallest girl in the class.
Now study these sentences carefully:
仔细阅读以下句子:
a He is as old as I am. 他和我年龄一样大。
He unlocked the door as quickly as he could. 他尽快地打开了门。
She is not as intelligent as we think. 她不像我们想像得那么聪明。
Or: She is not so intelligent as we think.
b Instead of saying:

There isn’t much I can do to help him.

He hasn’t got as much work to do as I have.

There weren’t many people in the shop.

He hasn’t as many books as I have.

There isn’t much whisky in this bottle, but you can have some if you want it.

There aren’t many apples on the tree, but you can pick some if you want to.

We can say:

There is little I can do to help him.

He’s got less work to do than I have.

There were very few people in the shop.

He has fewer books than I have.

There isn’t much whisky in this bottle, but you can have a little if you want it.

There aren’t many apples on the tree, but you can pick a few if you want to.

Exercises 练习

A How many comparisons can you find in the passage? Underline them.

在课文中你能找出几种表示比较的方式? 在它们下面划上横线。

B Supply the missing words and give the correct form of the words in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

在空白处填上适当的词,并将括号内词的正确形式填上。完成练习后再对照课文,核对你的答案。

People are not ________ honest _________ they once were. The temptation to steal is ________ (great) than ever before — especially in large shops. A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman who always went into a large store on Monday mornings. One Monday, there were ________ (few) people in the shop than usual when the woman came in, so it was ________ (easy) for the detective to watch her. The woman first bought a ________ small articles. After a ________ time, she chose one of the ________ (expensive) dresses in the shop and handed it to an assistant who wrapped it up for her ________ quickly ________ possible.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

A and One. (KS6) (参见第6课关键句型)

Study these examples:

细读以下例句:

A detective watched a well-dressed woman. (11.2-3)

One Monday, there were fewer people in the shop. (11.4-5)

Compare:

对比以下几个句子:

There is a boy in the classroom. 教室里有个男孩。

There is only one boy in the classroom. (And not two or more.) 教室里仅有1个男孩子。

Exercise 练习

Put in a/an or one: 用 a/an 或 one 填空:

_______ day I received ________ postcard from Harry. He invited me to go on ________ excursion. As he was setting out that afternoon, there was only ________ thing to do. I had to send ________ fax. I went to my desk and picked up ________ form. I wrote ________ fax of ________ word: NO.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The detective saw the woman ________.
   (a) every Monday  (b) pay the assistant for the dresses
   (c) buy a few things  (d) put the dresses in her bag
2 It was easy for the woman to steal because ________.
   (a) she was clever  (b) no one ever saw her
   (c) she was related to one of the assistants  (d) an assistant wrapped her parcels

Structure 句型
3 People are not so honest as they once were. They are ________ honest.
   (a) as  (b) so  (c) less  (d) fewer
4 There were fewer people in the shop than usual. There were ________.
   (a) as many as usual  (b) not as many as usual  (c) as few as usual  (d) more than usual
5 The woman bought a few small articles. She bought ________.
   (a) a little  (b) some  (c) one  (d) three
6 Which dress did she ________?
   (a) chosen  (b) chose  (c) choose  (d) choosing
7 It was one of the most expensive dresses ________ the shop.
   (a) in  (b) of  (c) from  (d) to

Vocabulary 词汇
8 A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman. He ________ her.
   (a) looked  (b) looked for  (c) looked after  (d) looked at
9 The woman first bought a few small articles. She bought some small ________.
   (a) things  (b) pieces  (c) bits  (d) parts
10 The assistant wrapped it. She ________ it.
    (a) papered  (b) turned  (c) enveloped  (d) made a parcel of
11 She was arrested. She ________.
    (a) escaped  (b) was caught  (c) was stopped  (d) was seen
12 The dress was free. It ________.
    (a) was priceless  (b) was worthless  (c) cost nothing  (d) was grateful

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 4-6 行，核对你的答案。

One Monday, there were fewer people in the shop than usual. The woman came in. It was easier for the detective to watch her.
Lesson 33  Out of the darkness  冲出黑暗

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why was the girl in hospital?

Nearly a week passed before the girl was able to explain what had happened to her. One afternoon she set out from the coast in a small boat and was caught in a storm. Towards evening, the boat struck a rock and the girl jumped into the sea. Then she swam to the shore after spending the whole night in the water. During that time she covered a distance of eight miles. Early next morning, she saw a light ahead. She knew she was near the shore because the light was high up on the cliffs. On arriving at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff towards the light she had seen. That was all she remembered. When she woke up a day later, she found herself in hospital.

New words and expressions  生词和短语

darkness (title) /'daiknos/ n. 黑暗
explain (1.1) /iks'plein/ v. 解释，叙述
coast (1.2) /'kəust/ n. 海岸
storm (1.3) /stoim/ n. 暴风雨
towards (1.3) /ta'wɔdz/ prep. 向，朝；接近
rock (1.4) /rok/ n. 岩石，礁石
shore (1.4) /ʃa:/ n. 海岸
light (1.7) /laɪt/ n. 灯光
ahead (1.7) /ə'hed/ adv. 在前面
cliff (1.8) /klif/ n. 峭壁
struggle (1.8) /strʌɡl/ v. 挣扎
hospital (1.10) /'hɒspɪtl/ n. 医院

Notes on the text  轻文注释

1 set out, 出发，动身。
2 ... was caught in a storm.遇上了暴风雨。catch 此处作“突然遇上”讲。
3 During that time she covered a distance of eight miles.在那段时间里，她游了 8 英里。cover 作 “行过”、“走过”、“游过”等讲。
4 a light ahead, 前面的一盏灯。ahead 是形容词，此处作定语，放在所修饰的名词的前面。
5 On arriving at the shore ...,一到岸边……。on + 动名词相当于一个由 as soon as 引导的时间状语从句。
6 That was all she remembered. 她所记得的就这些。all 是句中的表语，she remembered 是定语从句，用来修饰 all，引导词 that 因在从句中作宾语而被省略。

参考译文

几乎过了一个星期，那姑娘才能讲述自己的遭遇。一天下午，她乘小船从海岸出发，遇上了风暴。天将黑时，小船撞在了一块礁石上，姑娘跳进了海里。她在海里游了整整一夜才游到岸边。在那段时间里，她游了 8 英里。第二天凌晨，她看到前方有灯光，知道自己已经接近岸边了，因为那灯光是在高高的峭壁上。到达岸边后，姑娘朝着她看到的灯光方向挣扎着往峭壁上爬去。她所记得的就这些。第二天她醒来时，发现自己躺在医院里。

154
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.

1. When did the girl set out from the coast? Was she caught in a storm or not? (and)
2. Did her boat strike a rock or not? Did she jump into the sea, or did she remain in the boat? (so)
3. How many miles did she swim that night?
4. When did she reach the shore?
5. What had she seen high up on the cliffs? Did she climb up or not? (and)
6. Where did she find herself a day later?

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

On Saturday I (wanted) (needed) to go to a football match. It (not only) (neither) rained all day (or) (but) it was cold as well, (but) (so) I (stayed) (waited) at home (and) (but) (watched) (looked) the match on television.

Letter writing 书信写作

Arrange the following heading in the correct order. Put in full stops or commas where necessary:

Grimsby/Lincs./17 Howland St./England/18th May, 19—

Key structures 关键句型

Where did he go? He went to the cinema. (Compare KS9) (对比第9课关键句型)

Read these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics. We can often use phrases like these to answer questions beginning with Where, or Which direction.

- Phrases with to and from. 带to和from的短语
  He flew to Washington last night. 昨晚他飞到了华盛顿。
  He will be flying from Washington to Chicago on Wednesday. 星期三他将从华盛顿飞往芝加哥。

- Phrases with into and out of. 带into和out of的短语
  Where is Carol? She has just gone into the kitchen. 卡罗尔在哪里？她刚刚到厨房去了。
  Where did you throw that piece of paper? I threw it out of the window. 你把那张纸扔到哪儿去了？我把它扔到了窗外。

- Phrases with for. 带for的短语
  We set out for the village at six o’clock next morning. 第二天早上6点我们出发去那个村子。
  George has left for Scotland. 乔治已动身去苏格兰。

- Phrases with towards. 带towards的短语
  The car came towards me. 汽车向我开来。
  She swam towards the shore. 她向岸边游去。

- Phrases with at. 带at的短语
  The boy threw a stone at a dog. 男孩用石头打狗。
  It is rude to point at people. 用手指人不礼貌。
Unit 2  Lesson 33

Exercises 练习

A Answer these questions about the passage:
回答有关课文的问题:
1 Where did the girl set out from?
2 Where did she jump?
3 Where did she swim?

B Supply the missing words in the following sentences:
用恰当的词填空:
1 Tell him to come ________ my office. I want to speak to him.
2 The ship sailed ________ the harbour and disappeared from sight.
3 We climbed ________ the top of the mountain.
4 The team set out ________. Australia yesterday.
5 This ship sails ________ Venice ________ London once a week.
6 He aimed ________ the bird, fired, and missed.
7 Please bring these things ________ the kitchen for me.
8 Have you received a letter ________ Alan yet?

C Write sentences using the following:
用以下词和词组组成完整的句子:
1 bird/flew/the room. 2 parachutist/jumped/aeroplane.
3 child/pointed/fat lady. 4 put/milk/refrigerator.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study these examples:
细读以下例句:
a Passed and Past. Nearly a week passed ... (1.1)
He passed my house this morning. ('Passed' is a verb.) 他今天上午路过我家。
He walked past my house. ('Past' is a prep.) 他从我家旁边走过。
He told me about his past experiences. ('Past' is an adjective.) 他告诉我他过去的经历。
He seems to live in the past. ('Past' is a noun.) 他好像生活在过去的时代里。

b Next and other.
Early next morning she saw a light ahead. (II.6-7) 第二天凌晨, 她看到前面有灯光。
We arrived in Paris on Tuesday evening. The next day we went sightseeing. (The day after.) 星期二晚上我们到达巴黎。第二天我们去观光。
I saw Mary the other day. (A few days ago.) 日前我见到了玛丽。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct expressions in the following:
选择正确的表达方式:
1 I tried to telephone you (the other day) (the next day). You must have been out.
2 Have you (past) (passed) your driving test?
On the first day all went well. But on the next day there was a storm.

The crowd cheered as the soldiers marched past.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The girl was in the boat _______.
   
   (a) all day  
   (b) all night  
   (c) for about ten hours  
   (d) for about four hours

2. The girl woke up in hospital a day later _______.
   
   (a) and explained what had happened to her  
   (b) but some time passed before she could explain what had happened to her  
   (c) and at once remembered what had happened to her  
   (d) but never remembered what had happened to her

Structure 句型

3. What _______ to her?
   
   (a) happen  
   (b) was happened  
   (c) happening  
   (d) happened

4. She swam to the shore _______ the night in the water.
   
   (a) having spent  
   (b) having spending  
   (c) when spending  
   (d) had spent

5. How _______ was the shore? Eight miles.
   
   (a) away far  
   (b) far from  
   (c) far away  
   (d) long

6. That was all she remembered. She couldn’t remember _______.
   
   (a) some more  
   (b) anymore  
   (c) no more  
   (d) none more

7. She was taken _______ hospital.
   
   (a) at the  
   (b) to  
   (c) in  
   (d) in the

Vocabulary 词汇

8. She was caught in a storm. The weather was _______.
   
   (a) fine  
   (b) warm and sunny  
   (c) very rough  
   (d) wet

9. She saw a light ahead. The light was _______ her.
   
   (a) behind  
   (b) beside  
   (c) in front of  
   (d) above

10. Cliffs are usually _______.
    
    (a) narrow  
    (b) wide  
    (c) steep  
    (d) sharp

11. She struggled up the cliff. It wasn’t _______.
    
    (a) easy  
    (b) hard  
    (c) difficult  
    (d) long

12. That was all she remembered. She couldn’t _______ very much.
    
    (a) remind  
    (b) memorise  
    (c) recollect  
    (d) mind

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.

When she arrived at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff.

On _______.

157
Lesson 34  Quick work  破案“神速”

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

How long had the police taken to find his bicycle?

Dan Robinson has been worried all week. Last Tuesday he received a letter from the local police. In the letter he was asked to call at the station. Dan wondered why he was wanted by the police, but he went to the station yesterday and now he is not worried anymore.

At the station, he was told by a smiling policeman that his bicycle had been found. Five days ago, the policeman told him, the bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away. It is now being sent to his home by train. Dan was most surprised when he heard the news. He was amused too, because he never expected the bicycle to be found. It was stolen twenty years ago when Dan was a boy of fifteen!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

station (1.3) /'stetʃən/ n. （警察）局
most (1.8) /məust/ adv. 相当, 非常

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 the local police, 当地警察（局）。
2 call at, 拜访, 也可用 call on。
3 he is not worried anymore, 他不再担心了。
4 the policeman told him, 警察告诉他。这是插入成分，在讲故事时常用这种方式。
5 the bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away, 那辆自行车在 400 英里以外的一个小村里被发现。pick up 有“意外地找到”的意思。
6 It is now being sent to his home by train. 现在正用火车给他运回家来。当被动语态用于现在进行时中，要在助动词 be 后面加上 -ing，再加上过去分词。
7 most surprised 中的 most 有 very 的意思，常常与起形容词作用的过去分词连用。

参考译文

丹·鲁宾逊焦虑了一整一个星期。上星期二他收到当地警察局的一封信，要他到警察局去一趟。丹奇怪警察为什么找他，但昨天还是去了，结果他不再担心了。在警察局里，一位面带笑容的警察告诉他，他的自行车找到了。那位警察对他说，那辆自行车是 5 天前在 400 英里以外的一个小村里发现的，现在正用火车给他运回家来。丹听到这个消息后，惊奇万分，但又感到非常好笑，因为他从未指望那辆自行车还能找到。这是 20 年前丹还是一个 15 岁的孩子时被人偷走的!
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.
回答以下问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过55个词。
1. Was Dan Robinson worried or not?
2. Whom had he received a letter from?
3. Where did he go yesterday?
4. Is he worried anymore or not?
5. What have the police found?
6. Was Dan surprised or not? Was he amused or not? (not only ... but ... as well)
7. When was his bicycle stolen?
8. How old was he then?

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:
用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子:
The man was (not only) (neither) tired (nor) (but) hungry (as well) (either). (However) (Therefore) all the hotels in the town (existed) (were) full, (but) (so) he went to the police station. The police (put) (gave) him a meal (and) (but) a bed for the night.

Letter writing 书信写作

In the address we usually write ‘St.’ for ‘Street’; ‘Rd.’ for ‘Road’; ‘Sq.’ for ‘Square’; ‘Ave.’ for ‘Avenue’; ‘Pl.’ for ‘Place’. We write words like ‘Lane’ and ‘Drive’ in full.
在地址中我们通常使用缩略形式，如: “St.” (Street); “Rd.” (Road); “Sq.” (Square); “Avenue” (Avenue); “Pl.” (Place)，而有些词则不用缩略形式，如 “Lane”和 “Drive”。

Exercise 练习

Write these words in the way shown above:
写出以下词的缩略形式:
Place, Avenue, Street, Road, Square.

Key structures 关键句型

He was asked to call at the station.
You still remember these sentences? (KS10)
你还记得以下句子吗?
Prisoners of war built this bridge in 1942. (Who)
This bridge was built (by prisoners of war) in 1942. (What)
Now study these sentences: 仔细阅读以下句子:
They asked me to make a speech. (Who) 他们叫我作一次讲演。
I was asked to make a speech. (Who) 我应邀作一次讲演。
Unit 2 Lesson 34

You will notice that the form of the verb depends on the person or thing we mention first. We mention the most important person or thing first.

Instead of saying:

They are sending him abroad.
The police were questioning the man.
He told me to wait for him.
They have found your wallet.
He never expected them to find the bicycle.

We can say:

He is being sent abroad.
The man was being questioned (by the police).
I was told to wait for him.
Your wallet has been found.
He never expected the bicycle to be found.

Exercises 练习

A Answer these questions on the passage. Write a complete sentence in answer to each question:

1 Who has been worried all the week?
2 What was Dan asked to do?
3 What did Dan wonder?
4 What was Dan told at the station?
5 Where was Dan’s bicycle picked up?

B Change the form of the phrases in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

1 Something has worried Dan all the week.
2 In the letter they asked him to call at the station.
3 Dan wondered why the police wanted him.
4 At the station, a smiling policeman told him that they had found his bicycle.
5 They picked up the bicycle in a small village.
6 They are sending it to his home by train.
7 This amused him because he never expected them to find the bicycle. Someone stole it twenty years ago.

Special difficulties 难点

Read these sentences. Each sentence contains the verb call. The verb has a different meaning in each sentence:

He was asked to call at the station. (11.2-3)
He called out to me but I did not hear him.
I called on George yesterday. (I paid him a short visit.)
She’ll call you up tomorrow. (She will telephone you.)
It began to rain so we called off the match. (We cancelled it.)

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1 I called ________ you five times yesterday. Were you out?
2 It’s too late to go to the pictures. Why don’t we call the whole thing ________?
3 We called _______ to him but he could not hear us.
4 I called _______ the post office on my way to work.

Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1 Dan was worried because _______.
   (a) he received a letter           (b) the police wanted him
   (c) he went to the station yesterday   (d) he didn’t know why the police wanted him

2 Dan _______.
   (a) had probably forgotten all about his bicycle
   (b) probably expected to find his bicycle again
   (c) probably expected to get a letter from the police
   (d) was probably sorry to learn that his bicycle had been found

Structure

3 Dan has been worried all week and he’s _______ worried.
   (a) even          (b) still        (c) yet        (d) anymore

4 The police _______ Dan’s bicycle.
   (a) had been finding  (b) had been found  (c) had found   (d) have been finding

5 _______ was the bicycle picked up? In a small village.
   (a) Where        (b) Why            (c) What        (d) When

6 He never expected that _______ find the bicycle.
   (a) to          (b) to be             (c) they        (d) they would

7 Someone _______ it twenty years ago.
   (a) stolen      (b) has stolen       (c) stole       (d) was stolen

Vocabulary

8 All the police at the station are _______ men.
   (a) topical       (b) local          (c) native      (d) neighbourly

9 The police wanted Dan to call at the station. They wanted him to call _______ them.
   (a) at            (b) in              (c) on          (d) up

10 The bicycle was picked up four hundred miles away. It was _______ by a policeman.
   (a) picked        (b) found           (c) dropped     (d) lifted

11 Dan was amused. He must have _______.
   (a) shouted      (b) cried            (c) laughed     (d) clapped

12 The bicycle was stolen. Dan was _______.
   (a) robbed       (b) stolen           (c) taken       (d) stealing

Sentence structure

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.

They are now sending it to his home by train.

It ____________________________.
Lesson 35  Stop thief! 抓贼!

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
How did Roy stop the thieves?
Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. A short while ago, however, he became a bus driver and he has not regretted it. He is finding his new work far more exciting. When he was driving along Catford Street recently, he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car. One of them was carrying a bag full of money. Roy acted quickly and drove the bus straight at the thieves. The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag. As the thieves were trying to get away in their car, Roy drove his bus into the back of it. While the battered car was moving away, Roy stopped his bus and telephoned the police. The thieves’ car was badly damaged and easy to recognize. Shortly afterwards, the police stopped the car and both men were arrested.

New words and expressions 生词和短语
while (1.1) /waɪl/ n. 一段时间
regret (1.2) /rɪ'gret/ v. 后悔
far (1.3) /fɑː/ adv. 非常
rush (1.4) /rʌʃ/ v. 冲
act (1.6) /ækt/ v. 行动
straight (1.6) /streɪt/ adv. 径直
fright (1.7) /fraɪt/ n. 害怕
battered (1.9) /'bætəd/ adj. 撞坏的
shortly (1.10) /'ʃɔːli/ adv. 很快，不久
afterwards (1.10) /'aːftəwədz/ adv. 以后

Notes on the text 课文注释
1 a short while ago, 不久前。
2 far more exciting, 令人兴奋得多。far 是副词，放在比较级的形容词前，表示程度，可译作“很”、“大大地”。
3 he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car, 他看到两个小偷从一家商店里冲出来，奔向等在那里的一辆汽车。在动词 see 后面接不定式时，不定式要省去 to，如本句中的 rush 和 run 两个不定式。
4 a bag full of money, 一只装满钞票的提包。full of ... 是形容词短语，此处作定语，相当于一个定语从句 which was full of money。
5 The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag. 拿钱的那个小偷吓得把提包都扔了。句中 such ... that ... 的结构有“如此——以至于……”的意思，such 后面要接名词。
6 shortly afterwards, 没过多久。

参考译文
罗伊·特雷顿原是开出租汽车的，然而就在前不久，他开上了公共汽车，也并不为此而感到后悔。他发现自己的新工作令人兴奋得多。最近，当他正开车在凯特福德街上行驶时，看到有两个小偷从一家商店里冲出来，奔向等在那里的一辆汽车。其中一个提着一只装满钞票的提包。罗伊行动迅速，开车直冲窃贼而去。拿着的
Summary writing  摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. Is Roy finding his new job as a bus driver exciting or not?
2. In which street did he see two thieves recently?
3. Were they running out of a shop, or were they running out of a bank? Where did Roy drive his bus? Did they drop the stolen money or not? Did they get into a car, or did they run away? (and ... so ... and)
4. Where did Roy drive his bus then? Did he damage their car or not? (and)
5. Whom did he telephone after this?
6. Were both men arrested later or did they get away?

Composition  作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

The politician tried to (do) (make) a speech in the park (so) (but) no one (listened to) (heard) him. The audience shouted (and) (or) threw things (so) (but) the speaker got into his car and (drove) (ran) away.

Letter writing  书信写作

Supply commas or full stops where necessary in this heading:

20 Crawford Ave
Cranley
Dorset
England
October 4th 19—

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS26-34 复习第 26-34 课的关键句型

These things always happen. (KS26) (第 26 课)
What happened? (KS27) (第 27 课)
What has happened? (KS28) (第 28 课)
He used to work fourteen hours a day. (KS31) (第 31 课)
He was asked to call at the station. (KS34) (第 34 课)

Exercises 练习

A. Underline all the verbs in the passage.

在课文所有动词的下面划上横线。
Unit 2 Lesson 35

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

Roy Trenton _________ (drive) a taxi. A short while ago, however, he _________ (become) a bus driver and he _________ (not regret) it. He _________ (find) his new work far more exciting. When he _________ (drive) along Catford Street recently, he _________ (see) two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car. One of them _________ (carry) a bag full of money. Roy _________ (act) quickly and _________ (drive) the bus straight at the thieves. The one with the money (get) _________ such a fright that he _________ (drop) the bag. As the thieves _________ (try) to get away in their car, Roy _________ (drive) his bus into the back of it. While the battered car _________ (move) away, Roy _________ (stop) his bus and _________ (telephone) the police. The thieves’ car badly _________ (damage) and easy to recognize. Shortly afterwards, the police _________ (stop) the car and both men _________ (arrest).

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1 This is what I _________ (mean). _________ (you understand) me?
2 Years ago, he _________ (smoke) but he _________ (not smoke) anymore.
3 The new Town Hall _________ (complete) last week.
4 I _________ (not see) him since 1995.
5 She _________ (drop) her handkerchief as she _________ (cross) the road.

Special difficulties

So and Such

Study these examples:

The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag. (11.6-7)
He was so tired that he could not wake up.

You should not speak to such people. (People of this sort.)
You mustn’t be so impatient.

Exercise

Supply so, such or such a in these sentences:

1 He ran _________ quickly that I could not catch him.
2 Whoever told you _________ thing?
3 You should not make _________ many mistakes.
4 You should not say _________ things.
5 This picture is _________ beautiful that I shall hang it in my room.
6 It was _________ good book that it was bought by a film company.
7 It was _________ extraordinary exhibition that I went twice.
8 He is _________ lazy boy that he never does anything.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Roy Trenton _________.
   (a) prefers driving a bus to driving a taxi  (b) prefers driving a taxi to driving a bus
   (c) is sorry he isn’t a taxi driver  (d) is glad he didn’t change his job

2 Because of Roy’s action _________.
   (a) the thieves were never caught
   (b) the thieves’ car was damaged, but they were never caught
   (c) it was impossible for the police to catch the thieves
   (d) it was easy for the police to catch the thieves

Structure 句型

3 Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. This means he ________ a taxi.
   (a) has stopped driving  (b) is used to driving  (c) got used to driving  (d) still drives

4 He noticed two thieves _________ out of a shop.
   (a) to come  (b) are coming  (c) in coming  (d) come

5 Which thief got a fright? _________ with the money.
   (a) He  (b) Him  (c) That  (d) The one

6 He got such a fright. He was _________ frightened.
   (a) so  (b) such  (c) such a  (d) a so

7 The car was easy to recognize, so it wasn’t ________ difficult for the police to catch the thieves.
   (a) much  (b) very  (c) many  (d) too

Vocabulary 词汇

8 He hasn’t regretted it. He _________ it.
   (a) isn’t sorry about  (b) doesn’t pity  (c) isn’t pleased with  (d) doesn’t laugh about

9 It’s very _________ to drive a bus.
   (a) excited  (b) exciting  (c) excite  (d) excitedly

10 Roy drove the bus _________ at the thieves.
   (a) directly  (b) immediately  (c) at once  (d) soon

11 The thief dropped the bag. He _________.
   (a) let it  (b) left it  (c) fell it  (d) let it fall

12 The thieves’ car was battered because Roy _________.
   (a) saw it  (b) rang the police  (c) recognized it  (d) hit it

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answers against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 3-5 行，核对你的答案。
He was driving along Catford Street recently. He saw two thieves. They rushed out of a shop. They ran towards a waiting car.
Lesson 36  Across the Channel  横渡海峡

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What is Debbie going to try to do?
德比·哈特要尝试做什么？

Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She is going to set out from the French coast at five o’clock in the morning. Debbie is only eleven years old and she hopes to set up a new world record. She is a strong swimmer and many people feel that she is sure to succeed. Debbie’s father will set out with her in a small boat. Mr. Hart has trained his daughter for years. Tomorrow he will be watching her anxiously as she swims the long distance to England. Debbie intends to take short rests every two hours. She will have something to drink but she will not eat any solid food. Most of Debbie’s school friends will be waiting for her on the English coast. Among them will be Debbie’s mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

New words and expressions  生词和短语

record (1.4) /'rekɔ:d/ n. 记录
strong (1.4) /strɔŋ/ adj. 强壮的
swimmer (1.4) /'swimə/ n. 游泳运动员
succeed (1.5) /sək'siːd/ v. 成功

train (1.6) /trein/ v. 训练
anxiously (1.7) /'æŋkwərəsli/ adv. 焦急地
intend (1.8) /ɪn'tend/ v. 打算
solid (1.9) /'sɒld/ adj. 固体的，硬的

Notes on the text  课文注释

1. set out, 出发。
2. set up, 建立。
3. many people feel that she is sure to succeed, 许多人都认为她肯定成功。
4. every two hours, 每两小时。
5. Among them will be Debbie’s mother, 他们当中还会有黛比的妈妈。这是个倒装句，为的是与后面的定语从句相连。正常的语序应为 Debbie’s mother will be among them.

参考译文

黛比·哈特准备明天横渡英吉利海峡。她打算早上5点从法国海岸出发。黛比只有11岁。她希望创下一项新的世界纪录。她是一个游泳能手，很多人认为她一定能成功。黛比的父亲将乘一条小船同她一道出发。哈特先生训练他的女儿已经多年了，明天他将焦急地注视着女儿游过这段漫长的距离到达英国。黛比计划每两小时休息一下。她将喝些饮料，但不吃固体食物。黛比的大部分同学将在英国海岸等候她。他们当中还会有黛比的母亲。她本人还是个姑娘时，也曾横渡过英吉利海峡！
Summary writing 概要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 55 words.

1. Who is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow?
2. How old is she? Is she a strong swimmer or not? (and)
3. Whom has Debbie been trained by?
4. Will he follow her in a small boat or not?
5. Where will Debbie’s mother be waiting?
6. What did she do as a girl?

Composition 作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

The man on the raft saw the boat (so) (but) he tried to send a signal. He (took off) (put out) his shirt (or) (and) (waved) (shook) it (but) (so) the men on the boat (neither) (either) saw (or) (nor) (heard) (listened to) him.

Letter writing 书信写作

We do not always write the names of areas or postal districts in full when writing the address. Sometimes we write part of a name or only capital letters. For instance: ‘Berks.’ stands for ‘Berkshire’; ‘Calif.’ for ‘California’; ‘N.W.3’ for ‘North West 3’; ‘N.Y.’ for ‘New York’.

Exercise 练习

Write these words again in the way they might appear in an address:

Street, Road, Avenue, Square, Place, New York, West 8, South West 3.

Key structure 关键句型

She is going to swim across the Channel tomorrow.

Instead of saying:

I shall travel by air.
He will sell his car.
They will move to a new house.
I intend to write to him.
She means to ask for an explanation.

We can say:

I am going to travel by air.
He is going to sell his car.
They are going to move to a new house.
I am going to write to him.
She is going to ask for an explanation.

We can often use going to in place of shall or will in simple statements and questions. We cannot use going to in sentences like this one:

You will enjoy yourself if you travel by sea. (我们不能用 going to 在类似这样的句子中。)

167
Unit 2 Lesson 36

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen, what is going to happen, and what will be happening (KS13).
在课文中选出表示一般将来时、将来进行时的动词：将来进行时参见第 13 课关键句型

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后对照课文，核对你的答案：
Debbie Hart _________ (swim) across the English Channel tomorrow. She _________ (set out) from the French coast at five o’clock in the morning. Debbie is only eleven years old and she hopes to set up a new world record. ... Debby’s father _________ (set out) with her in a small boat. Mr. Hart has trained his daughter for years. Tomorrow he _________ (watch) her anxiously as she swims the long distance to England. Debbie intends to take short rests every two hours. She _________ (have) something to drink but she _________ (not eat) any solid food. Most of Debbie’s school friends _________ (wait) for her on the English coast. Among them _________ (be) Debbie’s mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

C Write these sentences again. Use going to in place of the verbs in italics:
改写下列句子，用 going to 来替代斜体印出的动词：
1 We intend to leave at six o’clock.
2 I intend to pay these bills tomorrow.
3 Do you intend to write to him?
4 She does not intend to look for a new job.
5 When do you intend to buy a new car?

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词
a Watch, Look at, Follow.
Watch (something happening)  观看（正在发生的事情）：Tomorrow he will be watching her anxiously. (11.6-7)
Look at 看：Look at the blackboard. Look at your book. Look at this picture. 看黑板。看你的书。看这张画。
Follow (go after) 跟随（走在后面）：I followed my mother into the kitchen. 跟着母亲走进厨房。
b Solid, Firm, Stable.
Solid (not liquid) 固体的（非流体的）：She will not eat any solid food. (1.9)
Firm (not loose) 稳固的（不松动）：I’ve fixed that hook. It is firm now. 我把鱼钩固定好了，现在它很牢固。
（not doubtful）（无疑）：He gave me a firm refusal. 他断然拒绝。
（not lenient）严格的：You must be very firm with that child. 对那个孩子你一定要非常严格。
Stable (often describing character) 坚定的（常用来形容性格）：He is a very stable person. 他是一个性格坚定的人。

Exercise 练习

Use any of the above words in the following sentences:
用上面的词填空：
1 I came to a _________ decision and I will not change my mind.
2 I stood on the bridge and _________ the boats passing by.
3 May I _________ your photograph album?
4 The ice in the pond is so __________ that you can walk on it.
5 I tried to persuade him but he remained __________.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**

1 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   
   (a) Both Debbie’s parents are very interested in their daughter’s attempt to swim the Channel.
   (b) Only Debbie’s father is interested in his daughter’s attempt.
   (c) Only Debbie’s mother is interested in her daughter’s attempt.
   (d) Debbie’s mother and father aren’t interested in their daughter’s attempt to swim the Channel.

2 Debbie __________.
   
   (a) will only eat solid food during the swim  
   (b) will not drink anything during the swim  
   (c) will swim across the Channel without stopping  
   (d) will stop at intervals during the swim

**Structure 句型**

3 She is sure to succeed. Many people feel sure __________ it.
   
   (a) to  
   (b) for  
   (c) in  
   (d) of

4 He will be watching her anxiously __________ she swims the long distance to England.
   
   (a) though meanwhile  
   (b) meanwhile  
   (c) while  
   (d) during

5 __________ does she intend to take short rests? Every two hours.
   
   (a) Since when  
   (b) How long  
   (c) How much  
   (d) How often

6 Debbie’s friends will be on the coast. That’s where __________ of them will be.
   
   (a) more  
   (b) the most  
   (c) most  
   (d) the more

7 Debbie’s mother will be __________ the crowd.
   
   (a) between  
   (b) beside  
   (c) among  
   (d) around

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 Debbie hopes to __________ a new world record.
   
   (a) do  
   (b) make  
   (c) build  
   (d) fix

9 She is sure to succeed. She’s sure to be __________.
   
   (a) successful  
   (b) success  
   (c) succession  
   (d) a succession

10 Mr. Hart has trained her. He’s her __________.
    
   (a) leader  
   (b) guide  
   (c) trainee  
   (d) instructor

11 He’ll be watching anxiously. He’ll feel __________.
    
   (a) sad  
   (b) unhappy  
   (c) worried  
   (d) thoughtful

12 She’ll take short rests every two hours. She will __________ every two hours.
    
   (a) stay  
   (b) remain  
   (c) relax  
   (d) sleep

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Arrange these groups of words in the right order, then check your answer against the text.

从句组成中提取单词, 完成练习后对照课文第 2-3 行, 核对你的答案。

from the French coast/she/in the morning/is going to/at five o’clock/set out
Lesson 37  The Olympic Games  奥林匹克运动会

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
When was the last time this country hosted the Olympic Games?

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time. As a great many people will be visiting the country, the government will be building new hotels, an immense stadium, and a new Olympic-standard swimming pool. They will also be building new roads and a special railway line. The Games will be held just outside the capital and the whole area will be called ‘Olympic City’. Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. By the end of next year, they will have finished work on the new stadium. The fantastic modern buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter. Everybody will be watching anxiously as the new buildings go up. We are all very excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games because they have never been held before in this country.

New words and expressions  生词和短语
Olympic (title) /'a'limpik/ adj. 奥林匹克的
hold (1.1) /haold/ (held /held/, held) v. 召开
government (1.2) /'gAv^nmnt/ n. 政府
immense (1.3) /'imens/ adj. 巨大的
stadium (1.3) /'steidiom/ n. 露天体育场
standard (1.4) /'staendad/ n. 标准
capital (1.6) /'kæpitol/ n. 首都
fantastic (1.8) /faen'taestik/ adj. 巨大的
design (1.9) /da'zain/ v. 设计

Notes on the text  课文注释
1  the Olympic Games, 奥林匹克运动会。
2  in four years' time, 4 年之后。
3  As a great many people ... , 作为连词，当“因为”讲，引出原因状语从句。
4  Olympic-standard swimming pool, 奥运会标准游泳池。
5  Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year, 今年年底前工人将把新路铺好。句中用于将来完成时，这个时态用来表示将来某一时刻已经完成的动作。
6  as the new buildings go up, 作为连词，当“当”、“正值”讲，引出时间状语从句。
7  look forward to ..., 盼望、期待……。to 是介词，后可接名词、代词或动名词。

参考译文

4 年以后，奥林匹克运动会将在我们国家举行。由于将有大批的人到我们国家来，所以政府准备建造一些新的饭店，一个大型体育场和一个新的奥运会标准游泳池。他们还将修筑一些新的道路和一条铁路专线。奥运会就在首都市郊举办，整个地区将被称作“奥林匹克城”。工人们将在今年年底前把新路铺好，到明年年底，他们将把新体育场建成。这些巨大的现代化建筑是由库尔特·冈特设计的。大家都将急切地注视着新建筑的建
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. When will the Olympic Games be held in our country? Where will the government be putting up new buildings? (so)
2. Who has designed the buildings? When will workers have completed the new stadium? (and)
3. Will the Games be held in this country for the first time or not? Are we looking forward to them or not? (and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. My brother is going to the Olympic Games. I am going to the Olympic Games. (Both ... and)
2. We bought tickets a long time ago. We shall be leaving soon. (and)
3. We shall see the Games. We shall visit many parts of the country. (not only ... but ... as well)

Letter writing 书信写作

We must write the date in full under the address. We can write the date in two ways: e.g. 17th April, 19—. April 17th, 19—. Numbers are written as follows: 1st (the first); 2nd (the second); 3rd (the third); 4th (the fourth), etc.

Exercise 练习

Write these dates as they would appear in a letter:

May 6; June 21; July 30; March 3; April 22; July 1.

Key structures 关键句型

Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. 将来完成时

a. Do you remember these sentences: (KS13)

   You remember the following sentences? (参见第 13 课关键句型)

   Now
   I am writing letters now.
   I'll see you tomorrow.

   Tomorrow
   I shall be writing letters all day tomorrow.
   I'll be seeing you tomorrow.

b. Compare these two questions and answers:

   Compare these two questions and answers:

   When will they finish this bridge? 他们将于何时建成这座桥?
   They will finish it next year. 他们将于明年建成它。

   When will they have finished this bridge? 到什么时候他们将完成这座桥?
   They will have finished this bridge in a year's time. 他们将于一年后完成这座桥。
Study these examples:

I shall have completed this novel by next June. 明年 6 月份之前我将结束这本小说。
He will have moved to a new flat in two months’ time. 两个月以后他将搬进一套新的公寓。
You will have learnt the results of the examination by then. 到那个时候，你就会知道考试结果了。
I shall have received a reply by this time tomorrow. 明天的这个时候，我将会得到一个答复。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen, what will be happening, and what will have happened.

划出课文中将来时，将来进行时和将来完成时的例子。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

The Olympic Games ________ (hold) in our country in four years’ time. As a great many people ________ (visit) the country, the government ________ (build) new hotels, an immense stadium, and a new Olympic-standard swimming pool. They also ________ (build) new roads and a special railway line. The Games ________ (hold) just outside the capital and the whole area ________ (call) ‘Olympic City’. Workers ________ (complete) the new roads by the end of this year. By the end of next year, they ________ (finish) work on the new stadium. The fantastic modern buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter. Everybody ________ (watch) anxiously as the new buildings go up.

Special difficulties 难点

Study these sentences.

Hold. The Olympic Games will be held in our country. (1.1)

This verb may be used in the sense of ‘conduct’, ‘observe’ or ‘celebrate’.

A festival is held at Edinburgh every year. 节日庆典每年在爱丁堡举行一次。

We are going to hold a meeting tomorrow to discuss the subject. 明天我们准备开一次会来讨论这个议题。

The next conference will be held in Geneva. 下次会议将在日内瓦举行。

Look.

The verb look has a different meaning in each sentence: 动词 look 在每句话中有不同的含义:

Look forward to (expect with pleasure) 盼望 (高兴地期待着): I am looking forward to the summer holidays. 我正盼望暑假的到来。

Look out (be careful) 当心 (注意): Look out! A bus is coming. 当心点，公共汽车来了。

Look up (get information from a reference book) 查阅 (从参考书中获取资料): I don’t understand this word. 我不懂这个词的词义，我要查一下字典。

(visit) 拜访: Don’t forget to look me up when you return. 回来时别忘了来看我。

Exercise 练习

Supply the correct form of hold or look in these sentences:

用 hold 或 look 的正确形式填空:

1 We shall be ________ a party tomorrow. I am ________ it very much.
2 ________! You nearly knocked that jug over!
3 They say he is very famous. I shall ________ him ________ in ‘Who’s Who’.
4 The students’ union ________ an interesting debate on capital punishment yesterday.
5 My friend Ingrid lives in Stockholm. Why don’t you ________ her ________ when you’re there?
6 Examinations will be ________ next week. I’m not ________ them.

**Multiple choice questions 多项选择题**

**Comprehension 理解**

1 Because of the Olympic Games ________.
   (a) there has been a lot of new building  (b) a lot of new building was completed
   (c) a lot of new building has been planned  (d) there was a lot of new building
2 The Olympic Games ________.
   (a) have just been held in this country  (b) have never been held before in this country
   (c) are held in this country every four years  (d) were held in this country four years ago

**Structure 句型**

3 Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. They ________.
   (a) have already finished  (b) haven’t finished yet
   (c) finished a long time ago  (d) are finishing now
4 By the end of next year they will have finished the new stadium. This means they will finish it ________ the end of next year.
   (a) at  (b) before  (c) after  (d) long before
5 The buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter, so the designs ________.
   (a) are not complete yet  (b) are now complete
   (c) will be completed soon  (d) haven’t been completed yet
6 We are all very excited. ________ are very excited.
   (a) All we  (b) Us all  (c) All us  (d) All of us
7 We are looking forward to the Olympic Games, ________ they have never been held before in this country.
   (a) for  (b) why  (c) because of  (d) due to

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 How often do we ________ the Olympic Games?
   (a) make  (b) do  (c) have  (d) play
9 It will be an immense stadium. It will be ________.
   (a) tall  (b) wide  (c) high  (d) huge
10 A motorway is a ________.
   (a) street  (b) road  (c) avenue  (d) high street
11 Kurt Gunter designed the buildings. He is probably ________.
   (a) an engineer  (b) an architect  (c) a builder  (d) a mechanic
12 We are looking forward to the Games. So we will be ________ when they begin.
   (a) pleased  (b) unhappy  (c) sorry  (d) impatient
Lesson 38  Everything except the weather

First listen and then answer the question.

Why did Harrison sell his house so quickly?

My old friend, Harrison, had lived in the Mediterranean for many years before he returned to England. He had often dreamed of retiring in England and had planned to settle down in the country. He had no sooner returned than he bought a house and went to live there. Almost immediately he began to complain about the weather, for even though it was still summer, it rained continually and it was often bitterly cold. After so many years of sunshine, Harrison got a shock. He acted as if he had never lived in England before. In the end, it was more than he could bear. He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house and left the country.

The dream he had had for so many years ended there. Harrison had thought of everything except the weather.

New words and expressions

except (title) /ɪkˈsept/ prep. 除了
Mediterranean (1.1) /ˈmedɪtərəniən/ n. (the ~) 地中海
complain (1.5) /kəmˈpleɪn/ v. 抱怨
continually (1.6) /kənˈtnjuːli/ adv. 不断地
bitterly (1.6) /ˈbɪtli/ adv. 刺骨地
sunshine (1.7) /ˈsʌnʃain/ n. 阳光

Notes on the text

1 dreamed of, 梦想，幻想，向往。
2 settle down in the country, 在乡下定居。
3 He had no sooner returned than he bought a house and went to live there. 他刚回到英国就买了一幢房子住了进去。no sooner ... than ... 表示“一……就……”。这个句型用来引导时间状语从句，主句里常用过去完成时，than 后面的从句用一般过去时。
4 even though, 即使，这一结构引出让步状语从句。
5 He acted as if he had never lived in England before. 他的举动就好像他从未在英国生活过一样。as if 常用来引导表示方式的状语从句。
6 more than he could bear, 超过他所能忍受的程度。
7 He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house and left the country. 他还没有来得及安顿下来就卖掉了房子，离开了这个国家。

参考译文

我的老朋友哈里森在回到英国以前曾多年居住在地中海地区。过去他常幻想退休后到英国，并计划在乡间安顿下来。他刚一回到英国便买下了一幢房子住了进去。但紧接着他就开始抱怨那里的天气了。因为即使那时仍为夏季，但雨总是下个不停，而且常常冷得厉害。在阳光下生活了那么多年的哈里森对此感到惊奇。他的举动就好像他从未在英国生活过一样。最后，他再也忍受不住，还没等安顿下来就卖掉了房子，离开了这个国家。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 60 words.

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不超过 60 个单词。
1. Where had the writer’s friend, Harrison, spent many years? What did he want to do? What did he buy? (but... so...)  
2. Was the summer that year very good, or was it very bad? What did he complain about? (and)  
3. Did Harrison sell the house in the end or not? Did he leave the country or not? (Harrison not only... but also)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

用括号中的连词改写以下句子：
1. He bought an old car. It was in a very bad state. (but)
2. The engine was worn out. The gearbox was full of sawdust. (The engine ... not only... but... as well)
3. He could not drive it. He could no sell it. He could not even give it away. (neither... nor... nor)

Letter writing 书信写作

The Date: The following months of the year are usually written in full: March, April, May, June and July. The remaining months are often written as follows: ‘Jan.’, ‘Feb.’, ‘Aug.’, ‘Sept.’, ‘Oct.’, ‘Nov.’, and ‘Dec.’.

日期：每年下列月份写出全称：3月，4月，5月，6月和7月。剩余的月份写成：Jan.（1月）; Feb.（2月）; Aug.（8月）; Sept.（9月）; Oct.（10月）; Nov.（11月）和 Dec.（12月）。

Exercise 练习

Write today’s date in the way it should appear on a letter.

按书信的要求写出今天的日期。

Key structures 关键句型

He acted as if he had never lived in England before. 过去完成时

a. Do you remember these sentences? (KS14)

你还记得以下句子吗？(参见第14课关键句型)

The children ran away after they had broken the window.
As soon as the sun had set we returned to our hotel.
When he had finished lunch he asked for a glass of water.

I had not understood the problem until he explained it.

b. Now study these sentences. They tell us what happened some time ago and what had happened some time before.

仔细阅读以下句子，它们告诉我们过去某一时间发生的事情和过去某一时刻之前发生的事情。

He lived in Scotland fifteen years ago. 15 年前他住在苏格兰。
He had lived in Scotland for fifteen years before he came to England. 在他来到英格兰之前，他曾在苏格兰住了15 年。
The police found Billy Wilkins last night. He had run away from home five days before. 昨天夜里警察找到了比利
He had spent the last two nights near a farmhouse. The police took him home at once. When she saw him, his mother burst into tears. She said he had never run away before. When the police took him home, Li had spent the last two nights near a farmhouse. When she saw him, his mother burst into tears. She said he had never run away before.

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what happened some time ago and what had happened some time before.

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish your exercise.

My old friend, Harrison, ______ (live) in the Mediterranean for many years before he ______ (return) to England. He often ______ (dream) of retiring in England and ______ (plan) to settle down in the country. He no sooner ______ (return) than he ______ (buy) a house and ______ (go) to live there. Almost immediately he ______ (begin) to complain about the weather, for even though it ______ (be) still summer, it ______ (rain) continually and it ______ (be) often bitterly cold. After so many years of sunshine, Harrison ______ (get) a shock. He ______ (act) as if he never ______ (live) in England before. In the end, it ______ (be) more than he could bear. He hardly ______ (have) time to settle down when he ______ (sell) the house and ______ (leave) the country. The dream he ______ (have) for so many years ______ (end) there. Harrison ______ (think) of everything except the weather.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study these sentences:

a  No sooner ... than (一……就); hardly ... when (几乎未来得及……就……).
   He had no sooner returned than he bought a house. (1.3-4)
   He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house. (1.9)

b  Country (国家, 乡间) and Countryside (农村).
   He had planned to settle down in the country. (1.3)
   He sold the house and left the country. (1.9)
   The countryside around Vienna is very beautiful. 维也纳周围的乡村非常漂亮。

c  Continuously (连续不断地) and Continually (频繁地).
   It rained continually. (1.6) (i.e. At frequent intervals.) 天频繁地下雨。
   The river flows under this bridge continuously. (i.e. It does not stop at all.) 河水不停地从桥下流过。

Exercises 练习

A Join these sentences using no sooner than:

1. I had left the house. It began to rain.
2. We had hung the picture on the wall. It fell down.
B Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

1. The sea moves (continuously) (continually).
2. He borrows money from people (continuously) (continually).
3. The Robertsons do not live here anymore. They now live in the (countryside) (country).

Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1. What was Harrison looking forward to doing?
   (a) Complaining about the weather.
   (b) Spending his old age in England.
   (c) Buying a house somewhere.
   (d) Living in the Mediterranean.

2. Harrison probably couldn’t stand the English climate because ________.
   (a) it never stopped raining
   (b) it was always cold
   (c) he had spent so long in the Mediterranean, he had forgotten what it was like
   (d) he had never lived in England before

Structure

3. Harrison had made plans ________ he returned to England.
   (a) before
   (b) when
   (c) as soon as
   (d) after

4. He acted ________ he had never lived in England before.
   (a) as though
   (b) like
   (c) as
   (d) even if

5. It was more than he could bear. He couldn’t bear it ________.
   (a) more
   (b) longer
   (c) any longer
   (d) no more

6. He had hardly had time to settle down ________ he sold the house and left the country.
   (a) than
   (b) when
   (c) as soon as
   (d) after

7. When did he ________? He left immediately.
   (a) live
   (b) left
   (c) leaves
   (d) leave

Vocabulary

   (a) he was going to get
   (b) he had
   (c) he would have
   (d) he didn’t have

9. He wanted to settle down in the country. He wanted to ________.
   (a) rest there
   (b) live there permanently
   (c) live there for a while
   (d) go there for a visit

10. It rained continually. It ________.
    (a) stopped occasionally
    (b) never stopped
    (c) hardly rained at all
    (d) never rained

11. He ________ as if he had never lived in England before.
    (a) made
    (b) did
    (c) conducted
    (d) behaved

12. It was more than he could bear. He couldn’t ________ it.
    (a) suffer
    (b) put up
    (c) carry
    (d) stand
Lesson 39 Am I all right? 我是否痊愈？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why did Mr. Gilbert telephone Dr. Millington?

While John Gilbert was in hospital, he asked his doctor to tell him whether his operation had been successful, but the doctor refused to do so. The following day, the patient asked for a bedside telephone. When he was alone, he telephoned the hospital exchange and asked for Doctor Millington. When the doctor answered the phone, Mr. Gilbert said he was inquiring about a certain patient, a Mr. John Gilbert. He asked if Mr. Gilbert's operation had been successful and the doctor told him that it had been. He then asked when Mr. Gilbert would be allowed to go home and the doctor told him that he would have to stay in hospital for another two weeks. Then Dr. Millington asked the caller if he was a relative of the patient. 'No,' the patient answered, 'I am Mr. John Gilbert.'

New words and expressions

operation (1.2) /o:pə'reijan/ n. 手术
successful (1.2) /sæk'sesful/ adj. 成功的
following (1.3) /'fDbuiq/ adj. 下一个
patient (1.3) /'peijant/ n. 病人
alone (1.4) /'ə'loun/ adj. 独自的
exchange (1.4) /iks'tjeindʒ/ n. （电话的）交换台
inquire (1.6) /m'kwərə/ v. 询问，打听
certain (1.6) /'s3:tn/ adj. 某个
caller (1.10) /'ko:b/ n. 打电话的人
relative (1.10) /'rebtiv/ n. 亲戚

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 While John Gilbert was in hospital, 当约翰·吉尔伯特住院的时候。
2 ask for, 请求，索要。
3 a bedside telephone, 床头电话。
4 a Mr. John Gilbert, 一位名叫约翰·吉尔伯特的先生。

参考译文

当约翰·吉尔伯特住院的时候，他问医生他的手术是否成功，但医生拒绝告诉他。第二天，这位病人要了一部床头电话。当房里只剩他一个人时，他挂通了医院的交换台，要求与米灵顿医生讲话。当这位医生接过电话时，吉尔伯特先生说他想询问一个病人的情况，是一位名叫约翰·吉尔伯特的先生。他问吉尔伯特医生的手术是否成功，医生告诉他手术很成功。然后他又问吉尔伯特先生什么时候可以回家，医生说他在医院还要再住两个星期。之后，米灵顿医生问打电话的人是否是病人的亲属。“不是，”病人回答说，“我就是约翰·吉尔伯特先生。”
**Summary writing 摘要写作**

Answer these questions in not more than 60 words.

1. What did Dr. Millington refuse to tell his patient, John Gilbert?
2. Whom did the patient telephone next day? Whom did he inquire about? (and)
3. Did the doctor answer a number of questions about the patient or not? Did he ask whether the caller was a relative or not? (and ... then)
4. Did the caller then tell him who he was or not?

**Composition 作文**

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. After the telephone call, Dr. Millington was angry. He went to Gilbert’s room. (so)
2. Gilbert was telephoning the nurses. He was asking questions about himself. (and)
3. Then the doctor burst out laughing. The patient burst out laughing. (both ... and)

**Letter writing 写作**

Write the following dates in the way they might appear on a letter:

3 January; February 28; 20 August; 13 September; October 22.

**Key structures 关键句型**

He said that ... He told me ... He asked ...

*直接引语和间接引语 (KS15)* (参见第15课关键句型)

' I am very tired,' he said. "我非常疲劳." 他说。
What did he say? 他说了什么?

He said that he was very tired. 他说他非常累。
He told me that he was very tired. 他告诉我他非常累。

Are you tired?’ she asked. “你累吗？” 她问道。
What did she ask? 她问了什么?

She asked if (or whether) you were tired. 她问你是否感到疲劳。

‘Will Jack arrive tomorrow?’ Tom asked. “杰克明天能到吗?” 汤姆问道。
What did Tom ask? 汤姆问了什么?

Tom asked if (or whether) Jack would arrive the next day. 汤姆问杰克第二天是否能到。

‘When will Jack arrive?’ Tom asked. “杰克什么时候到?” 汤姆问道。
What did Tom ask? 汤姆问了什么?

Tom asked when Jack would arrive. 汤姆问杰克什么时候到。

‘Have you ever been abroad?’ Catherine asked. “你出过国吗?” 凯瑟琳问道。
What did Catherine ask? 凯瑟琳问了什么?

Catherine asked if (or whether) you had ever been abroad. 凯瑟琳问你是否出过国。

‘Why didn’t you write to me?’ Jane asked. “你为什么不给我写信?” 简问道。
What did Jane ask? 简问了什么?

Jane asked why I hadn’t written to her. 简问为什么我不给她写信。
Unit 2  Lesson 39

Exercise 练习

Here is part of the conversation between Mr. Gilbert and Dr. Millington:
下面是吉尔伯特先生与米灵顿医生之间谈话的片断:
1 ‘I am inquiring about a certain patient,’ Mr. Gilbert said.
2 ‘Was Mr. Gilbert’s operation successful?’ he asked.
3 ‘Yes, it was,’ the doctor told him.
4 ‘When will Mr. Gilbert be allowed to go home?’ he asked.
5 ‘He will have to stay in hospital for another two weeks,’ the doctor told him. ‘Are you a relative of the patient?’ Dr. Millington asked the caller.
6 ‘No,’ the patient answered. ‘I am Mr. John Gilbert.’

Now answer these questions. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
回答以下问题, 完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
1 What did Mr. Gilbert say?
2 What did he ask?
3 What did the doctor tell him?
4 What did he (Mr. Gilbert) ask?
5 What did the doctor tell him? What did Dr. Millington ask the caller?
6 What did the patient answer?

Special difficulties 难点

Speech marks 引号 (SD26) (参见第26课难点)

Exercise 练习

Write this piece of conversation again using speech marks. Refer to the dialogue in the exercise above when you have finished:
为下面的对话加上引号, 完成练习后对照关键句型的练习部分:
I am inquiring about a certain patient, Mr. Gilbert said. Was Mr. Gilbert’s operation successful? he asked. Yes, it was, the doctor told him. When will Mr. Gilbert be allowed to go home? he asked. He will have to stay in hospital for another two weeks, the doctor told him. ‘Are you a relative of the patient?’ Dr. Millington asked the caller. No, the patient answered, ‘I am Mr. John Gilbert.’

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 John Gilbert wanted a bedside telephone ________.
   (a) to telephone the nurses (b) to ring the hospital exchange
   (c) to make outside calls (d) to find out about his operation
2 Dr. Millington answered the questions on the phone because he probably thought the caller ________.
   (a) was a relative of John Gilbert (b) was the patient
   (c) was the patient’s father (d) was another doctor
Structure 句型
3 John Gilbert was in hospital. He was taken ________ hospital last week.
   (a) at  (b) in  (c) to  (d) on
4 The doctor refused to ________ about his operation.
   (a) say him  (b) tell to him  (c) speak him  (d) speak to him
5 ________? A bedside telephone.
   (a) For what did he ask  (b) What did he ask
   (c) For what did he ask for  (d) What did he ask for
6 When will he be allowed to go home? When will they ________?
   (a) let him go  (b) let him to go  (c) leave him to go  (d) leave him
7 He will have to stay in hospital. That’s what he ________.
   (a) has done  (b) must do  (c) must be doing  (d) must have done

Vocabulary 词汇
8 A ________ usually performs operations.
   (a) surgeon  (b) doctor  (c) nurse  (d) matron
9 The following day he asked for a telephone. He did this the ________ day.
   (a) other  (b) followed  (c) next  (d) after
10 John Gilbert was a patient. He was ________.
    (a) a sick  (b) an ill  (c) a sick man  (d) not in a hurry
11 He was alone. He was ________.
    (a) on his own  (b) lonely  (c) with himself  (d) unique
12 He inquired about a patient. He wanted ________.
    (a) informations  (b) information  (c) knowledges  (d) knowledge

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join the following sentences. Make any changes you like, but do not alter the sense. Then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，可以作适当的调整，但不要改变原句的意思。然后对照课文第 1-3 行，核对你的答案。
John Gilbert was in hospital. Had his operation been successful? He asked his doctor. The doctor refused to tell him.
While __________.
Lesson 40  Food and talk  进餐与交谈

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Was Mrs. Rumbold a good companion at dinner?

Last week at a dinner party, the hostess asked me to sit next to Mrs. Rumbold. Mrs. Rumbold was a large, unsmiling lady in a tight black dress. She did not even look up when I took my seat beside her. Her eyes were fixed on her plate and in a short time, she was busy eating. I tried to make conversation.

‘A new play is coming to “The Globe” soon,’ I said. ‘Will you be seeing it?’

‘No,’ she answered.

‘Will you be spending your holidays abroad this year?’ I asked.

‘No,’ she answered.

‘Will you be staying in England?’ I asked.

‘No,’ she answered.

In despair, I asked her whether she was enjoying her dinner.

‘Young man,’ she answered, ‘if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!’

New words and expressions 生词和短语
hostess (1.1) /ˈhəʊstɪs/ n. 女主人
unsmiling (1.2) /ʌnˈsmælɪŋ/ adj. 不笑的，严肃的
tight (1.2) /taɪt/ adj. 紧身的
fix (1.4) /fɪks/ v. 凝视
globe (1.6) /ˈɡləʊb/ n. 地球
despair (1.13) /dɪˈspeə/ n. 绝望

Notes on the text 课文注释
1. next to, 挨着。
2. She did not even look up when I took my seat beside her. 当我在她身旁坐下来的时候，她甚至连头都没有抬一下。
3. she was busy eating. 她忙着吃饭。be busy doing sth. 是“忙于做某事”的意思。
4. The Globe. 环球剧场。伦敦著名的剧场之一。
5. Will you be seeing it? 用将来进行时来提问。尤其是提出问题但又不想迫使对方作出明确答复时，将来进行时可以显得比一般将来时 will 更委婉客气。

参考译文
在上星期的一次宴会上，女主人安排我坐在兰伯尔德夫人的身旁。兰伯尔德夫人是一位身材高大、表情严肃的女人，穿一件紧身的黑衣服。当我在她身旁坐下来的时候，她甚至连头都没有抬一下。她的眼睛盯着自己的盘子，不一会儿就忙着吃起来了。我试图找个话题和她聊聊。

“一出新剧要来‘环球剧场’上演了，”我说，“您去看吗?”

“不，”她回答。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. Where did the writer sit at the dinner party?
2. Did he try to make conversation or not? Was she busy eating or not? (but)
3. Did he talk about the new play at 'The Globe' or not? Did he talk about the holidays or not? (and)
4. Did she answer his questions briefly or not?
5. Did he ask her if she was enjoying her dinner or not? What did she answer? (Then ... and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. She refused to answer any questions. She did not ask any questions. (not only ... but ... either)
2. She was not interested in the theatre. She was not interested in travel. (neither ... nor)
3. She liked eating good food. She did not like talking about it. (but)

Letter writing 书信写作

Rewrite the following dates in the way they would appear on a letter:

2/3/95; 21/9/54; 13/8/76; 1/12/67; 22/1/86; 11/11/90.

Key structures 关键句型

If you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!

a. Do you remember these sentences: (KS16)

You still remember these sentences? (Refer to Unit 16 Key Structures)

If he is out, I’ll call tomorrow.
If he is working, I’ll not disturb him.

b. Now study these sentences carefully:

If you went to the exhibition you would enjoy it. 假如你去看展览，你会喜欢的。
Unit 2  Lesson 40

If you saw him now you wouldn't recognize him. 假如你现在见到他，你会认不出来的。
Would he get annoyed if I told him about it? 假如我把此事告诉他，他会烦恼吗?
If I were in your position, I would act differently. 假如我处于你的位置，我会采取不同的作法。
He would help you if he were here. 假如他在这儿，他会帮你的。
If you could make him change his mind, you would save him a lot of trouble. 假如你能使他改变主意，你会使他免了许多麻烦。

Exercise 练习

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1. He would enjoy this if he ________ (be) present.
2. She can do better if she ________ (try).
3. If you play with matches, you ________ (burn) your fingers.
4. If you broke this window, you ________ (have to) pay for it.
5. If you ________ (lose) your way, you would have to ask a policeman.
6. If you ________ (not apologize), he will never speak to you again.
7. If he ________ (be) clever, he would not have any difficulty.
8. What would you do if you ________ (win) a lot of money?
9. If I were you, I ________ (not be) so confident.
10. If you ________ (can) help me, I would be grateful.

Special difficulties 难点

Make and Do

Study these phrases:

a  Make.
I tried to make conversation. (1.5)
When she had made the beds she went downstairs. 她整理好床铺之后就下楼去了。
You mustn't make so much noise. 你们不应该这样喧闹。
I made a promise never to see him again. 我发誓永不见他。
He's the sort of person who always makes trouble. 他是那种总爱闹事的人。
He is learning English but he hasn't made much progress. 他正在学英语，但进步不大。
He made a lot of money in South America. 他在南美洲发了大财。
I was asked to make a speech. 我应邀发表一次演说。
I'll never make the same mistake again. 我再也不会犯同类错误了。
I found it difficult to make up my mind. 我发现很难下决心。

b  Do.
He always does his best. 他总是尽力而为。
When did you do your homework? 你什么时候做作业?
Do me a favour please. 请帮帮忙。
I did a few jobs about the house. 我干了点家务活。
I can't do any more work today. 我今天干不了更多的工作了。
I want you to do Exercise 24 on page 16. 我要你做第16页上的练习24。
I did a lot of shopping yesterday. 我昨天买了许多东西。
That shop does very good business. 那家商店的生意很好。
Exercise 练习

Supply the correct form of make or do in the following:

1. He _______ a mistake and I told him to _______ the exercise again.
2. He _______ business in Australia and _______ a lot of money.
3. I know you are _______ your best but you are not _______ very much progress.
4. After I had _______ the beds, I went out and _______ some shopping.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The writer asked questions because _______.
   (a) he wanted to find out about Mrs. Rumbold
   (b) he wanted to know if Mrs. Rumbold was going abroad
   (c) he wanted to be sociable
   (d) he always talks too much

2. Which word best describes Mrs. Rumbold? She was _______.
   (a) hungry  (b) polite  (c) rude  (d) talkative

Structure 句型

3. The writer sat next to Mrs. Rumbold _______ the dinner party.
   (a) on  (b) during  (c) in  (d) along

4. She asked me to sit next to Mrs. Rumbold. ‘_______ next to her,’ she said.
   (a) Please to sit  (b) To sit  (c) Please sit  (d) Please sitting

5. I took my seat beside her. I _______ beside her.
   (a) sat  (b) seated  (c) was sitted  (d) was seating

6. A new play is coming to ‘The Globe’ soon. It _______.
   (a) hasn’t come yet  (b) is here  (c) has already come  (d) came

7. I asked her _______ she was enjoying her dinner.
   (a) weather  (b) in case  (c) if  (d) unless

Vocabulary 词汇

8. The opposite of ‘tight’ is _______.
   (a) lose  (b) loose  (c) loses  (d) loosen

9. Her eyes were fixed on the plate. She _______ it.
   (a) was glancing at  (b) was staring at  (c) was thinking about  (d) was stuck to

10. ‘The Globe’ must be a _______.
    (a) circus  (b) theatre  (c) play  (d) nightclub

11. Mrs. Rumbold won’t go abroad. She rarely goes _______.
    (a) outside  (b) overseas  (c) over  (d) foreign

12. Are you enjoying your dinner? Is it _______?
    (a) enjoying you  (b) amusing you  (c) entertaining you  (d) giving you pleasure
Lesson 41  Do you call that a hat?  你把那个叫帽子吗？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音。然后回答以下问题。

What kind of shopping does the writer enjoy, do you think?

‘Do you call that a hat?’ I said to my wife.

‘You needn’t be so rude about it,’ my wife answered as she looked at herself in the mirror.

I sat down on one of those modern chairs with holes in it and waited. We had been in the hat shop for half an hour and my wife was still in front of the mirror.

‘We musn’t buy things we don’t need,’ I remarked suddenly. I regretted saying it almost at once.

‘You needn’t have said that,’ my wife answered. ‘I needn’t remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday.’

‘I find it beautiful,’ I said. ‘A man can never have too many ties.’

‘And a woman can’t have too many hats,’ she answered.

Ten minutes later we walked out of the shop together. My wife was wearing a hat that looked like a lighthouse!

New words and expressions

rude (1.2) /rʌd/ adj. 无礼的
mirror (1.3) /ˈmaɪər/ n. 镜子
hole (1.4) /həʊl/ n. 孔
remark (1.7) /rɪˈmɑːk/ v. 评论
remind (1.9) /rɪˈmɛnd/ v. 提醒
lighthouse (1.14) /ˈlaɪθaʊs/ n. 灯塔

Notes on the text

1 ... needn’t be so rude... 英语中实际上有两个 need。一个是普通动词 need；另一个是情态动词 need。情态动词的 need 和 can, may 等情态动词一样，后接动词原形，但只用于否定和疑问句，肯定句用 must, have to, ought to 或 should。

2 I regretted saying ... regret 后接动名词表示对做过的某事感到遗憾。

3 We musn’t buy things we don’t need. 我们不应该买我们不需要的东西。句中的 need 是普通动词，当“需要”讲。

4 You needn’t have said that ...

needn’t have done 表示本来用着做某事，但实际上已经做了。

5 I needn’t remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday. 我也不必提醒你昨天买的那条糟糕透了的领带。remind sb. of sth. 是“提醒某人想起某事”的意思。

6 I find it beautiful, 我觉得它好看。句中的 beautiful 用来补充说明宾语 it，在语法上称作宾语补足语。

7 A man can never have too many ties. 男人有多少领带也不会嫌多。

186
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. Was the writer’s wife trying on a hat or not? Did he like it or not? (but)
2. Did he sit down or not? Did he wait for her or did he leave the shop? (and)
3. Did they begin arguing again or not? (Then)
4. What had he bought the day before? Did his wife like it or not? (but)
5. Did he say, ‘A man can never have too many ties,’ or did he say, ‘A man can never have too many hats.’?
6. Did his wife use exactly the same argument or not? Did she buy the hat or not? (and)
7. What did it look like?

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. My wife has too many hats. She has too many dresses. (not only ... but ... as well)
2. We have been invited to a party this evening. She does not want to go. (but)
3. She keeps looking at all those dresses. She keeps saying, ‘I haven’t got anything to wear!’ (and)

Letter writing 书信写作

Rewrite the following dates in the way they would appear on a letter:

7/5/95; 1/10/78; 31/1/67; 18/2/83; 23/6/70; 17/4/27.

Key structures 关键句型

Must, Have to and Need

a. Do you remember these sentences? (KS17)
   你还记得以下句子吗？（参见第17课关键句型）
   I must leave now. I have (got) to leave now. He must be a fool.

b. Now study these sentences:
   仔细阅读以下句子：
   I need a new hat. I must buy one. 我需要一顶新帽子。我必须买一顶。
Unit 2 Lesson 41

He needs a haircut. He must have one. He一定要理发。他一定要理发。
I won’t buy that. I don’t need it. 我不会买那个，我不需要它。

c Instead of saying: 除了这种表述方法外:  We can say: 还可以说:
You needn’t wait for me.
You don’t have to wait for me.

You needn’t have waited for me.
You didn’t have to wait for me.

d Now compare mustn’t and needn’t in these sentences: 对比 mustn’t 和 needn’t:
You mustn’t make a noise. The children are asleep. 你不应吵闹，孩子们都睡了。
You needn’t drive so quickly; we have plenty of time. 你不必开得那么快，我们有足够的时间。
Or: You don’t have to (haven’t got to) drive so quickly; we have plenty of time.

You mustn’t smoke in a theatre. It is forbidden. 你不应该在剧场里抽烟，这是不允许的。
You needn’t come with us if you don’t want to. 如果你不想去，你不必和我们一道去。
Or: You don’t have to (haven’t got to) come with us if you don’t want to.

Exercises 练习

A Study the use of need, needn’t and mustn’t in the passage.

研究一下课文中 need, needn’t 和 mustn’t 的用法。

B Supply need, needn’t and mustn’t in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

用 need, needn’t 和 mustn’t 填空，完成练习后再参照课文核对你的答案:
1 ‘You ________ be so rude about it,’ my wife answered as she looked at herself in the mirror.
2 ‘We ________ buy things we don’t ________’ I remarked suddenly.
3 ‘You ________ have said that,’ my wife answered. ‘I ________ not remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday.’

C Supply mustn’t or needn’t in these sentences:

用 mustn’t 或 needn’t 填空:
1 You ________ leave your car here. Can’t you see the ‘No Parking’ sign?
2 I ________ go to bed late tonight. I have to get up early tomorrow.
3 You ________ finish your soup if you don’t like it.
4 You ________ push. There’s plenty of room on the bus.
5 You ________ read in bed. It’s bad for your eyes.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Remark, Observe, and Notice.

Study these examples: 细读以下例句:
‘We mustn’t buy things we don’t need,’ I remarked. (l.7)

‘We mustn’t buy things we don’t need,’ I observed. “我们不应该买我们不需要的东西，” 我评论说。

He observed me carefully. (He looked at me.) 他仔细地看着我。

Did you notice how she was dressed? 你注意到她的穿戴了吗?
Exercise 练习

Supply the correct form of remark or notice in the following:

用 remark 或 notice 填空:
1 ‘That’s a nice picture,’ he ________
2 No one ________ me when I entered the room.
3 He made a lot of rude ________ about the hat she was wearing.
4 He failed to ________ that I had changed the furniture round.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The writer probably ________.
   (a) didn’t like the hat his wife had chosen (b) liked the hat his wife had chosen
   (c) chose a hat for his wife (d) chose the hat that looked like a lighthouse
2 The writer was sorry he made rude remarks because ________.
   (a) his wife reminded him that he had bought a terrible tie
   (b) he has a lot of ties
   (c) his wife has a lot of hats
   (d) his wife got annoyed with him

Structure 句型
3 Do you have to buy this hat? No, I ________ It isn’t necessary.
   (a) mustn’t (b) won’t (c) needn’t (d) don’t need
4 She is still in front of the mirror. She hasn’t moved ________.
   (a) still (b) even (c) also (d) yet
5 We mustn’t buy things we ________.
   (a) needn’t (b) need not (c) don’t need (d) haven’t need
6 ________ do you find it? Beautiful.
   (a) What (b) How (c) How much (d) Where
7 A man can never have too many ties. It’s ________.
   (a) unable (b) impossible (c) improbable (d) incapable

Vocabulary 词汇
8 She looked in the mirror and saw her ________.
   (a) reflection (b) idol (c) imagination (d) picture
9 I needn’t remind you of that terrible tie. You don’t want me to ________ that terrible tie.
   (a) recall you (b) remember you (c) memorise you (d) make you remember
10 They walked out together. ________ walked out.
   (a) They both (b) They all (c) Some of them (d) Neither of them
11 His wife was wearing a hat. She ________.
   (a) was dressing it (b) was putting it on (c) had it on (d) was carrying it
12 It looked like a lighthouse. It ________ a lighthouse.
   (a) appeared similar (b) resembled (c) matched (d) likened
Lesson 42  Not very musical

First listen and then answer the question.

What happened when the snake charmer began to play jazz?

As we had had a long walk through one of the markets of Old Delhi, we stopped at a square to have a rest. After a time, we noticed a snake charmer with two large baskets at the other side of the square, so we went to have a look at him. As soon as he saw us, he picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins and opened one of the baskets. When he began to play a tune, we had our first glimpse of the snake. It rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. We were very much surprised when the snake charmer suddenly began to play jazz and modern pop songs. The snake, however, continued to ‘dance’ slowly. It obviously could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz!

New words and expressions

musical (title) /'mju:zikəl/ adj. 精通音乐的
market (1.1) /'mɑ:kt/ n. 市场, 集市
snake charmer (1.3) /'sneik.tʃə:ma/or fə/ma/ 玩蛇者 （通常借音乐控制）
pipe (1.5) /paip/ n. （吹奏的）管乐器
tune (1.6) /tju:n/ n. 曲调
glimpse (1.6) /'ɡlimps/ n. 一瞥
snake (1.7) /sneik/ n. 蛇
movement (1.7) /'mu:vmənt/ n. 动作
continue (1.9) /kən'tinju/ v. 继续
dance (1.9) /dɑ:ns/ v. 跳舞
obviously (1.10) /'ɔbviəsli/ adv. 显然
difference (1.10) /'dɪfərəns/ n. 差别
Indian (1.10) /'ɪndɪən/ adj. 印度的

Notes on the text

1. Not very musical 是指蛇并不那样“懂”音乐。
2. It obviously could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz! 显然，它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐!

tell the difference between ... 辨别……之间的不同

参考译文

当我们穿过旧德里的市场时走了很长一段路，我们在一个广场上停下来休息。过了一会儿，我们注意到广场的那一带有一个带着两个大筐的耍蛇人，于是就走过去看看。他一见我们，就拿起了一个长长的上面镶有硬币的管乐器，并掀开了一个筐的盖子。当他开始吹奏一支曲子时，我们才第一次看到那条蛇。它从筐里探出身子，随着乐器的摆动而扭动。当耍蛇人突然又吹奏起爵士乐和现代流行乐曲时，我们感到非常惊奇。然而那蛇却还是缓慢地“舞”着。显然，它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐!
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. What did we watch in a square in Old Delhi?
2. Did he have a long pipe and two large baskets or not?
3. Did he play a tune or not? What did the snake in one of the baskets do? (and)
4. Did the snake charmer play modern tunes or not? Did the snake continue to dance slowly, or did it dance quickly? (Then... but)
5. Did it know the difference between Indian music and jazz or not?

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. The snake charmer opened his basket. He started to play a tune. The snake refused to move. (and... but)
2. The snake charmer shook the basket. The snake obeyed him. (Then... and)
3. Everybody was frightened. These snakes are not dangerous. (but)

Letter writing 书信写作

Arrange the following headings in the correct order. Supply full stops and commas; make any other changes you consider necessary:

1. 84 Wiley Drive/Buxton/England/Derbyshire/8 January 19—
2. May 21 19—/New York /844 West 54th Street/N.Y./U.S.A.

Key structures 关键句型

Have

a. Do you remember these sentences: (KS18)

Instead of saying:
He owns a new house.
He possesses a lot of money.
I took a bath before dinner.
I enjoyed myself at the party.

We can say:
He has a new house.
He has a lot of money.
I had a bath before dinner.
I had a good time at the party.

b. Sometimes we can use have + noun in place of an ordinary verb.

Study these examples:

I took a bath before dinner.
I had a bath before dinner.

I enjoyed myself at the party.
I had a good time at the party.
Unit 2  Lesson 42

Instead of saying:
I walked in the garden.
He wanted to drink a glass of water.
We will talk about the problem tomorrow.

Look at this.

We can say:
I had a walk in the garden.
He wanted to have a drink of water.
We will have a talk about the problem tomorrow.
Have a look at this.

Exercises 练习

A  Find four examples in the passage where have is used in place of an ordinary verb.
在课文中找出 have 替代普通动词的 4 个例子。

B  Write these sentences again using have + noun in place of the verbs in italics:
用 have + 名词来替代用斜体印出的动词:
1  Yesterday I rode on a horse for the first time in my life.
2  I was looking at those old photographs last night.
3  He washed before going out.
4  I swam in the sea this morning.
5  Those two sailors fought in the bar last night.
6  Dan and Caroline have been quarrelling.
7  He tried again. (Use ‘another’ in place of ‘again’).
8  She is resting.
9  I wanted to smoke.
10  Did you sleep well last night? (Use ‘a good’ in place of ‘well’.)

Special difficulties 难点

参见第 6、7 两课的难点 (SD6, SD7)

Study these sentences. Each sentence contains the verb pick. This verb has a different meaning in each sentence:
细读以下句子, 每句中均有动词 pick, 但词义各不相同。
He picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins. (L1.4-5)
I’ll pick you up in the car this evening. 今晚我开车来接你。
I picked up a lot of English while I was in England. (L learnt.) 在英国的时候, 我学到了不少英语。
There are so many beautiful cards on display, I can’t pick out the ones I like best. (I can’t choose.) 陈列着那么多漂亮的明信片, 我挑不出最喜欢的。

Exercise 练习

Use the correct form of the verb pick in place of the verbs in italics:
用 pick 来代替用斜体印出的动词:
1  That book has fallen on the floor. Please get it for me.
2  I’ll collect the parcel on my way to work.
3  I can’t select the material I want.
4  Where did you learn those tricks?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. They stopped at a square because ________.  
   (a) they noticed a snake charmer  
   (b) there was a market  
   (c) a snake charmer was playing a pipe  
   (d) they were tired

2. The snake probably ‘danced’ ________.  
   (a) by listening to the Indian music  
   (b) by listening to the jazz  
   (c) by looking at the snake charmer  
   (d) by following the movements of the snake charmer’s pipe

Structure 句型

3. We stopped at a square ________ have a rest.  
   (a) so to  
   (b) in order  
   (c) in order that  
   (d) in order to

4. We went to have a look at him. We wanted to ________ him.  
   (a) have  
   (b) see  
   (c) look  
   (d) have seen

5. Did it ________ out of the basket?  
   (a) rose  
   (b) rise  
   (c) raise  
   (d) risen

6. We were very much surprised. We were ________ surprised.  
   (a) more  
   (b) many  
   (c) most  
   (d) the most

7. It could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz. It ________.  
   (a) might not  
   (b) may not  
   (c) must not  
   (d) wasn’t able to

Vocabulary 词汇

8. It was covered with coins. There were coins ________ it.  
   (a) in  
   (b) over  
   (c) under  
   (d) all over

9. He began to play a tune. It was a nice ________.  
   (a) melody  
   (b) music  
   (c) echo  
   (d) harmony

10. We had our first glimpse of the snake. We ________.  
    (a) saw it  
    (b) looked at it  
    (c) saw it for a moment  
    (d) stared at it

11. The songs are popular. ________ like them.  
    (a) The people  
    (b) The country people  
    (c) The folk  
    (d) Many people

12. The snake, however, continued to dance. ________ the snake continued to dance.  
    (a) But  
    (b) So  
    (c) Though  
    (d) Even

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.  
连接以下句子，然后对照课本第 4-6 行，核对你的答案。

He saw us. He picked up a long pipe. It was covered with coins. He opened one of the baskets.  
As ________.
First listen and then answer the question.

How was the plane able to clear the mountains?

In 1929, three years after his flight over the North Pole, the American explorer, R.E. Byrd, successfully flew over the South Pole for the first time. Though, at first, Byrd and his men were able to take a great many photographs of the mountains that lay below, they soon ran into serious trouble. At one point, it seemed certain that their plane would crash. It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. Byrd at once ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane was then able to rise and it cleared the mountains by 400 feet. Byrd now knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole which was 300 miles away, for there were no more mountains in sight. The aircraft was able to fly over the endless white plains without difficulty.

New words and expressions

pole (title) /pɔl/ n. (地球的) 极
flight (1.1) /'flait/ n. 飞行
explorer (1.2) /ɪkˈsploʊrər/ n. 探险家
lie (1.4) /laɪ/ (lay /lei/, lain /liːn/) v. 处于
serious (1.5) /ˈsiəriəs/ adj. 严重的
point (1.5) /pɔɪnt/ n. 地点
seem (1.5) /siːm/ v. 似乎, 好像
crash (1.6) /kraʃ/ v. 坠毁
sack (1.8) /sæk/ n. 袋子
clear (1.8) /klɛər/ v. 越过
aircraft (1.10) /'ɛəkrɑːft/ n. 飞机
endless (1.10) /ˈendəls/ adj. 无尽的
plain (1.10) /pleɪn/ n. 平原

Notes on the text

1. the North Pole. 北极; the South Pole. 南极。
2. a great many photographs. 大量照片。
3. they soon ran into serious trouble. 他们很快陷入了困境。run into trouble 是“遇到麻烦”的意思。
4. at one point. 在某一地方。
5. it seemed certain. 看起来肯定。
6. get over the mountains. 越过山头。
7. it cleared the mountains by 400 feet. 飞机在离山头400英尺的高度飞越了过去。by 表示“相差”的意思。

参考译文

美国探险家R·E·伯德在飞越北极3年之后, 于1929年第一次飞越了南极。虽然开始时伯德和他的助手下拍下了飞机下面连绵群山的大量照片, 但他们很快就陷入了困境。在有个地方, 飞机似乎肯定要坠毁了。只有在飞至10,000英尺的高度时, 它才能飞过这些山头。伯德马上命令他的助手们把两个沉的食物袋扔掉, 于是飞机可以上升了, 它在离山头400英尺的高度飞越了过去。伯德这时知道他能够顺利飞抵300英里以外的南极了, 因为前面再没有山了。飞机可以毫无困难地飞过这片茫茫无际的白色原野!
**Summary writing** 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过65个单词。

1. When did the American explorer, R.E. Byrd become the first man to fly over the South Pole?
2. Did he take a lot of photographs during the flight or not? Did he run into difficulties or not? (but then)
3. Could his plane get over the mountains or not? What did he order his men to do? (so)
4. Did the plane then fly over the mountains or did it crash? Did it continue without further trouble or not? (and)

**Composition** 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words (conjunctions) in parentheses.

用括号中的连词改写以下句子:

1. Byrd stayed in the Antarctic for a year. He made many more flights. (and)
2. He went back to America in 1930. He returned to the Antarctic in 1946. (but)
3. This time he had 4,000 men with him. He had thirteen ships and seventeen aeroplanes. (not only... but... as well)

**Letter writing** 写作

1. Write your home address and the date in the way they would appear in a letter to a friend in your own country.
   按照给你本国的一个朋友写信的要求，写出你家的地址和日期。

2. Write the address of a person who lives abroad.
   写出一位居住在国外的人士的地址。

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Can and Be able to**

a. Do you remember these sentences: (KS19)
   你还记得以下句子吗？（参见第19课关键句型）

   Can I use your telephone?
   Could I use your telephone?

b. Study these examples carefully:
   仔细阅读下面的例子:

   Instead of saying: 除了这种表述方式外:
   He will come if he can.
   I can see you tomorrow.
   I couldn’t understand him.
   He said he could see me next week.

   We can say:
   还可以说:
   He will come if he is able to.
   I’ll be able to see you tomorrow.
   I wasn’t able to understand him.
   He said he would be able to see me next week.

c. We must use was able to when we want to show that an action has been completed successfully. We cannot use could in these sentences:
   当我们要表明一个动作已经成功地完成的时候，我们必须用 was able to。在以下句子中不能用 could:
Unit 2 Lesson 43

He was able to go to London yesterday and he enjoyed himself very much.  
他昨天去了伦敦，玩得很开心。

He didn’t agree with me at first but I was able to persuade him.  
他开始不同意我的观点，但我最终说服了他。

He was able to leave Europe before the war began.  
他在战争开始之前得以离开欧洲。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs can and be able to in the passage.  
划出课文中 can 和 be able to 的例子。

B Give the correct form of can and be able to in this paragraph. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.  
用 can 和 be able to 填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

Though, at first, Byrd and his men could take a great many photographs of the mountains that lay below, they soon ran into serious trouble. At one point, it seemed certain that their plane would crash. It couldn’t only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. Byrd at once ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane then could rise and it cleared the mountains by 400 feet. Byrd now knew that he could reach the South Pole which was 300 miles away, for there were no more mountains in sight. The aircraft could fly over the endless white plains without difficulty.

Special difficulties 难点

Phrases with At 含有 at 的词组

Study these examples:

At first Byrd and his men were able to take photographs. (1.3-4)  
Byrd at once ordered his men to throw out two food sacks. (1.7-8)

Billy is not at home at present. He’s at school. 比利现在不在家，他在学校。

After walking for several hours, we arrived at the village at last. 步行几个小时后，我们最后抵达了那个村庄。

It’s a pity you can’t come to the concert. At any rate you’ll be able to hear it on the radio. 你不能来听音乐会真令人感到遗憾。不管怎么说，你可以在收音机里听到。

I know he’s often rude to people, but he’s a very pleasant person at heart. 我知道他经常对人粗暴，但从本质上来说，他是个非常好的人。

I didn’t know you wouldn’t be coming. At least you could have telephoned me. 我不知道你不能来，你至少可以给我来个电话。

He behaves very strangely at times. 有时他的举止非常古怪。

I don’t know what I can do about it. I’m completely at a loss. 我不知道能为此事做点什么，我一点儿主意也没有了。

Exercise 练习

Use a phrase with at in place of the words in italics. Make any other necessary changes:  
用带有 at 的词组来替代句中用斜体印出的部分，如有必要可作些改动：

1 We found our way home in the end.  
2 He stayed in the house all day yesterday.  
3 You must write to him immediately.  
4 He cannot see you now as he is busy.
5 He annoys me sometimes.
6 When I saw that the house was on fire I didn’t know what to do.
7 When it began I thought it would be a good film but I was wrong.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 R. E. Byrd was the first man ________.
   (a) to go to the South Pole (b) to fly over the South Pole
   (c) to go to the North Pole (d) to take photographs of the South Pole
2 Byrd succeeded in flying over the mountains ________.
   (a) because his plane rose 400 feet (b) by making his plane lighter
   (c) because there were heavy sacks in the plane (d) because they were under 10,000 feet high

Structure 句型
3 Did the mountains ________ far below?
   (a) lie (b) lay (c) laid (d) lain
4 It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. This means it ________ over the mountains.
   (a) would succeed in getting (b) got (c) was able to get (d) had got
5 The plane was then able to rise. This means it ________.
   (a) could rise (b) might rise (c) might succeed in rising (d) rose
6 Byrd knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole. It would be ________.
   (a) impossible (b) necessary (c) able (d) possible
7 He would be able to reach the Pole ________ was 300 miles away.
   (a) which (b) who (c) it (d) which it

Vocabulary 词汇
8 They soon ________ serious trouble.
   (a) ran after (b) followed (c) had (d) ran
9 Byrd at once ordered them to do this. He ordered them to do this ________.
   (a) once (b) soon (c) immediately (d) quickly
10 The plane cleared the mountains. It ________ them.
   (a) covered (b) cleaned (c) emptied (d) flew over
11 Byrd now knew he would be able to ________ the South Pole.
   (a) arrive at (b) arrive (c) reach at (d) reach in
12 There were no more mountains in sight. They ________.
   (a) were blind (b) couldn’t see (c) couldn’t be seen (d) were sightless

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子, 然后对照课文第 7-8 行, 核对你的答案。
‘Throw out two heavy food sacks at once!’ Byrd told his men.
Byrd at once ordered __________________________.
Lesson 44  Through the forest  穿过森林

First listen and then answer the question.

How did Mrs. Sterling get her bag back?

Mrs. Anne Sterling did not think of the risk she was taking when she ran through a forest after two men. They had rushed up to her while she was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children and tried to steal her handbag. In the struggle, the strap broke and, with the bag in their possession, both men started running through the trees. Mrs. Sterling got so angry that she ran after them. She was soon out of breath, but she continued to run. When she caught up with them, she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag, so she ran straight at them. The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away. ‘The strap needs mending,’ said Mrs. Sterling later, ‘but they did not steal anything.’

New words and expressions 生词短语

forest (title) /'forest/ n. 森林
risk (1.1) /risk/ n. 危险, 冒险
picnic (1.3) /'piknik/ n. 野餐
edge (1.3) /'edʒ/ n. 边缘
strap (1.4) /stræp/ n. 带, 皮带
possession (1.5) /pə'zeʃən/ n. 所有
breath (1.7) /breθ/ n. 呼吸
contents (1.9) /'kɑntents/ n. （常用复数）内容, 內有的物品
mend (1.10) /mend/ v. 修理

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 the risk she was taking, 她所冒的风险, take the risk 有“冒……风险”的意思。
2 when she ran through a forest after two men, 当她穿过森林追赶两个男人时。run after, 追赶。
3 with the bag in their possession, 包落到他们手里。in one's possession, 为……所有。
4 Mrs. Sterling got so angry that she ran after them. 斯特林夫人非常气愤, 向着他们追了过去。句中含有 so ... that ... 的句型, 意思是“如此……以至于……”。
5 out of breath, 喘不上气, 上气不接下气。
6 When she caught up with them, 当她追上他们时。catch up with, 赶上, 追上。
7 going through, 翻看。
8 The strap needs mending, 背带需要修理。当 need 作“需要”讲时, 后面接的动名词有被动的含义。

参考译文

安·斯特林夫人在穿过森林追赶两个男人时, 她并没有考虑到所冒的风险。刚才, 当她和孩子们在树林边上野餐的时候, 这两个人冲到她跟前, 企图抢走她的小提包。在争抢中, 手提包的带子断了, 包落入这两个人手里, 他们拔腿跑进了树林。斯特林夫人非常气愤, 向着他们追了过去。只追了一会儿便上气不接下气了, 但她还是继续追赶。当她赶上他们时, 发现他们已经坐了下来, 正翻着包里的东西。于是她直冲过去。这两个人吓了一跳, 遂下小提包逃跑了。“这提包带需要修理,” 斯特林夫人事后说道, “不过他们什么也没偷走。”
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过70个单词。
1. How many men tried to steal Mrs. Sterling’s handbag?
2. What was she doing at the time?
3. Did they take the bag after a struggle or not? Where did they run? (and)
4. Did she run after them or not? Did she catch up with them or not? (and)
5. Had the men sat down or not? What were they doing? (and)
6. What did Mrs. Sterling do? What did they do? (so)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号内的连词改写以下句子:
1. Thieves can be very daring. They can be very timid, (either ... or)
2. A thief once broke into a house. He stole some money. The lady of the house caught him. (and ... but)
3. The thief gave back the money. He paid for the window he had broken, (not only ... but)

Letter writing 书信写作

Addressing the envelope: The name and address must appear in the middle of the envelope. Titles are always used with names. Study these examples:
信封上的地址的书写方式：收信人的姓名和地址必须在信封的中央，称呼总是和姓名连在一起的。研究以下例子：
Mr. James Thompson, James Thompson Esq.,
Miss H. Thompson, Mrs. D. Thompson,
Mr. and Mrs. J. Thompson,

Exercise 练习

Address an envelope to a friend who lives abroad.
给国外的一位朋友准备一个信封。

Key structures 关键句型

Both men started running through the trees.
a. Do you remember these sentences: (KS20)
你还记得以下句子吗？（参见第20课关键句型）

Eating is always a pleasure. 吃总是一种享受。
I am very keen on cycling. 我很热衷骑自行车。
He sat there without saying anything. 他坐在那里，一言不发。
I must apologize for not letting you know earlier. 没有让你早点知道，我必须向你道歉。
Unit 2 Lesson 44

b Now study these examples:

I am looking forward to seeing him tomorrow. (SD37) 我期待着明天与他会面。（第37课难点）
I am accustomed to getting up early. 我习惯早起。
I am used to getting up early. 我习惯早起。
(Compare: I used to get up early but I don’t anymore. [KS31])（对比：我过去常早起，但现在不再早起了。）

We can say:

Instead of saying:

The men started to run through the trees.
They began to run.
They continued to run.

We can say:

The men started running through the trees.
They began running.
They continued running.

c c Instead of saying:

Besides this way of expression:

The men started to run through the trees.
They began to run.
They continued to run.

c d Compare these sentences:

Now
I hate to disturb you, but can I come in for a moment please? 我不愿意打扰你，但我可以进来一会儿吗？
I’d love (or like) to sit in the garden. 我喜欢坐在花园里。

Always
I hate disturbing people when they are busy. 人们忙的时候，我不愿意打扰。
I love (or like) sitting in the garden when it’s fine. 天气好的时候，我喜欢在花园里坐坐。

d e Study these expressions:

My shirt is torn. It needs mending. 我的衬衫撕破了，需要缝补。
Those windows are dirty. They want washing. 那些窗户很脏，需要洗刷。

Exercises 练习

A There are some verbs in the passage which are similar in form to the examples given above. Can you find them?

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1 I’d love _______ (see) that film. Will it be on tomorrow?
2 He’s accustomed to _______ (work) very hard.
3 These shirts need _______ (iron).
4 I hate _______ (leave) so early, but I’m afraid I have to.
5 They continued _______ (argue) till after midnight.
6 Would you like _______ (come) with me?

7 I shall be looking forward to _______ (see) you soon.
8 You must never come into this room without _______ (knock) first.
9 I got tired of _______ (wait) so I left.
10 It began _______ (rain) just as I was going out.
11 I don’t believe in _______ (work) too hard.
12 He accused me of _______ (take) his umbrella.
Special difficulties

Study these uses of the verbs *catch* and *run*: 研究 *catch* 和 *run* 的用法:

When she *caught up with* them, she saw that they had sat down. (II.8-9) (When she reached them ...)
They dropped the bag and *ran away*. (11.9-10)

Exercise 练习

Write two sentences using each of the verbs given above.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The thieves ________.
   (a) found it easy to steal Mrs. Sterling’s bag  (b) found a bag
   (c) found it hard to steal the bag  (d) didn’t steal the bag

2 Mrs. Sterling ________.
   (a) caught the thieves  (b) followed the thieves and got her handbag back
   (c) never got her handbag back  (d) stayed with her children

Structure 句型

3 She was soon out of breath, but she continued ________.
   (a) run  (b) ran  (c) running  (d) in running

4 They were going through the contents of the bag. ________ she ran straight at them.
   (a) For this  (b) That’s because  (c) That’s why  (d) That’s so

5 They got such a fright. They were ________.
   (a) so frightful  (b) such frightened  (c) so frightened  (d) such fright

6 The strap needs mending. It ________.
   (a) has mended  (b) has to be mended  (c) has been mended  (d) has been mending

7 They didn’t steal anything. They stole ________.
   (a) anything  (b) not anything  (c) not nothing  (d) nothing

Vocabulary 词汇

8 She took a risk. What she did was ________.
   (a) dangerous  (b) brave  (c) clever  (d) stupid

9 She was at the edge of the forest. She was ________ the forest.
   (a) inside  (b) near  (c) among  (d) at the tip of

10 They tried to steal her handbag. They tried to ________ her of her handbag.
    (a) rob  (b) steal  (c) be robbed  (d) be stolen

11 She was out of breath. She ________.
    (a) wasn’t breathing  (b) was breathing with difficulty
    (c) couldn’t breathe  (d) stopped breathing

12 The bag contains money. Let me see the ________ of the bag.
    (a) contains  (b) containing  (c) contenting  (d) contents
Lesson 45  A clear conscience 问心无愧

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
How did Sam get his money back?

The whole village soon learnt that a large sum of money had been lost. Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office. Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, but it was not returned to him. Three months passed, and then one morning, Sam found his wallet outside his front door. It had been wrapped up in newspaper and it contained half the money he had lost, together with a note which said: ‘A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!’ Two months later, some more money was sent to Sam with another note: ‘Only 25 per cent a thief now!’ In time, all Sam’s money was paid back in this way. The last note said: ‘I am 100 per cent honest now!’

New words and expressions 生词和短语

clear (title) /klər/ adj. 无罪的，不亏心的

conscience (title) /ˈkɒnʃəns/ n. 良心，道德心

savings (1.3) /'sævɪŋz/ n. 存款

villager (1.4) /ˈvɪldʒə/ n. 村民

wallet (1.2) /ˈwɒlət/ n. 皮夹，钱包

per cent (1.8) /pa'sent/ 百分之……

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office. 当地的屠户萨姆·本顿在把存钱往邮局的途中把钱包丢了。其中的 while taking his savings 是现在分词用于连词之后，与表示时间的状语 from while he was taking his savings 作用是一致的。

2. the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, 钱包肯定是被某个村民捡到了。must 在这里表示推测，由于是对过去的推测，因此 must 之后的动词要用完成形式。

3. in time, 最后，终于。

参考译文

整个村子很快就知道，有一大笔钱丢失了。当地的屠户萨姆·本顿在把存钱往邮局的途中把钱包丢了。萨姆确信那钱包一定是被某个村民捡到了，可是却不见有人送来还给他。3 个月过去了，后来在一天早晨，萨姆在自己的大门口发现了他的钱包。钱包是用报纸包着的，里面有他丢失的钱的一半，而且还附着一张纸条，上面写着：“一个小偷，是的，但只是一个 50% 的小偷！”又过了两个月，又有一些钱还给了萨姆，又附了一张字条：“这回只是 25% 的小偷了！”很快，萨姆全部的钱都用同样的方式还了回来。最后的那张字条上写道：“我现在是一个 100% 的诚实人了！”
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过70个单词。

1 Where was the local butcher, Sam Benton, taking his savings? What did he lose? (but)
   1 Where was the local butcher, Sam Benton, taking his savings? What did he lose? (but)
2 Did Sam receive half his money three months later, or did he receive all his money? Did he receive a note or not?
   (not only ... but ... as well)
3 What did the note say?
4 Did the thief include a note every time he sent Sam more money or not?
5 What did the last note say?

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号内的连词改写以下句子:

1 Sam told everybody about the wallet. He did not try to find the thief. (but)
2 The man was not really a thief. He needed money badly. (but)
3 He paid back the money. He bought himself a clear conscience. (not only ... but also)

Letter writing 书信写作

Address an envelope to a married lady who lives abroad.
为写给居住在国外的一位已婚女士的信配一个信封。

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS10, KS21, KS34 复习 第 10, 21, 34 课关键句型: 被动语态

a Do you remember these sentences?
你还记得这些句子吗?

This bridge was built in 1942. (KS10) (第 10 课)
The thief was arrested by the police. (KS10) (第 10 课)
I can’t find my bag. It must have been stolen. (KS21) (第 21 课)
I must be paid for this. (KS21) (第 21 课)
I was told to wait for him. (KS34) (第 34 课)
He never expected the bicycle to be found. (KS34) (第 34 课)

b Now study these examples:
仔细阅读以下例子:

Instead of saying:
除了这种表述方式外:
I found out that someone had sent the parcel to the wrong address.
He told me the police had arrested the thief.

We can say:
还可以说:
I found out that the parcel had been sent to the wrong address.
He told me the thief had been arrested (by the police).
Exercises 练习

A There are some verbs in the passage which are similar in form to the examples given above. Can you find them?
找出课文中被动语态的动词。

B Change the form of the expressions in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
将斜体印出的动词改成被动语态。完成练习后再对照课文核对你得的答案。
The whole village soon learnt that someone had lost a large sum of money. Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office. Sam was sure that one of the villagers must have found the wallet, but no one returned it to him. Three months passed, and then one morning, Sam found his wallet outside his front door. Someone had wrapped it up in newspaper and it contained half the money he had lost, together with a note which said: 'A thief, yes, but only 50 percent a thief!' Two months later, someone sent more money to Sam with another note: 'Only 25 percent a thief now!' In time, someone paid back all Sam's money in this way.

C Change the form of the verbs in italics. Omit the word someone from each sentence:
将以下句子中用斜体印出的动词改成被动语态，省略 someone。
1 Someone has prepared a meal for you.
2 Someone will translate the book into English.
3 Someone must send a telegram to him.
4 Someone had put out the fire before the fire brigade arrived.
5 Someone gave the cat some milk to drink.

Special Difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

a Steal and Rob.

Steal (something from someone or somewhere) 偷 (从某人或某处): A thief broke into the building last night and stole some money from the safe. 昨天夜里一个窃贼闯入大楼, 从保险箱中偷走了一些钱。

Rob (someone of something) 抢 (某人的某物): Two thieves attacked him last night and robbed him of all his money. 昨天夜里两个窃贼袭击了他, 抢走了他的全部钱财。

(b a building, a bank, a house, etc.) (大楼, 银行, 房子等等) The police have caught the men who robbed the bank. 警察已抓住抢劫银行的那伙人。

b Pay back.

Study these examples:
仔细阅读以下例子:
All Sam's money was paid back. (l.9-10) (It was repaid). 他欠我的钱全还了。 (我已得到了对我的报复。)
I'll pay you back for what you did to me. (I’ll get my revenge on you for what you did to me.) 你对我这样, 我一定会报仇的。

Exercise 练习

Supply steal, rob or back in the following sentences:
用 steal, rob 或 back 填空:
1 Please lend me £25. I’ll pay you ______ next week.
2 His house was ______ last night. Thieves broke in and ______ several valuable pictures.
3 He threatened to pay me ______, but he hasn’t done so yet.
4 The bank clerk ______ some money from the safe.
5 A stranger attacked an old man in the train and ______ him of all his money.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Someone ______
   (a) had stolen Sam’s wallet  (b) had found Sam’s wallet and kept it
   (c) had lost Sam’s wallet  (d) had taken the wallet from Sam’s pocket.
2 The thief ______ in the end.
   (a) kept Sam’s money  (b) returned 50 percent of the money
   (c) returned 75 percent of the money  (d) returned all the money

Structure 句型

3 Sam was taking his savings to the post office ______ he lost his wallet.
   (a) when  (b) while  (c) as  (d) just as
4 He was taking his savings to the post office. He keeps his savings ______ the post office.
   (a) to  (b) in  (c) on  (d) into
5 The wallet was found ______ one of the villagers.
   (a) from  (b) by  (c) out of  (d) of
6 ______ had it been wrapped up in? A newspaper.
   (a) Where  (b) Who  (c) How  (d) What
7 Some more money was sent to Sam. Sam ______ some more money.
   (a) sent  (b) has sent  (c) was sent  (d) had sent

Vocabulary 词汇

8 We usually keep ______ in a wallet.
   (a) coins  (b) notes  (c) cheques  (d) photographs
9 The thief had ______ the wallet in newspaper.
   (a) wound  (b) rolled  (c) wrapped  (d) bound
10 How much did it contain? How much ______?
   (a) did it consist  (b) was there in it  (c) did it include  (d) had it
11 Sam read the thief’s note. In this sentence, ‘note’ means ______.
   (a) money  (b) a coin  (c) a cheque  (d) a message
12 ______, all Sam’s money was returned.
   (a) At times  (b) After a time  (c) With the times  (d) A long time

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The wallet must have been found by one of the villagers. Sam was sure of it. It was not returned to him.
Sam was sure __________________________.
Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable

First listen and then answer the question.

What did the man in this story do?

When a plane from London arrived at Sydney airport, workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes which contained clothing. No one could account for the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy. It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box. He was astonished at what he found. A man was lying in the box on top of a pile of woollen goods. He was so surprised at being discovered that he did not even try to run away. After he was arrested, the man admitted hiding in the box before the plane left London. He had had a long and uncomfortable trip, for he had been confined to the wooden box for over eighteen hours.

The man was ordered to pay £3,500 for the cost of the trip. The normal price of a ticket is £2,000!

New words and expressions

unload (1.2) /'ʌn'ləud/ v. 卸 (货)
wooden (1.2) /'wʊdn/ adj. 木制的
extremely (1.3) /ɪk'stri:mli/ adv. 极其
occur (1.4) /ə'kər/ v. 发生
astonish (1.5) /ə'stɒnɪʃ/ v. 使惊讶
pile (1.6) /pæl/ n. 堆
woollen (1.6) /'wʊln/ n. 羊毛的
goods (1.6) /gʊdz/ n. （常用复数）货物，商品
discover (1.7) /dɪ'skʌvə/ v. 发现
admit (1.8) /əd'mɪt/ v. 承认
confine (1.9) /kən'fain/ v. 关在（一个狭小的空间里）
normal (1.10) /'nɔrml/ adj. 正常的，通常的

Notes on the text

1 a number of, 许多。
2 No one could account for the fact that ..., 谁也弄不清……这样一个事实。account for 有“说明原因”的意思，that 后面的从句用来进一步说明这个“事实”本身，在语法上称作同位语。
3 It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box. 突然一个工人想到打开箱子看看。occur to 可译作“想起”。在这句话中，it 是先行词，主语是动词不定式 to open up the box。
4 He was astonished at what he found. 看到的情景使他吃惊。在句子中 what 引导的名词性从句作介词 at 的宾语，其中 what 相当于 the thing which。
5 on top of, 在……之上。
6 He was so surprised at being discovered that he did not even try to run away. 他由于被发现而感到非常吃惊，甚至都没有企图逃跑。这句话的主要句型仍为 so that ...。动名词短语 being discovered 是介词 at 的宾语，由于是被动语态，因此要用动词 be 加上 -ing 的形式。
7 the man admitted hiding in the box, 这个人承认藏在箱子里。在这句话中动名词 hiding 作动词 admit 的宾语。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过70个单词。

1. Where did the plane from London arrive? What did workers unload from it? (and)
2. What did they contain?
3. Was one of the boxes extremely heavy or not? What did a worker do? (so)
4. What did he find on top of a pile of woollen goods?
5. Was the man arrested or not?
6. Had he travelled in the box from London or from Sydney?
7. How much did he have to pay?
8. How much does an ordinary ticket cost?

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号中的连词改写以下句子：

1. The man had had an uncomfortable trip. He was very hungry. (not only ... but ... as well)
2. He had not eaten anything for thirteen hours. He had not drunk anything for thirteen hours. (neither ... nor)
3. Woollen goods cannot be eaten. At least they are soft. The man had had a few hours’ sleep. (but ... so)

Letter writing 书信写作

1. Write your home address and the date in the way they would appear in a letter to a friend who lives abroad.
   按照书信的要求，在一封信给国外朋友的信上写上你自己的家庭住址和日期。
2. Write the address of a friend who lives abroad in the way it would appear in a letter to you.
   按照书信的要求，在国外朋友给你的一封信上写上对方的地址。

Key structures 关键句型

Verbs followed by to, at, for and with (Compare KS22) 与 to, at, for 和 with 连用的动词（对比第22课关键句型）

We can put to, at, for and with after certain verbs.
在一部分动词的后面可加上 to, at, for 和 with。
对比：Compare:
I saw Tom yesterday. 昨天我见到了汤姆。
I shall see to the dinner tonight. (I shall prepare it.) 今晚我做晚饭。
Unit 2 Lesson 46

Use this list for reference:

a) TO: accustom(ed), amount, appeal, apply (or for), attach(ed), attend, belong, challenge, compare (or with), condemn(ed), confess, confine, consent, convert, entitle(d), listen, mention, object, occur, prefer, react (or against), reply, respond, see, submit, surrender, turn, yield.

b) AT: amuse(d) (or by), arrive (or in), astonish(ed) (or by), exclaim, glance, guess, knock (SD 6), look (SD 37b), point (or to), shock(ed) (or by), stare, surprise(d) (or by), wonder (or about), work (or on).

c) FOR: account, ask (or of), act (or on), apologize, blame, beg, call (SD 34), charge, exchange, hope, look, mistake, mourn, pay (SD 45b), prepare, provide, search, thank, vote (or on) (KS 22d), wait (or on).

d) WITH: agree, begin, communicate, compare (or to), compete (or against), comply, confuse, contrast (or to), cope, correspond, disgust(ed), finish, help (or in), interfere (or in), mix, occupy (ied), part, please(d), quarrel (or about), reason, satisfy (ied) (or by), threaten(ed).

Exercises

A Point out verbs in the passage which are followed by to, at, or for.

B Supply the missing words (to, at, for and with) without referring to the above lists as far as possible:

1. I don’t agree ______ you.
2. She preferred ______ wait ______ him.
3. We have been corresponding ______ each other for years.
4. How do you account ______ this?
5. Do you object ______ my smoking?
6. I’m surprised ______ you!
7. You must reply ______ his letter.
8. He has some important business to attend ______.
9. Do you mean to say you exchanged that lovely car ______ this?
10. Has it occurred ______ you that she must have arrived ______ London Airport by now?
11. I was shocked ______ his indifference!
12. You must comply ______ the rules of the game.
13. Poor Mary! She has so much to cope ______!
14. Please don’t mention it ______ my husband, but I paid £50 ______ this hat.
15. She was quite unprepared ______ the news.
16. Don’t blame me ______ the accident!
17. I’m disgusted ______ your behaviour!
18. You forgot to thank Aunt Jane ______ her present.
19. It is rude to stare ______ people.
20. I’m not satisfied ______ your work.
21. His debt now amounts ______ £100.
22. Mix the contents of this packet ______ a little water.
23. I knocked ______ the door.
24. Whom does this book belong ______?
25. I reasoned ______ him, but he would not listen ______ me.
26. She’s accustomed ______ living in comfort.
She’ll never part _her precious possessions._

27 At what time will you call _me?_

28 The spy surrendered himself _the enemy and was condemned _death._

29 I’ve looked _it everywhere, but I can’t find it._

30 I’ll see _the cooking tonight._

31 I must apologize _keeping you waiting._

32 The class failed to respond _the teacher’s new methods._

33 He turned _me for help, even after

I had quarrelled _him._

34 Like Micawber, I hope _something better._

35 Please apply _the secretary for information._

36 There was a note attached _the parcel._

37 Just guess _the price of this carpet._

38 How long have you been working _this exercise?_

39 The concert began _a piece by an unknown composer._

40 How much did they charge you _that?_

### Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

#### Comprehension 理解

1 The man was discovered because _______.
   (a) a worker opened the box  
   (c) the box contained woollen goods, but was very heavy  
   (b) the box was heavy  
   (d) he had hidden in the box

2 The man had hidden in the box _______.
   (a) to get to Sydney  
   (c) to avoid paying the fare from London to Sydney  
   (b) because it contained woollen goods  
   (d) because no one would find him

#### Structure 句型

3 Workers began _______ a number of wooden boxes.
   (a) unload  
   (b) to unloading  
   (c) unloaded  
   (d) unloading

4 Which boxes contained clothing? _______.
   (a) The wooden  
   (b) The wood  
   (c) The woody ones  
   (d) The wooden ones

5 It occurred to him to open it. He thought _______ it.
   (a) of opening  
   (b) to open  
   (c) to have opened  
   (d) opening

6 What did he find? He was surprised at what _______.
   (a) did he find  
   (b) he did find  
   (c) he found  
   (d) he has found

7 _______ a ticket to Sydney? £2,000.
   (a) How many is  
   (b) How much is  
   (c) How much has  
   (d) How much costs

#### Vocabulary 词汇

8 The boxes contained clothing. They contained _______.
   (a) clothes  
   (b) cloth  
   (c) clothes  
   (d) dresses

9 No one could account for it. They couldn’t _______ it.
   (a) explain  
   (b) estimate  
   (c) interpret  
   (d) describe

10 The man was lying on top of a _______ of woollen goods.
   (a) carpet  
   (b) column  
   (c) bag  
   (d) heap

11 He admitted hiding in the box. He _______ it.
   (a) announced  
   (b) described  
   (c) confessed  
   (d) declared

12 He had been confined to the box, so he _______.
   (a) couldn’t move  
   (b) could move  
   (c) couldn’t sleep  
   (d) couldn’t run away
Lesson 47  A thirsty ghost  嗜酒的鬼魂

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What evidence is there of a ghost?

A public house which was recently bought by Mr. Ian Thompson is up for sale. Mr. Thompson is going to sell it because it is haunted. He told me that he could not go to sleep one night because he heard a strange noise coming from the bar. The next morning, he found that the doors had been blocked by chairs and the furniture had been moved. Though Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went to bed, they were on in the morning. He also said that he had found five empty whisky bottles which the ghost must have drunk the night before. When I suggested that some villagers must have come in for a free drink, Mr. Thompson shook his head. The villagers have told him that they will not accept the pub even if he gives it away.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

thirsty (title) /ˈθɜːsti/ adj. 贪杯的
ghost (title) /ɡəʊst/ n. 鬼魂
haunt (1.2) /hɔːnt/ v. (鬼)来访，闹鬼
block (1.5) /blɒk/ v. 堵
furniture (1.5) /ˈfɜːntʃər/ n. 家具
whisky (1.8) /ˈwɪski/ n. 威士忌酒
suggest (1.9) /səˈdʒest/ v. 暗示
shake (1.10) /ʃeɪk/ (shook /ʃʊk/, shaken /ˈʃeɪkən/) v. 摇动
accept (1.10) /əkˈsept/ v. 接受

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. up for sale, 供出售, to be up for 是“为了某一目的”的意思。
2. he heard a strange noise coming from the bar, 他听到酒吧里传来一阵奇怪的声音。coming 是现在分词，用来进一步说明宾语 noise，在语法上称作宾语补语。
3. He also said that he had found five empty whisky bottles which the ghost must have drunk the night before. 他还说他发现了5只空的威士忌酒瓶子,这肯定是鬼魂头天晚上喝的。which 引导的从句用来修饰 five empty whisky bottles, 由于鬼魂喝的是酒, 因此句中的 5 个瓶子指的是 5 瓶酒。这是一种借喻的修饰方法。句中的 must 用来表示推测。
4. a free drink, 免费饮料。
5. even if he gives it away, 即使他白送人。
6. shake one’s head, 摇头，表示异议。

参考译文

伊恩·汤普森先生最近才买的一个小酒店现在又要卖出去。汤普森先生之所以想卖它，是因为那里常闹鬼。他告诉我有一天夜里他怎么也睡不着，因为他听到酒吧里传来一阵奇怪的响声。第二天早上，他发现酒吧间的门被椅子堵上了，家具也被挪动过。虽然汤普森先生睡觉时把灯关了，但早晨灯却都亮着。他还说他发现了5只空
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. What did Mr. Ian Thompson buy recently? Is it haunted or not? What is he going to do with it? (but ... so)
2. Was there a strange noise in the bar one night or not? Was the room in disorder next morning or not? (and)
3. What else did Mr. Thompson find?
4. Does he believe that some villagers broke into the bar and had a drink or not?
5. Does anybody in the village want to buy the pub?

Composition 写作

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. One night Mr. Thompson heard a noise. He went downstairs. (and)
2. In the bar, five men were drinking whisky. They did not see him. (but)
3. Mr. Thompson put a sheet over his head. He went into the bar. (and)
4. The villagers ran away in fear. They never came back again. (and)

Letter writing 书信写作

Write your name and home address in the way they would appear on an envelope.

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS36-45 复习第 36-45 课的关键句型

She is going to swim across the Channel tomorrow. (KS36)（第 36 课）
Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. (KS37)（第 37 课）
He acted as if he had never lived in England before. (KS38)（第 38 课）
He said that ... He told me ... He asked ... (KS39)（第 39 课）
If you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner. (KS40)（第 40 课）
Must, Have to and Need. (KS41)（第 41 课）
Have. (KS42)（第 42 课）
Can and Be able to. (KS43)（第 43 课）
A large sum of money had been lost. (KS45)（第 45 课）

Exercises 练习

A. Underline all the verbs in the passage. Revise any Key structures you have forgotten.

在课文中所有的动词下面划上横线, 复习已经遗忘的关键句型。
Unit 2 Lesson 47

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

A public house which recently _______ (buy) by Mr. Ian Thompson is up for sale. Mr. Thompson _______ (sell) it because it _______ (haunt). He told me that he _______ (can) not go to sleep one night because he _______ (hear) a strange noise coming from the bar. The next morning, he _______ (find) that the door _______ (block) by chairs and the furniture _______ (move). Though Mr. Thompson _______ (turn) the lights off before he _______ (go) to bed, they _______ (be) on in the morning. He also _______ (say) that he _______ (find) five empty whisky bottles which the ghost _______ (must drink) the night before. When I _______ (suggest) that some villagers _______ (must come) in for a free drink, Mr. Thompson _______ (shake) his head. The villagers _______ (tell) him that they _______ (not accept) the pub even if he _______ (give) it away.

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1 By the end of next year they _______ (finish) work on the new stadium.
2 If you _______ (break) this window, you would have to pay for it.
3 He would enjoy the concert if he _______ (be) present.
4 If you _______ (can) help me, I would be grateful.

D Supply mustn't or needn't in these sentences:

1 I _______ go to bed late tonight. I have to get up early tomorrow.
2 You _______ finish your soup if you don't like it.

E Read this paragraph, then answer the questions below:

1 ‘What are these people looking at?’ I asked George.
2 ‘I don’t know,’ George answered. ‘I think a new road is being built. It will be finished soon.’
3 George and I joined the crowd. ‘All these people are very silly,’ I whispered to George. ‘They are looking into an empty hole.’
4 ‘Some people enjoy watching others work,’ George said.
5 Half an hour passed. Suddenly George said to me, ‘Hurry up! We’ve been here for half an hour.’ Then he added, ‘There is nothing to see in an empty hole.’
6 ‘I don’t want to go yet,’ I answered. ‘It’s very interesting.’

Questions

1 What did I ask George?
2 What did George answer? What did he think?
3 Why did I tell George that all those people were very silly?
4 What did George say?
5 How much time passed? What did George tell me to do? How long had we been there? What did he add?
6 What did I answer?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Mr. Thompson wants to sell his pub because ________.
   (a) he heard a strange noise coming from the bar
   (b) he found the doors had been blocked by chairs
   (c) he found five empty whisky bottles
   (d) he thinks it's visited by a ghost
2 Mr. Thompson ________.
   (a) believes in ghosts
   (b) thinks the villagers are playing a trick
   (c) thinks the villagers drank the whisky
   (d) wants to give the pub away

Structure 句型
3 Mr. Ian Thompson ________ a public house a short time ago.
   (a) has bought  (b) bought  (c) was bought  (d) is bought
4 He's going to sell it. That's what he ________ to do.
   (a) intends  (b) will  (c) shall  (d) going
5 He told me he couldn't go to sleep. That's what he ________.
   (a) said me  (b) talked to me  (c) told to me  (d) said to me
6 He heard a noise ________ coming from the bar.
   (a) which was  (b) who was  (c) that is  (d) which is
7 The ghost must have drunk the whisky. In Mr. Thompson's opinion, the ghost ________ whisky.
   (a) must drink  (b) has got to drink  (c) has to drink  (d) should drink

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Mr. Thompson is selling his pub. His pub is ________.
   (a) sold  (b) to let  (c) for selling  (d) for sale
9 Before he went to bed, Mr. Thompson ________ the lights.
   (a) closed  (b) turned on  (c) closed up  (d) switched off
10 The lights were ________ in the morning.
    (a) open  (b) alight  (c) on  (d) on fire
11 Mr. Thompson shook his head. This meant ________.
    (a) no  (b) perhaps  (c) yes  (d) I don’t know
12 They will not ________ the pub even if he gives it away.
    (a) receive  (b) agree to  (c) agree to take  (d) allow

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentences, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。
Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went to bed, but they were on in the morning.
Though _______________________________.
Lesson 48  Did you want to tell me something?
你想对我说什么吗？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why did the writer become very worried?
Why did the writer become very worried?

Dentists always ask questions when it is impossible for you to answer. My dentist had just pulled out one of my teeth and had told me to rest for a while. I tried to say something, but my mouth was full of cotton wool. He knew I collected match boxes and asked me whether my collection was growing. He then asked me how my brother was and whether I liked my new job in London. In answer to these questions I either nodded or made strange noises. Meanwhile, my tongue was busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been. I suddenly felt very worried, but could not say anything. When the dentist at last removed the cotton wool from my mouth, I was able to tell him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

pull (1.2) /pʊl/ v. 拉
cotton wool (1.4) /kʌtn-'wʊl/ 药棉
collect (1.4) /kə'lekt/ v. 搜集
collection (1.5) /ko'lekjən/ n. 收藏品, 收集品
nod (1.7) /nɑd/ v. 点头
meanwhile (1.7) /ˈmiːnwaɪl/ adv. 同时

Notes on the Text 课文注释

1  for a while, 一会儿, 片刻。
2  He then asked me how my brother was and whether I liked my new job in London. 接着他问我的兄弟近来如何, 问我是否喜欢伦敦的新工作。在这句话中, 以 how 和 whether 引导的从句都是作动词 asked 的宾语。
3  In answer to these questions, 作为对这些问题的答复。
4  search out, 搜寻。
5  the hole where the tooth had been, 刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。

参考译文

牙医医生们总是在你无法作出回答的时候向你提出问题。我的牙医医生刚刚给我拔掉了一颗牙, 叫我休息一会儿。我想说点什么, 但我嘴里塞满了药棉。他知道我收集火柴盒, 于是问我收集的火柴盒是否在增加。接着他又问我的兄弟近来如何, 问我是否喜欢伦敦的新工作。作为对这些问题的回答, 我不是点头, 就是发出奇怪的声音。与此同时, 我的舌头正在忙着寻找刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。我突然非常着急起来, 但却什么也说不出来。当那位牙医最后将药棉从我嘴中取出时, 我总算有可能告诉他, 他拔错了牙。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过75个单词。
1. Had the dentist in the story pulled out one of the writer's teeth or not? What had he told him to do? (and)
2. Did he ask several questions or not? Could the writer answer them or not? (but)
3. What was his mouth full of?
4. Did he suddenly discover something wrong or not? Could he say anything or not? (but)
5. What did the dentist eventually remove from his mouth? What did the writer tell him? (and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号中的连词改写以下句子:
1. The dentist smiled. He showed me the tooth. (and)
2. He had pulled out the right one. I had not realized it. (but)
3. I had made a mistake. I had criticized his work. (not only... but... as well)

Letter writing 书信写作

 Arrange the following heading in the correct order. Supply full stops and commas; make any other changes you consider necessary.
按书信的要求排列以下信头，加上句号或逗号，如果需要可作变动。
England/Seaview Hotel/Princes' Avenue/23 September 19—/Brighton.

Special difficulties 难点

Review SD 26-45 复习第26-45课的难点

Exercises 练习

A Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:
选择正确的词:
1. The new school, (which) (who) has just been completed, is a fine building. (SD28) (第28课)
2. He (denied) (refused) that he had taken it. (SD29) (第29课)
3. The waiter (took) (fetched) me a clean glass. (SD29) (第29课)
4. He is (too) (very) ill to do any work. (SD29) (第29课)
5. I had a few (works) (jobs) to do in town this morning. (SD31c) (第31课c)
6. (A) (One) day I spoke to (one) (a) man (who) (whom) had won the Nobel Prize. (SD28,32) (第28,32课)
7. A bird flew (past) (passed) my window. (SD33b) (第33课b)
8. We spent the first day of our holidays in Geneva. The next (other) day we went to Basle. (SD33b) (第33b)
9. I spent the afternoon (watching) (following) the match. (SD36a) (第36课a)
10. Ships (continuously) (continually) cross the sea. (SD38c) (第38课c)
11. 'Did you take that book from the shelf?' he (remarked) (noticed) suddenly. (SD41) (第41课)
12. The bank has been (stolen) (robbed). (SD45a) (第45课a)
Unit 2  Lesson 48

B Write sentences using so, such, or such a with the following words: trouble, beautiful, nice day, tired. (SD35)

C Join these sentences using no sooner ... than. (SD38)

D Supply the correct form of make or do in the following sentences: (SD40)

E Put (SD27); call (SD34); look (SD37b); pick (SD42); catch (SD44); pay (SD45b).

F Phrases with at. (SD43) 含有 at 的短语 (参见第 43 课难点)

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The writer couldn’t speak because ________.
   (a) the dentist had just pulled one of his teeth out
   (b) the dentist was talking all the time
   (c) there was something in his mouth
   (d) he had a toothache
2 Why was the writer worried?
   (a) He thought the dentist had pulled out more than one tooth.
   (b) He thought the dentist had pulled out the wrong tooth.
   (c) He had had a tooth out.
   (d) His tongue was busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been.

Structure 句型
3 It is impossible for him to answer. He _______ answer.
   (a) might not (b) could not (c) cannot (d) may not
4 He told me to rest for a while. ‘_______ for a while,’ he said.
   (a) To rest (b) Rest (c) Do you rest (d) Resting
5 He asked me how my brother was. ‘How _______?’ he asked.
   (a) is your brother (b) your brother was (c) your brother is (d) was your brother
6 _______ your new job in London?
   (a) It likes you (b) Does it like you (c) Do you like (d) Like you
7 He answered these questions by _______ his head.
   (a) to nod (b) nodding (c) nod (d) to nodding

Vocabulary 词汇
8 He told me to rest for a while. He told me to rest _______.
   (a) quietly (b) for a short time (c) while he spoke to me (d) for a long time
9 I have a very good _______ of match boxes.
   (a) assembly (b) gathering (c) congregation (d) collection
10 I nodded. This means I _______.
    (a) agreed (b) said no (c) shouted (d) whispered
11 Meanwhile my tongue was busy ... _______ my tongue was busy ...
    (a) However (b) In the mean time (c) Nevertheless (d) Although
12 He removed the cotton wool from my mouth. He _______.
    (a) took it off (b) took it in (c) took it out (d) took it up

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 1-2 行，核对你的答案。
Dentists always ask questions when you are unable to answer.
Dentists always ask questions when it ____________________
PRE-UNIT TEST 3
测试 3
IF YOU CAN DO THIS TEST GO ON TO UNIT 3
如果你能完成以下测验, 请开始第 3 单元的学习

Key structures 关键句型

A Word order in compound statements 并列句中的语序

Join these pairs of sentences. Use the joining words in parentheses.
用括号中的连词连接以下各对句子。

1 He read the book. He returned it to the library. (and)
2 The boy climbed the tree. He picked some apples. (and)
3 I opened the door. He came into the hall. (and)
4 He looked for his pen. He could not find it. (but)
5 She called to him. He did not answer her. (but)
6 Everyone was out. I left a message. (so)
7 He plays soccer. He plays rugby. (both ... and)
8 Children enjoy holidays. Adults enjoy holidays. (both ... and)
9 He must be very clever. He must be very foolish. (either ... or)
10 George does not play football. Dave does not play football. (neither ... nor)
11 George does not play soccer. He does not play rugby. (neither ... nor)
12 He does not know. He does not care. (neither ... nor)
13 He forgot to take his umbrella. He forgot to take his briefcase. (not only ... but ... as well)

B Verbs 动词

a These things always happen. 一般现在时

What is happening? What always happens? 正在进行时，一般现在时

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.
用括号中动词的正确形式填空。

'Some people still ______ (believe) the world is flat,' he said.
'You ______ (joke),' I replied. 'I ______ (not know) anyone who does.'
'Well, you ______ (know) me,' he replied. 'I ______ (believe) that the earth is flat. I met a man the other
day. I ______ (forget) his name now. He said that the earth ______ (look) like a flat dish.'
'... you ______ (try) to tell me that you ______ (believe) him?' I asked.
'I certainly do,' he answered. 'I ______ (think) that he is right.'
'And which side of the dish ... you ______ (live) on?'
'Oh, I ______ (not know). He didn’t tell me that!'

b What happened? 一般过去时

The verbs in parentheses tell us what happened. Give the correct form of each verb.
括号中的动词表示过去发生的动作，用正确的形式填空。

Late in the afternoon, the boys ______ (put) up their tent in the middle of a field. ... they ______ (cook) a
meal over an open fire. They were all hungry and the food ______ (smell) good. After a wonderful meal, they
_______ (tell) stories and ______ (sing) songs by the campfire. But some time later it ______ (begin) to
rain. The boys ______ (feel) tired so they ______ (put) out the fire and ______ (creep) into their tent.
c What happened? What has happened? 一般过去时和现在完成时

The verbs in parentheses tell us what happened and what has happened. Give the correct form of each verb.

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought an unusual taxi and ________ (begin) a new service. The ‘taxi’ is a small Swiss aeroplane called a ‘Pilatus Porter’. This wonderful plane can carry seven passengers. Captain Fawcett’s first passenger ________ (be) a doctor who ________ (fly) from Birmingham to a lonely village in the Welsh mountains. Since then, Captain Fawcett ________ (fly) passengers to many unusual places. Once he ________ (land) on the roof of a block of flats and on another occasion, he ________ (land) in a deserted car park. Captain Fawcett just ________ (refuse) a strange request from a business man. The man ________ (want) to fly to Rockall, but Captain Fawcett ________ (not take) him because the trip ________ (be) too dangerous.

d What was happening? What happened? What used to happen? 过去进行时, 过去时和表示过去习惯性的动作

The verbs in parentheses tell us what was happening, what happened, and what used to happen. Give the correct form of each verb.

Yesterday afternoon Frank Hawkins ________ (tell) me about his experiences as a young man. Before he retired, Frank was the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he ________ (work) in a small shop. It ________ (be) his job to repair bicycles and at that time he ________ (work) fourteen hours a day. He ________ (save) money for years and in 1958 he ________ (buy) a small workshop of his own. In his twenties Frank ________ (make) spare parts for aeroplanes. At that time he ________ (have) two helpers. In a few years, the small workshop had become a large factory which ________ (employ) seven hundred and twenty-eight people. Frank ________ (smile) when he ________ (remember) his hard early years. He still ________ (smile) when the door ________ (open) and his wife ________ (come) in. She ________ (want) him to repair their grandson’s bicycle!

e Going to 将来时

Write these sentences again. Use going to in place of the verbs in italics.

重写以下句子，用 going to 来代替用斜体印出的动词。

1 We ________ (intend) to leave at six o’clock.
2 I ________ (intend) to pay these bills tomorrow.
3 Do you ________ (intend) to write to him?
4 She does not ________ (intend) to look for a new job.
5 When do you ________ (intend) to buy a new car?

f What will happen? What will be happening? What will have happened? 将来时、将来进行时和将来完成时

The verbs in parentheses tell us what will happen, what will be happening, and what will have happened. Give the correct form of each verb.

括号中的动词表示将来时、将来进行时和将来完成时, 用正确的形式填空。

The Olympic Games ________ (hold) in our country in four years’ time. As a great many people ________ (visit) the country, the government ________ (build) new hotels, an immense stadium, and an Olympic-standard swimming pool. They also ________ (build) new roads and a special railway line. The Games ________ (hold)
just outside the capital and the whole area (call) ‘Olympic City’. Workers (complete) the new roads by the end of this year. By the end of next year, they (finish) work on the new stadium.

g What happened some time ago? What had happened some time before?
The verbs in parentheses tell us what happened some time ago and what had happened some time before.

The police (find) Billy Wilkins last night. He (run) away from home five days before. He (spend) the last two nights near a farmhouse. The police (take) him home at once. When she (see) him, his mother (burst) into tears. She (say) he never (run) away before.

h He was asked to call at the station.

Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

Last Tuesday Dan received a letter from the local police. He (ask) to call at the station. Dan wondered why he (want) (be) by the police, but he went to the station. There he (tell) by a smiling policeman that his bicycle (pick) up in a small village four hundred miles away. It now (send) to his home by train. Dan never expected his bicycle to (find). It (steal) twenty years ago when Dan was a boy of fifteen!

i Answer the questions after each statement and question.

1 'I am very tired,' he said.
   What did he say? (He said that ...)
2 'Are you tired?' she asked.
   What did she ask? (She asked if ...)
3 'Will Jack arrive tomorrow?' Tom asked.
   What did Tom ask?
4 'When will Jack arrive?' Tom asked.
   What did Tom ask?
5 'Have you ever been abroad?' Catherine asked.
   What did Catherine ask?
6 'Why didn’t you write to me?' Jane asked.
   What did Jane ask?

j If

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 If he (be) out, I’ll call tomorrow.
2 You’ll miss the train if you (not hurry).
3 If you went to the exhibition, you (enjoy) it.
4 If I (be) in your position, I would act differently.
k Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 I'd love (see) that film. Will it be on tomorrow?
2 These shirts need (iron).
3 I hate (leave) so early, but I'm afraid I have to.
4 They continued (argue) till after midnight.
5 I shall be looking forward to (see) you tomorrow.
6 I got tired of (wait) so I left.
7 I don't believe in (work) too hard.
8 I did some shopping before (go) home.

C Must, Need, Have to, Can and Be able to.

a Supply mustn't or needn't in these sentences.

1 You ________ make a noise. The children are asleep.
2 You ________ drive so quickly; we have plenty of time.
3 You ________ come with us if you don't want to.
4 You ________ smoke in a theatre. It is forbidden.

b Write these sentences again using constructions with have in place of the verbs in italics.

1 Look at this.
2 He ________ before going out.
3 I ________ in the sea this morning.
4 She is ________.

C Supply could or was able to in the following sentences.

1 ________ I use your telephone please?
2 He ________ leave Europe before the war began.
3 He said he ________ see me tomorrow.
4 He didn't agree with me at first but I ________ persuade him.

D A, The, Some and Any

Put in a, the, some or any where necessary.

Wayle is ________ small river that cuts across ________ park near my home. I like sitting by ________ Wayle on fine afternoons. It was warm last Sunday, so I went and sat on ________ river bank as usual. ________ children were playing ________ games on ________ bank and there were ________ people rowing on ________ river. Suddenly, one of ________ children kicked ________ ball very hard and it went towards ________ passing boat. ________ people on ________ bank called out to ________ man in ________ boat, but he did not hear them. ________ ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into ________ water. I turned to look at ________ children, but there weren't ________ in sight.
Pre-Unit Test 3

E  Little and Few

Write these sentences again using little, less than, few, fewer than, a little, and a few in place of the words in italics. Make any other necessary changes.

1. There isn’t much I can do to help him.
2. There aren’t many apples on the tree, but you can pick some if you want to.
3. He hasn’t got as much work to do as I have.
4. There isn’t much whisky in this bottle, but you can have some if you want it.
5. He hasn’t as many books as I have.
6. There weren’t many people in the shop.

F  Where did he go? He went to the cinema.

Supply the missing words in the following.

1. Tell him to come to my office. I want to speak to him.
2. The ship sailed at the harbour and disappeared from sight.
3. We climbed to the top of the mountain.
4. He aimed at the bird, fired, and missed.
5. Please bring the tea things to the kitchen for me.

G  Verbs followed by to, at, for and with. 带有 to, at, for 和 with 的动词短语

Supply the missing words in the following sentences.

1. I agree to you. He never listens to anybody.
2. Don’t blame me to that!
3. We must prepare for the coming year.
4. He has quarrelled to nearly all his old friends.
5. He came into the room without knocking to the door.

Special difficulties 难点

a  Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

1. I can’t drink this coffee. It is (too) (very) hot.
2. He (denied) (refused) the accusation.
3. He often does (jobs) (works) about the house.
4. The train (passed) (past) at a terrific speed.
5. Have you seen Frank lately? I met him by accident the (next) (other) day.
6. He (looked at) (watched) the newspaper for a few minutes before going out.
7. I feel (such) (so) sleepy, I shall go to bed at once.
8. He is (so) (such a) difficult child. He objects to everything.
9 This water has been boiling (continuously) (continually) for over an hour.
10 He knocked me down and (stole) (robbed) me of all my money.
11 In the end, I bought (one) (a) tie instead of two.
12 I'm surprised you didn't (remark) (notice) my new hat.

b Speech Marks 引号
Write this piece of conversation again using speech marks.

Haven't you finished this book yet? he asked. I haven't even started it, I answered. Why not? he asked. It's an exciting story. Perhaps it is, I answered, but it's too difficult for me. I spend more time looking up the dictionary than reading the book.

c Complete these sentences by adding any of the following words: back, out, with, up.

1 The firemen found it difficult to put ________ the fire.
2 I'll have to look that ________ in the encyclopaedia.
3 He ran so fast I couldn't catch up ________ him.
4 All his friends are Americans. He has picked ________ an American accent.
5 I haven't any money now. Can I pay you ________ next week?

d Make and Do
Supply the correct form of make and do in the following.

1 I ________ a promise never to see him again.
2 I was asked to ________ a speech.
3 That shop ________, very good business.
4 Do you think it will ________ any difference?
5 When did you ________ your homework?
6 He's the sort of person who always ________ trouble.
Unit 3
第 3 单元
INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT
致学生

In Unit 2 you learned how to join simple statements with words like ‘and’, ‘but’ and ‘so’ to make compound statements. In this Unit you will learn how to join simple statements with words like ‘when’, ‘as’ and ‘while’ to make complex statements. You will learn how to write sentences which contain several ideas.

在第 2 单元你学会了用“and”, “but” 和 “so”来连接简句，组成并列句。在这一单元，你将学习如何用“when”, “as” 和 “while”等词连接简句以组成复合句。你将合串组成表达多层意思的句子。

Before you begin each exercise, read these instructions carefully. Read them each time you begin a new piece. They are very important.

在开始每项练习之前，要细读这些指令。它们很重要，每次开始新课前都要读读指令。

How to work — Summary writing 如何写摘要

Unit 3 contains twenty-four short passages. There are questions under each piece. Your answers to these questions will often take the form of complex statements. Put your answers together to make a short paragraph.

第 3 单元共有 24 篇短文。每篇道文下面都有问题。你的回答常常是复合句。把你的答案组成一个小的段落。

1 Read the passage carefully two or three times. Make sure you understand it.
细读课文 2 至 3 遍，一定要理解课文。

2 Write a full answer to each question. When several questions are given together, join your answers with the joining words or phrases given in parentheses. Each answer you write must be a complete sentence.
给每个问题一个完整的答案。当几个问题相关连时，用括号中的词或词组把它们连结起来。你的每一个答案必须是完整的句子。

3 Your answers to the questions must follow each other so that all your sentences will form a complete paragraph.
你的答案必须句句相连，组成一个完整的段落。

4 Read through your work and correct your mistakes.
从头至尾读一遍你的答案，纠正其中的错误。

5 Count the number of words in your paragraph. Do not go over the word limit. Words like ‘the’, ‘a’, etc. count as single words. Words which are joined by a hyphen also count as single words. At the end of your paragraph write the number of words that you have used.
数一下段落中的字数，不要超过字数的限制。冠词和单连字符连起来的复合词为一个词。在段落的后面注明全段的字数。

Example 范例

Work through this example carefully and then try to do the exercises in Unit 3 in the same way.
仔细研究以下例题，然后用同样的方式完成第 3 单元的练习。

The last and longest journey

Even ships grow old and have to be destroyed. The last journey of a ship, which people have worked in and grown to love, is always a sad occasion. The F.S. 949 had not been a great liner, or even a remarkable merchant ship. She was a U-boat and had sunk more ships during the war than any other submarine. In one
famous battle, she had sunk six ships in twenty-four hours. Alone, she had gone out to meet a convoy of
merchant ships. Though these ships were protected by destroyers, the F.S. 949 had sunk four of them before
she was located. During the long battle that followed, two of the destroyers were sunk and the little subma-
rine was only slightly damaged. Now, under a cold, grey sky, people were watching silently as she came into
the harbour. She would soon make her last journey out to sea before resting for ever in the depths she knew
so well.

**Summary writing 摘要**

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.

1. Was the F.S. 949 an old U-boat or a new one? Would she soon be destroyed or not? (which)
2. What had she done during the war?
3. How many ships had she sunk in twenty-four hours in one famous battle?
4. How many merchant ships and destroyers had she sunk on that occasion? Was she slightly damaged or not? (Though)
5. What were people doing as the F.S. 949 now came into the harbour? Would she make her last journey out to sea or
   not? (before)

**Answer 回答**

The F.S. 949 was an old U-boat which would soon be destroyed. During the war, she had sunk more ships
than any other submarine. In one famous battle, she had sunk six ships in twenty-four hours. Though on that
occasion she had sunk four merchant ships and two destroyers, she was only slightly damaged. People were
watching silently as the F.S. 949 now came into the harbour before she made her last journey out to sea.

(74 words)

**Composition 作文**

Unit 3 contains two types of composition exercise based on ideas suggested by each passage:

1. Writing two or three sentences of your own, using the information which has been given in note form.
2. Joining sentences together to make complex statements.

Examples 范例

Work through these examples carefully and then try to do the composition exercises in the same way.

1. Composition 作文范例 1

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below.

Nuclear submarines — may replace ordinary submarines — can travel long distances — Nautilus — North
Pole — under ice — four days.
A Possible answer 参考答案
Nuclear submarines may one day replace ordinary submarines, for they can travel under water over long distances. The American nuclear submarine, *Nautilus*, which sailed across the North Pole, remained under ice for four days.

2 Composition 作文范例 2
Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses.

1. The F.S. 949 failed to return home after a long sea battle. It was feared that she had been sunk. (*Because*)
2. Everyone was surprised. The submarine suddenly arrived three weeks later. (*when*)
3. She had not been badly damaged. Her radio had been put out of action. (*Although*)

Answer 答案
*Because* the F.S. 949 failed to return home after a long sea battle, it was feared that she had been sunk. Everyone was surprised *when* the submarine arrived three weeks later. *Although* she had not been badly damaged, her radio had been put out of action.

Letter writing 书信写作
Follow the instructions given under each passage.

Key structures and special difficulties 关键句型和难点
When you finish the Letter writing exercise, go on to the language exercises that follow. The Key structures deal with exactly the same problems that were considered in Units 1 and 2. You may refer back if you have forgotten anything. A little more new information about the Key structures is added here. Special difficulties are dealt with after the Key structures. The work you do in grammar is based on material contained in the passages. Refer to the passages frequently. They will help you to understand the grammar and to do the exercises.
Lesson 49 The end of a dream 美梦告终

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
How did the dream end?
Tired of sleeping on the floor, a young man in Teheran saved up for years to buy a real bed. For the first time in his life, he became the proud owner of a bed which had springs and a mattress. Because the weather was very hot, he carried the bed on to the roof of his house.

He slept very well for the first two nights, but on the third night, a storm blew up. A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof and sent it crashing into the courtyard below. The young man did not wake up until the bed had struck the ground. Although the bed was smashed to pieces, the man was miraculously unhurt. When he woke up, he was still on the mattress. Glancing at the bits of wood and metal that lay around him, the man sadly picked up the mattress and carried it into his house. After he had put it on the floor, he promptly went to sleep again.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

tired (1.1) /ˈtaɪəd/ adj. 疲倦的
real (1.2) /riːl adj. 真正的
owner (1.3) /ˈəʊnər/ n. 主人
spring (1.3) /ˈsprɪŋ/ n. 弹簧
mattress (1.3) /ˈmætrɪs/ n. 床垫
gust (1.6) /ɡʌst/ n. 一阵风
sweep (1.6) /swiːp/ (swept/swept/, swept) v. 扫

courtyard (1.7) /ˈkoʊtʃɑːd/ n. 院子
smash (1.8) /smæʃ/ v. 碰碎，摔碎
miraculously (1.9) /ˈmɪrəkjʊliəslɪ/ adv. 奇迹般地
unhurt (1.9) /ˈʌnˈhɜːrt/ adj. 没有受伤的
glance (1.9) /ɡlɑːns/ v. 扫视
promptly (1.11) /ˈprɒmptli/ adv. 迅速地

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. Tired of sleeping on the floor, 由于对睡地板感到厌倦。be tired of 是“对……感到厌倦”的意思。这句话里省略了现在分词 being, 这个短语表示原因状语。
2. save up, 捡钱。
3. blow up, （指暴风雨）出现并加剧; 刮起。
4. A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof and sent it crashing into the courtyard below. 一阵大风把床从屋顶上刮了下来, 把它摔碎在下面的院子里。crashing into the courtyard below 是现在分词短语, 作宾语补足语。
5. The young man did not wake up until the bed had struck the ground. 那年轻人直到床撞到地上才醒来。

参考译文
德黑兰的一个年轻人由于对睡地板感到厌倦，于是积蓄多年买了一张真正的床。他平生第一次自豪地拥有了——张既有弹簧又带床垫的床。由于天气很热，他便把床搬到了他的屋顶上。头两天晚上，他睡得非常好。但第三天晚上起了风暴。一阵大风把床从屋顶上刮了下来，把它摔碎在下面的院子里。那年轻人直到床撞到地上
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.

1. What did a young man in Teheran buy for the first time in his life?
2. Was the weather hot or cold? Did he sleep on the roof of his house or not? (Because)
3. Was the bed swept off the roof during a storm three nights later or not?
4. Was the man unhurt, or was he seriously injured? Was he still on his mattress or not? (not only ... but)
5. Was the bed in pieces or not? Did he carry the mattress indoors or not? Where did he put it? Did he go back to sleep or did he stay awake? (As ... and)

Letter writing 书信写作

Most letters begin with the word ‘Dear’ followed by a name. The word ‘Dear’ should be placed against the left-hand margin:

大多数书信都以“亲爱的”开头，后接姓名。“亲爱的”这个词一定要在信纸的左手边顶格:

| 24 Clayton Ave.,  |
| St. Albans, |
| Herts. |
| England. |
| 17th June, 19— |

Dear Tom,

Exercise 练习

Write your address, the date and the beginning of a letter to a friend in the way shown above.

按照以上格式, 写下你的地址、日期和给朋友的一封信的开头。

Key structures 关键句型

Word order in complex statements 复合句的语序 (Compare KS1, 25) (对比第1, 25 课关键句型)

We can join simple statements together to make complex statements. Here are some of the joining words we use:

我们可以把一些简单句连在一起组成复合句, 以下是我们常用的一些连词:

when, until, after, as soon as, while, before, because, as, since, to, in order to, although, who, which and that.

Study these simple statements carefully. Pay close attention to the way they have been joined:

仔细阅读以下句子, 特别注意这些句子的连接方式:

He missed the train. He did not hurry. 他误了火车。他没有赶紧离开。
He missed the train because he did not hurry. 他误了火车。因为他没有赶紧离开。
He ran fast. He failed to win the race. 他跑得很快。他没有赢得比赛。
Although he ran fast, he failed to win the race. 虽然他跑得很快, 但他没能在比赛中获胜。
I was tired. I went to sleep immediately. 我很累。我立刻睡着了。
I was so tired that I went to sleep immediately. 我感到如此之疲倦以致马上就入睡了。
My neighbour went to Tokyo for a holiday. He could not return home. He did not have enough money. 我的邻居去东京度假。他没能回来。他钱不够了。
My neighbour, who went to Tokyo for a holiday, could not return home because he did not have enough money. 我那位去东京度假的邻居，由于钱不够了没能回来。
I went into the garden. I wanted to pick some flowers. 我进了花园。我想摘些花。
I went into the garden to pick some flowers. 我走进花园去摘些花。
I found the door unlocked. I went into the kitchen. 我发现门打开了。我走进了厨房。
Finding the door unlocked. I went into the kitchen. 发现门打开了。我走进了厨房。
The city was destroyed during the war. It has now been completely rebuilt. 城市在战争中被摧毁了。它已被彻底重建了。
Destroyed during the war, the city has now been completely rebuilt. 在战争中被毁后，这座城市现在已彻底重建了。

Exercises 练习

A How many joining words can you find in the passage? Underline as many as you can.
在课文中所有连词的下面划上横线。

B Rewrite these simple statements using the joining words in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用括号中的连词改写以下简单句，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
1 A young man in Teheran was tired of sleeping on the floor. He saved up for years to buy a real bed.
   (Tired of sleeping)
2 He became the proud owner of a bed. It had springs and a mattress. (which)
3 The weather was very hot. He carried the bed on to the roof of his house. (Because)
4 The young man did not wake up. The bed had struck the ground. (until)
5 The bed was smashed to pieces. The man was unhurt. (Although)
6 He woke up. He was still on the mattress. (When)
7 He glanced at the bits of wood and metal. They lay around him. He sadly picked up the mattress. He carried it into his house. (Glancing ... that ... and)
8 He put it on the floor. He went to sleep again. (After)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下词组写出 2 至 3 个句子来。
The man gathered the pieces next morning — repaired the bed — put it on the roof — tied it down — enjoyed many comfortable nights' sleep.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Which statement best describes what happened?
   (a) The bed was blown off the roof.
   (b) The man was not hurt.
(c) The bed was smashed to pieces.
(d) The bed was blown off the roof, but the man was not hurt.

2 When the man discovered that his bed had been smashed 
(a) he went back to sleep soon afterwards
(b) he couldn’t sleep at all that night
(c) he tried to fix the bed
(d) he stayed where he was and immediately went back to sleep

Structure 句型
3 ______ the hot weather, he couldn’t sleep indoors.
   (a) Because    (b) Because of    (c) As    (d) For
4 Where did he ______ his bed?
   (a) carry    (b) carries    (c) carried    (d) carrying
5 How ______ did he sleep?
   (a) good    (b) well    (c) goodly    (d) nice
6 Where was the courtyard?
   (a) Down.    (b) Under.    (c) Below.    (d) Bottom.
7 He looked at the bits of wood and metal ______ around him.
   (a) laying    (b) laid    (c) lying    (d) lied

Vocabulary 词汇
8 A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof. The wind blew very ______.
   (a) hard    (b) fast    (c) quickly    (d) soon
9 The bed crashed into the courtyard. It ______ the courtyard.
   (a) smashed    (b) knocked    (c) struck    (d) exploded
10 It was smashed to pieces. It ______.
   (a) was struck    (b) was cracked    (c) was destroyed    (d) was damaged
11 He glanced at the bits of wood and metal. He ______ the bits of wood and metal.
   (a) looked quickly at    (b) had a glimpse of    (c) stared at    (d) watched
12 He promptly went to sleep again. He went to sleep ______.
   (a) straight away    (b) after a while    (c) after a time    (d) late

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。
The bed was swept off the roof by a gust of wind.
A gust of wind ______.
Lesson 50  Taken for a ride  乘车兜兜

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why did the writer not get off the bus at Woodford Green?

I love travelling in the country, but I don’t like losing my way. I went on an excursion recently, but my trip took me longer than I expected.

‘I’m going to Woodford Green,’ I said to the conductor as I got on the bus, ‘but I don’t know where it is.’

‘I’ll tell you where to get off,’ answered the conductor.

I sat in the front of the bus to get a good view of the countryside. After some time, the bus stopped. Looking round, I realized with a shock that I was the only passenger left on the bus.

‘You’ll have to get off here,’ the conductor said. ‘This is as far as we go.’

‘Is this Woodford Green?’ I asked.

‘Oh dear,’ said the conductor suddenly. ‘I forgot to put you off.’

‘It doesn’t matter,’ I said. ‘I’ll get off here.’

‘We’re going back now,’ said the conductor.

‘Well, in that case, I prefer to stay on the bus,’ I answered.

New words and expressions

ride (title) /raid/ n. 旅行
excursion (1.2) /ik’sk3:Jo:n/ n. 远足

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. 标题“Taken for a ride”中take ... for ... 是“把……当作……”的意思。taken for a ride 意思是“当作是一次乘车兜兜风”；take sb. for a ride 又作“欺骗”讲，因此 taken for 也有“上当了”的含义。

References

我喜欢在乡间旅行，但却不愿意迷路。最近我作了一次短途旅行，但这次旅行所花费的时间比我预计的要长。

“我要去伍德福德草地，” 我一上午就对售票员说，“但我不知道它在哪儿。”

“我来告诉您哪儿下车，” 售票员回答说。

236
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过65个单词。
1. Where did the writer want to go? Did he know the way or not? What did the conductor promise to do? (but as)
2. Did they arrive at the bus terminus or not? What did the writer ask? (When)
3. What did the conductor realize then? (... that)
4. Why did the writer stay on the bus? (because)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号中的连词改写以下句子：
1. I went into the kitchen. I turned on the light. It was dark. (On going ... because)
2. My brother shouted angrily. The lights went on. (when)
3. I spoilt a film. He was developing it. (which)

Letter writing 书信写作

How to begin a letter

写信如何开头

a. Friends should be addressed by their first names: e.g. ‘Dear Fred’. Never begin a letter with the words ‘Dear Friend’.
给朋友写信要称呼他们的名字，如：“亲爱的弗雷德”，决不要以“亲爱的朋友”之类的词语开头。

b. When writing to relations you may begin: Dear Mother, Dear Father, Dear Uncle Fred, Dear Aunt Alice, but never ‘Dear Cousin’, or ‘Dear Cousin Fred’.
给亲戚写信，则可以这样开头：亲爱的妈妈，亲爱的爸爸，亲爱的弗雷德叔叔，亲爱的艾丽丝姨妈，但决不可称“亲爱的表兄”，或“亲爱的弗雷德表兄”。

Exercise 练习

How would you begin letters to: your grandmother, your cousin Elizabeth, your friend Jack, your uncle Tom?
给下列人写信你应如何开头：你的祖母，你的表妹伊丽莎白，你的朋友杰克，你的叔叔汤姆。

Key structures 关键句型

These things always happen. 表示习惯性动作 (KS26) （参见第26课关键句型）
Here are some more verbs that tell us what always happens:

belong to, consist of, contain, desire, detest, dislike, hate, hope, love, matter, mean, mind, need, want, wish.

This box contains 48 matches. Those papers belong to me. These papers are mine. Those papers are mine.

He needs a new pair of shoes. I hate writing letters.

Exercises

A How many verbs in the passage tell us what always happens?

B What is happening? What always happens?

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Supply speech marks and commas where necessary and arrange the passage into paragraphs: (SD26)

Let’s eat here I said to my wife. I prefer to have a drink first she answered. That’s a good idea I said.

I picked up the menu. I don’t understand a thing I said. It’s all in Spanish. It doesn’t matter said my wife. What does that word mean I asked. I don’t know she answered. We called the waiter and pointed to the word on the menu. Two I said, holding up two fingers. After some time, my wife said suddenly Look! He is bringing us two boiled eggs!

Special difficulties

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a Lose, Loose, Miss.

I don’t like losing my way. (1.1)

Take care not to lose your passport. 注意不要把护照丢了。

Several screws have come loose. I’ll have to tighten them. 几个螺丝松了，我不得不把它们拧紧。

We haven’t seen you for a long time. We have missed you. 我们好久不见，我们想念你。

We must hurry or we’ll miss the train. 我们必须快一点，不然会误了火车的。

b Expect and Wait for.

My trip took me longer than I expected. (1.2-3)

I am expecting Jack to arrive at six o’clock, but I shall not wait for him if he is not here by 6.15. 我期待着杰克能在 6 点钟到达，但如果他 6 点 15 分还不到的话，我就等不了。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in these sentences:

1 Hurry up! You’ll lose (miss) the bus.
2 That doorknob has come (lose) (loose). It will fall off soon.
3 Do you expect (wait for) him to change his mind?
4 If you bet on that horse you will lose (lose) your money.
5 He waited (expected) at the street corner for over half an hour before his girlfriend arrived.
c My trip took me longer than I expected. (11.2-3)

Study these examples:

I did the trip in two hours. 我在两小时内完成了这次远足。
The trip took me two hours. 这次远足用了我两个小时的时间。

Exercise 练习

Rewrite these sentences so that they begin with *It takes* or *It took*.

改写以下句子，用 *It takes* 或 *It took* 来开头。

1. I get to the office in an hour. 2. I reached Tokyo in fifteen hours. 3. He wrote the book in six months.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. Why did the writer ask the conductor to help him?

(a) He didn’t know where he was going. (b) He didn’t know where to get off. (c) He had lost his way. (d) He was the only passenger on the bus.

2. Which word best describes the conductor? He was ________ .

(a) helpful (b) lazy (c) rude (d) forgetful

Structure 句型

3. ________ in the country is something he loves.

(a) Travelling (b) Travel (c) The travelling (d) To travelling

4. The trip took him longer than he expected. He didn’t expect it to last ________ .

(a) longer (b) as long (c) so long (d) such a long

5. ‘Where ________ off?’ I asked. ‘I’ll tell you where to get off,’ answered the conductor.

(a) to (b) for (c) shall I (d) in order to

6. I was the only passenger. There weren’t ________ more.

(a) any (b) many (c) lots (d) a few

7. This is as far as we go. We don’t go ________ .

(a) any further (b) more far (c) further more (d) so far

Vocabulary 词汇

8. A bus conductor usually ________ .

(a) drives a bus (b) inspects the tickets (c) buys tickets (d) collects fares

9. The writer got on the bus, but he didn’t know where to ________ .

(a) get down (b) get off (c) get out of (d) get over

10. There was a good ________ of the countryside from the front of the bus.

(a) sight (b) view (c) scene (d) scenery

11. ‘It doesn’t matter,’ I said. I ________ .

(a) don’t remember (b) don’t know (c) don’t mind (d) don’t matter

12. I prefer to stay on the bus. That’s ________ .

(a) my favourite (b) my best (c) beloved (d) what I’d like to do best
First listen and then answer the question.

Why did Hugh's diet not work?

My friend, Hugh, has always been fat, but things got so bad recently that he decided to go on a diet. He began his diet a week ago. First of all, he wrote out a long list of all the foods which were forbidden. The list included most of the things Hugh loves: butter, potatoes, rice, beer, milk, chocolate, and sweets. Yesterday I paid him a visit. I rang the bell and was not surprised to see that Hugh was still as fat as ever. He led me into his room and hurriedly hid a large parcel under his desk. It was obvious that he was very embarrassed. When I asked him what he was doing, he smiled guiltily and then put the parcel on the desk. He explained that his diet was so strict that he had to reward himself occasionally. Then he showed me the contents of the parcel. It contained five large bars of chocolate and three bags of sweets!

New words and expressions

- reward (title) /rɪˈwɜːrd/  n. 奖赏
- virtue (title) /ˈvɜːtjuː/ n. 美德
- diet (1.2) /ˈdaɪt/ n. 节食
- forbid (1.3) /fəˈbɪrd/ (forbade /fəˈbeɪd/, forbidden /fəˈbɜːdn/) v. 禁止
- hurriedly (1.7) /ˈhʌrdli/ adv. 匆忙地
- embarrass (1.8) /ɪmˈbærɑːs/ v. 使尴尬
- guiltily (1.9) /ˈɡɪltɪli/ adv. 内疚地
- strict (1.10) /strɪkt/ adj. 严格的
- reward (1.10) /rɪˈwɜːrd/ v. 给奖赏
- occasionally (1.10) /əˈkərɪənsli/ adv. 偶尔地

Notes on the text

1. Reward for virtue, virtue 作“美德”讲，此处指“节食”一事。
2. but things got so bad, 但是事情变得如此糟糕。get 作“变得”、“成为”讲。
3. go on a diet (= be on a diet), 实行节食。
4. first of all, 首先。
5. I paid him a visit. 我去拜访他。
6. as fat as ever, 像过去一样胖，其中的 as ever 实际上是状语从句 as he ever was 的省略形式。
7. It was obvious that he was very embarrassed. 显然他感到很尴尬。that 引导的从句是一个名词性从句，在句子中作主语，it 是先行主语。

参考译文

我的朋友休一直很胖，但是近来情况变得越发糟糕，以致他决定节食。他是一星期前开始节食的。首先，他开列了一张长长的单子，上面列了所有禁食的食物。这张单子上的大多数食物都是休喜欢吃的：黄油、土豆、米饭、啤酒、牛奶、巧克力和糖果。昨天我去看望了他。我按响了门铃，当看到休仍和往常一样胖时，我并不感到惊奇。他把我领进屋，慌忙把一个大包裹藏到了桌子下面。显然他感到很尴尬。当我问他正干什么时，他内
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.
回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 65 个单词。
1. Is Hugh fat or not? Has he gone on a diet or not? (so... that)
2. Has he forbidden himself all the foods he likes, or has he forbidden himself all the foods he does not like? Has he lost weight or not? (but)
3. What did he hide under his desk when the writer visited him yesterday?
4. Did the parcel contain chocolate and sweets, or did it contain biscuits?
5. Why did Hugh say that he had to reward himself occasionally? (because)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below.
用下列词组写出 2 至 3 个句子来。

I invited a friend to dinner — expensive restaurant — good meal — asked for the bill — not enough money — borrowed some from my guest.

Letter writing 书信写作

How to begin a letter: If you are writing to a person you do not know very well, you should begin as follows: Dear Mr. Brown, Dear Miss Williams, Dear Mrs. Smith. Always put a comma after the name.
写信如何开头: 如果你给一个不很熟悉的人写信, 应按如下方式开头: 亲爱的布朗先生, 亲爱的威廉斯小姐, 亲爱的史密斯夫人。在姓名之后总要加上一个逗号。

Exercise 练习

How would you begin a letter to: your sister, your friend Bill, your employer, your old headmaster?
给下列人写信应如何开头: 你的姐姐, 你的朋友比尔, 你的老板, 你的老校长。

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? 一般过去时 (KS27) (参见第 27 课关键句型)

Study these sentences carefully. The verbs in italics tell us what happened:
仔细阅读以下句子，用斜体印出的动词表示过去发生的动作:
I got on the bus and sat down.
我上了公共汽车并坐了下来。
The magazine I ordered was sent to the wrong address，我订的杂志送错了地址。
A fire broke out in our town recently and a large factory was burnt to the ground. 最近我们的城里起了一场火灾, 一家大工厂被彻底烧毁了。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what happened.
在课文中所有表示过去发生的动作的动词下面划上横线。
Unit 3  Lesson 51

B  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

My friend, Hugh, has always been fat, but things ________ (get) so bad recently that he ________ (decide) to go on a diet. He ________ (begin) his diet a week ago. First of all, he ________ (write) out a long list of all the foods which were forbidden. The list ________ (include) most of the things Hugh loves. Yesterday I ________ (pay) him a visit. I ________ (ring) the bell and ________ (not surprise) to see that Hugh was still as fat as ever. He ________ (lead) me into his room and hurriedly ________ (hide) a large parcel under his desk. It was obvious that he ________ (embarrass). When I ________ (ask) him what he was doing, he ________ (smile) guiltily and then ________ (put) the parcel on the desk. He ________ (explain) that his diet ________ (be) so strict that he ________ (have to) reward himself occasionally. Then he ________ (show) me the contents of the parcel. It ________ (contain) five large bars of chocolate and three bags of sweets!

Special difficulties

Verbs often confused 经常容易混淆的动词

Study these examples:

a  Raise and Rise.

That boy always raises his hand when I ask a question. 当我提问时, 那个男孩总举手。
That shelf was too low so we raised it a few inches. 那个架子太低了, 因此我们把它升高了几英寸。
Heavy rains have raised the level of the river this year. 大雨使今年河水的水位上升了。
I always rise at six o’clock. 我总是 6 点起床。
After the concert, everybody roose and clapped. 音乐会之后, 大家起立鼓掌。
The sun has just risen. 太阳刚刚升起。

b  Lay and Lie.

Lay those parcels on the floor, please. 请把那些包放在地板上。
Where’s my book? I laid it on that shelf a moment ago. 我的书在什么地方? 刚才我把它放在那个书架上。
Haven’t you laid the table yet? 你还没有把桌子摆好吗?
It’s nice to get up in the morning, but it’s nicer to lie in bed. 早上起床固然不错, 但躺在床上更好。
I lay in bed till 10 o’clock last Sunday morning. 上星期日早晨, 我一直躺到10点才起床。
The children are playing a game. They’ve all just lain on the grass. 孩子们正在玩游戏, 刚才他们都躺到草地上。

c  Beat and Win.

Arsenal beat Manchester United last Saturday. 上星期六阿森纳队战胜了曼彻斯特联队。
Arsenal won the game. 阿森纳队赢了这场比赛。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct verbs in the following sentences:

选择正确的动词:

1  Everybody (raised) (rose) when he entered the room.
2  I have been (laying) (lying) here for half an hour.
3  Mrs. Jones (laid) (lay) the table before breakfast.
4  The aeroplane (raised) (rose) into the air.
I'm not very good at chess. He always (wins) (beats) me.

“Did you (win) (beat) or lose?” I asked.

**Multiple choice questions 多項選擇題**

**Comprehension 理解**

1. The writer’s friend, Hugh, decided to go on a diet ________.
   - (a) and he lost a little weight
   - (b) but he didn’t lose any weight at all
   - (c) but he didn’t lose much weight
   - (d) and he lost a lot of weight

2. Hugh ________.
   - (a) has avoided eating chocolate and sweets
   - (b) has kept to a strict diet
   - (c) hasn’t kept to a strict diet
   - (d) has been very strict with himself

**Structure 句型**

3. My friend, Hugh, has always been fat. He still ________ fat.
   - (a) was
   - (b) has been
   - (c) has been
   - (d) is

4. How long ago ________ his diet?
   - (a) will he begin
   - (b) has he begun
   - (c) was he beginning
   - (d) did he begin

5. Most of the things he loves were included ________ the list.
   - (a) into
   - (b) on
   - (c) with
   - (d) in

6. Where did he ________ the parcel?
   - (a) hide
   - (b) hidden
   - (c) hid
   - (d) hiding

7. He smiled guiltily. He felt ________.
   - (a) guilt
   - (b) guiltily
   - (c) guiltless
   - (d) guilty

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. The foods were forbidden. He wasn’t ________ to eat them.
   - (a) left
   - (b) let
   - (c) allowed
   - (d) aloud

9. I paid him a visit. I ________.
   - (a) visited him
   - (b) made him visit
   - (c) did him a visit
   - (d) paid for a visit

10. He led me into his room. He ________ me into his room.
    - (a) steered
    - (b) pulled
    - (c) drove
    - (d) showed

11. He was very embarrassed. He felt ________.
    - (a) shy
    - (b) shameful
    - (c) hot
    - (d) uncomfortable

12. He had to reward himself occasionally. He had to reward himself ________.
    - (a) again and again
    - (b) now and again
    - (c) once again
    - (d) over and over again

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

I asked him what he was doing. He smiled guiltily. Then he put the parcel on the desk.
Lesson 52  A pretty carpet  漂亮的地毯

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What is the writer’s carpet made of?

We have just moved into a new house and I have been working hard all morning. I have been trying to get my new room in order. This has not been easy because I own over a thousand books. To make matters worse, the room is rather small, so I have temporarily put my books on the floor. At the moment, they cover every inch of floor space and I actually have to walk on them to get in or out of the room. A short while ago, my sister helped me to carry one of my old bookcases up the stairs. She went into my room and got a big surprise when she saw all those books on the floor. 'This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen,' she said. She gazed at it for some time then added, 'You don’t need bookcases at all. You can sit here in your spare time and read the carpet!'

New words and expressions 生词和短语

temporarily (11.4-5) /ˈtempərərli/ adv. 暂时地
inch (1.6) /ɪntʃ/ n. 英寸（度量单位）
space (1.6) /speis/ n. 空间
actually (1.6) /ˈæktʃuəli/ adv. 实际上

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. I have been working hard all morning. 我辛苦工作了整整一个上午。句中用了现在完成进行时，用来强调动作在某一段时间内一直在进行，而且动作有现在的结果。

2. get ... in order. 把……整理好。

3. to make matters worse. 更糟糕的是。

4. in your spare time. 你空闲的时候。

参考译文

我们刚刚搬进一所新房子。我辛苦工作了整整一个上午。我试图把我的新房间收拾整齐，但这并不容易，因为我有1,000多本书。更糟糕的是房间非常小，所以我把书放在了地板上。一会儿，我把地板的每一点空隙都占完了，实际上是在踩着这些书进出房间的。几分钟前，我妹妹帮我把一个旧书橱抬上了楼。她走进我的房间，当她看到地板上的那些书时，大吃一惊：“这是我见过的最漂亮的地毯，”她说。她盯着“地毯”看了一会儿，又说：“你根本用不着书橱，空闲时你可以坐在这儿读地毯!”
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.

1. Has the writer been trying to get his new room in order all morning or not?
2. Why has this proved difficult? Do they cover every inch of floor space at the moment or not? (because ... which)
3. What did his sister help him to do a short while ago?
4. Did she get a surprise when she saw his room or not? Did she think that the books made a pretty carpet, or did she find the room untidy? (but)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. I moved into a new room. Three workmen brought my things upstairs. (When)
2. There were several cases of clothes. There were hundreds of books. (not only ... but ... as well)
3. The pile was as high as the ceiling. I could not get into my room. (Since)

Letter writing 书信写作

How would you begin letters to: your cousin Ted, your bank manager, your friend Mary, your grandfather?

Key structures 关键句型

What has happened? What has been happening? (KS28) （参见第 28 课关键句型）

Compare these pairs of sentences:

1. It hasn't rained for six weeks. 已经 6 个星期没有下雨了。
   I: has been raining hard since yesterday and it is still raining. 昨天以来一直下雨, 而且现在还在下着。
2. He has rung me up five times since 12 o'clock. 从 12 点以来他已经给我打了 5 次电话。
   He has been ringing me up all morning. 整个上午他一直在给我打电话。
3. He has never stayed at this hotel before. 他从未在这家酒店住过。
   He has been staying at this hotel for the last three weeks. 过去的 3 个星期他一直住这家酒店。
4. I have read 'Oliver Twist' five times. 《雾都孤儿》我已读了 5 遍。
   I have been reading all afternoon. 整个下午我一直在看书。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage that tell us what has happened and what has been happening.

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
Unit 3 Lesson 52

We have just (move) into a new house and I (work) hard all morning. I (try) to get my new room in order. This (not be) easy because I own over a thousand books. The room is rather small, so I have temporarily (put) my books on the floor. My sister got a big surprise when she saw all those books on the floor. ‘This is the prettiest carpet I ever (see),’ she said.

C What has happened? What has been happening? Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

‘I (explain) this to you several times already,’ said the teacher. ‘I hope you (understand) it now.’ Then he looked at a little boy at the back of the class. ‘(Listen), Jones?’ he asked. ‘Here is a simple problem: “Sally (work) in an office for thirty-four weeks. In that time, she (earn) £300 a week. How much (she) (earn) so far?”’

‘Please, sir,’ Jones answered, ‘I can only answer your first question. I (not listen).’

Special difficulties 难点

I have been working hard all morning. (11.1 -2) 现在完成进行时

Compare these pairs of sentences:
She has a beautiful voice. She sings beautifully.
He is a slow worker. He works slowly.
He is a hard worker. He works hard.
He is a fast driver. He drives fast.

Now compare these pairs of sentences:
The train arrived very late. 这列火车到得很晚。
Have you travelled by train lately? 最近你有没有乘火车旅行?
He worked very hard. 他工作非常努力。
He hardly ever does any work. 他几乎从不工作。
The plane flew very high. 飞机飞得很高。
He thinks very highly of me. 他对我的评价很好。
He made sure it was safe before he went near. 他确信是安全的以后才走近。
He was nearly run over by a car. 他差一点儿被一辆汽车撞倒。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

1 She dusted the furniture very (careful) (carefully).
2 I hit him very (hardly) (hard).
3 This exercise is not (hard) (hardly).
4 I got home from work very (lately) (late) last night.
5 I (near) (nearly) missed the bus this morning.
6 He ran so (fastly) (fast) no one could keep up with him.
7 I can’t jump so (highly) (high).
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The writer owns over a thousand books so ________.
   (a) he can't get in and out of his room  (b) he is finding it difficult to get his room in order
   (c) his sister can't get into his room  (d) he can't get them on to his bookcases

2. The writer's sister thinks ________.
   (a) the books look untidy  (b) the bookcases aren't big enough
   (c) the books make a nice carpet  (d) he needs more bookcases than he has

Structure 句型

3. He has been working all morning and he ________ hard.
   (a) still works  (b) has still worked  (c) is still working  (d) still worked

4. He's been trying to get his room in order. He wants to ________.
   (a) make it tidy  (b) keep it tidy  (c) made order  (d) keep order

5. His room is rather small. It's ________ room.
   (a) a small enough  (b) a fairly small  (c) terribly small  (d) a much smaller

6. She helped him ________ one of his old bookcases up the stairs.
   (a) carrying  (b) to carrying  (c) for carrying  (d) carry

7. The writer ________ bookcases.
   (a) needn't  (b) needs not  (c) doesn't need  (d) isn't needing

Vocabulary 词汇

8. He has temporarily put his books on the floor. They won't be there ________.
   (a) for a short time  (b) long  (c) for a few days  (d) for a few hours

9. The books cover every inch of floor space. They take up a lot of ________.
   (a) room  (b) place  (c) area  (d) spaces

10. He actually has to walk on them. He can't do ________.
    (a) else  (b) different  (c) otherwise  (d) other

11. She gazed at the carpet for some time. She ________ it.
    (a) watched  (b) stared at  (c) glanced at  (d) had a glimpse of

12. You can sit here in your spare time. You can sit here when you're ________.
    (a) working  (b) studying  (c) not working  (d) reading

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，完成后对照课文第 3-4 行，核对你的答案。

What makes matters worse is that the room is rather small.

To __________________________________________________________________________.
Lesson 53  Hot snake  触电的蛇

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What caused the fire?
火灾是什么原因引起的？

At last firemen have put out a big forest fire in California. Since then, they have been trying to find out how the fire began. Forest fires are often caused by broken glass or by cigarette ends which people carelessly throw away. Yesterday the firemen examined the ground carefully, but were not able to find any broken glass. They were also quite sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire. This morning, however, a firemen accidentally discovered the cause. He noticed the remains of a snake which was wound round the electric wires of a 16,000-volt power line. In this way, he was able to solve the mystery. The explanation was simple but very unusual. A bird had snatched up the snake from the ground and then dropped it on to the wires. The snake then wound itself round the wires. When it did so, it sent sparks down to the ground and these immediately started a fire.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

hot (title) /hot/ adj. 带电的，充电的
fireman (1.1) /'faɪmən/ n. 消防队员
cause (1.3) /kɔːz/ v. 引起；n. 原因
examine (1.4) /ɪg'zæmɪn/ v. 检查
accidentally (1.7) /ək'sɪdentlɪ/ adv. 偶然地
remains (1.8) /rɪ'meinz/ n. 尸体，残骸
wire (1.9) /'waɪr/ n. 电线
volt (1.9) /vɔlt/ n. 伏特（电压单位）
power line (1.9) /'paʊə-lain/ 电力线
solve (1.9) /sɒlv/ v. 解决
mystery (1.9) /'mɪstrɪ/ n. 谜
snatch (1.10) /snætʃ/ v. 抓住
spark (1.11) /spɑːk/ n. 电火花

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 at last, 最后，终于。
2 they have been trying to find out how the fire began, 他们一直试图找出起火的原因。句中短语动词 find out 的宾语是一个从句 how the fire began。
3 broken glass, 碎玻璃。
4 cigarette ends, 烟头。
5 in this way, 就这样。

参考译文

消防队员们终于扑灭了加利福尼亚的一场森林大火。从那时起，他们一直试图找出起火的原因。森林火灾时常由破碎的玻璃或人们随手扔掉的香烟头引起。昨天，消防队员仔细查看了地面，但未能发现碎玻璃，他们还肯定火灾也不是由烟头引起的。然而今天上午，一个消防队员偶然发现了起火的原因。他发现了缠绕在16,000伏高压线上的一条死蛇。就这样，他解开了起火之谜。解释很简单，却异乎寻常。一只鸟把蛇从地上抓
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 85 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 85 个单词。
1. Have firemen put out a big forest fire in California or not? Have they been trying to discover its cause? (Now that ...)
2. Was there any evidence that it was started by broken glass or by a cigarette end or not?
3. Who has just solved the mystery? (However)
4. What did he notice? Had it been dropped by a bird on to the electric wires or not? (which)
5. Where did the snake wind itself? What had it sent to the ground? Did this cause the fire or not? (In winding ... and)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下词组写出 2 至 3 个句子来:
I was smoking in bed — went to sleep — suddenly woke up — the sheet was burning — I jumped up — put the fire out — a big hole in the sheet.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write your home address, the date and the beginning of a letter to a married woman you do not know well.
给一位你不很熟悉的已婚女子写信，写出你家的地址、日期和信的开头。

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? What has happened? (KS29) What has been happening? (KS52)
一般过去时、现在完成时和现在完成进行时（参见第 29, 52 课关键句型）

Study these examples:
仔细阅读以下例子:
I stayed at this hotel five years ago. 5 年前我在这家酒店住过。
Have you ever stayed at this hotel? 你曾在这家酒店住过吗?
I have been staying at this hotel for three weeks. 我已在这家酒店住了 3 个星期了。

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what happened, what has happened, and what has been happening.
划出课文中表示一般过去时、现在完成时和现在完成进行时的动词来。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案:
At last firemen ________ (put) out a big forest fire in California. Since then, they ________ (try) to find out how the fire ________ (begin). Yesterday the firemen ________ (examine) the ground carefully, but ________ (not be) able to find any broken glass. They ________ (be) also quite sure that a cigarette end ________ (not start) the fire.
Unit 3 Lesson 53

C What happened? What has happened? What has been happening? Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Supply speech marks and commas where necessary and arrange the passage into paragraphs. (KS26)

Jack _______ (look) at his watch for the twentieth time. Suddenly Jill _______ (arrive). I _______ (wait) for over an hour he said angrily. You never come on time. Oh, is that so? Jill _______ (answer). _______ (Be) you here at 2.30? Jack _______ (go) red. Well he _______ (say) I _______ (get) here five minutes late myself, but you _______ (not be) here. I _______ (come) here at exactly 2.30 Jill _______ (say) and I _______ (wait) for five minutes, but you _______ (not come). What you _______ (do) since then? Jack _______ (ask). I just _______ (be) to the hairdresser's Jill _______ (answer) brightly.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a Throw to, Throw at, and Throw away.

Forest fires are often caused by cigarette ends which people carelessly throw away. (11.2-4)

He threw the ball to me and I caught it. 男孩向我扔球，我接住了。

The boy threw a stone at the window and broke it. 男孩向窗户扔了一块石头把玻璃打碎了。

b Quite and Quiet.

They were also quite sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire. (11.5-6)

The class kept very quiet during the lesson. 上课时全班都很安静。

c Cause and Reason.

A fireman discovered the cause of the fire. (1.7)

What caused the fire? 什么原因引起了这场大火?

That is the reason why he left. 那是他离开的缘由。

I reasoned with him for hours, but I couldn’t persuade him to change his mind. 我劝了他几个小时，但我没能说服他改变主意。

d Drop and Fall.

A bird had dropped the snake on to the wires. (11.10-11)

He fell down the stairs and broke his leg. 他从楼梯上摔下来，断了一条腿。

Exercise 练习

Use each of the words given above in sentences of your own.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Firemen examined the ground carefully because they _______.
(a) were looking for cigarette ends
(b) were looking for broken glass
(c) wanted to find out what had caused the fire
(d) were looking for a snake
2 The fire had been caused by ________.
(a) a bird which flew on to the wires
(b) a snake which climbed on to the wires
(c) a bird which was eating a snake
(d) a snake which had been dropped on to the wires by a bird

Structure 句型
3 The firemen have been examining the ground ________ yesterday.
   (a) since (b) for (c) ago (d) by
4 Broken glass often ________ fires.
   (a) is causing (b) has caused (c) causes (d) is caused by
5 They were quite sure it wasn’t a cigarette end. They were ________.
   (a) almost certain (b) fairly certain (c) completely certain (d) nearly certain
6 He was able to solve the mystery. He ________.
   (a) could if he wanted to (b) could but he didn’t want to
   (c) succeeded in solving it (d) didn’t succeed in solving it
7 The bird had snatched the snake from the ground. The snake had been ________ the ground.
   (a) at (b) from (c) over (d) on

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Firemen have put out the fire. They have ________.
   (a) controlled it (b) checked it (c) extinguished it (d) turned it off
9 Firemen discovered the cause ________.
   (a) today morning (b) today in the morning
   (c) in the morning today (d) this morning
10 They discovered the cause of the fire accidentally. They discovered it ________.
    (a) by chance (b) chancily (c) fortunately (d) luckily
11 In this way he was able to solve the mystery. ________ he did it.
    (a) That’s so (b) Like this (c) That’s how (d) So
12 The bird had snatched up the snake from the ground. It had ________ it.
    (a) taken (b) pulled (c) seized (d) carried

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 11 行，核对你的答案。
In doing so, it sent sparks down to the ground.
When ____________________________.
First listen and then answer the question.

What two interruptions did the writer have?

After breakfast, I sent the children to school and then I went to the shops. It was still early when I returned home. The children were at school, my husband was at work and the house was quiet. So I decided to make some meat pies. In a short time I was busy mixing butter and flour and my hands were soon covered with sticky pastry.

At exactly that moment, the telephone rang. Nothing could have been more annoying. I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized the voice of Helen Bates. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later. At last I hung up the receiver. What a mess!

There was pastry on my fingers, on the telephone, and on the doorknobs. I had no sooner got back to the kitchen than the doorbell rang loud enough to wake the dead. This time it was the postman and he wanted me to sign for a registered letter!

New words and expressions

sticky (title) /'stiki/ adj. 粘的
finger (title) /'fingə/ n. 手指
pie (1.4) /pi/ n. 饼
mix (1.4) /mɪks/ v. 混合, 拌和
pastry (1.5) /ˈpeɪstri/ n. 面糊
annoying (1.7) /əˈnoʊɪŋ/ adj. 恼人的
receiver (1.7) /ˈrɛsɪvr/ n. 电话的话筒

Notes on the text

1. The children were at school, my husband was at work. 孩子们在学校，丈夫在上班。
2. at exactly that moment, 恰恰在此时。
3. I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers. 我用两个沾满面糊的手指提起话筒。
4. ring back later, 晚一点再来电话。
5. What a mess! 真是糟糕透了，真狼狈。
6. I had no sooner got back to the kitchen than the doorbell rang loud enough to wake the dead. 我刚回厨房，门铃又响了起来，响声足以把死人唤醒。no sooner ... than ... 的句型有“刚……就……”的意思。短语 loud enough to wake the dead 用来作状语，修饰 rang。注意 enough 作为副词要用在形容词或副词之后。
7. a registered letter, 挂号信。
Clearing and returned from the shops, I was busy stirring eggs and flour, very soon my hand is covered with yellow and white. Suddenly the telephone rang. I spoke to Helen Bates. She wanted me to look at the mess in the kitchen. Just then the doorbell rang. The man wanted me to make a pie.
Unit 3 Lesson 54

Is there any news in the paper? There is some interesting news in the paper.

Did the storm do any damage? The storm did some damage to the crops.

Did you do any work yesterday? I did some work before breakfast.

Did you bring any luggage? I have some luggage in the car.

b Compare these pairs of sentences:

He was very poor years ago, but now he is a rich man.
The rich should help the poor.

She was born deaf and blind.
There are many organizations to help the deaf and the blind.

c Compare these pairs of sentences:

The school in our village was built last year.
The children went to school early this morning.

We need a new cinema and a new theatre.
I often go to the cinema and the theatre.

d Compare these sentences:

It is the most interesting exhibition I have ever seen.
Most people enjoyed it.

It is the biggest shop in London.
Most shops are closed on Saturday afternoon.

Exercises 练习

A Underline the words a, the and some in the passage.

B Put in the words a, the and some where necessary. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

After ________ breakfast, I sent ________ children to school and then I went to ________ shops. It was still early when I returned home. ________ children were at ________ school, my husband was at ________ work, and ________ house was quiet. So I decided to make ________ meat pies. In ________ short time I was busy mixing ________ butter and ________ flour and my hands were soon covered with ________ sticky pastry. At exactly that moment, ________ telephone rang. Nothing could have been more annoying. I picked up ________ receiver between ________ two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized ________ voice of Helen Bates. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later. At last I hung up ________ receiver. What ________ mess! There was ________ pastry on my fingers, on ________ telephone, and on ________ door-knobs. I had no sooner got back to ________ kitchen than ________ doorbell rang loud enough to wake ________ dead. This time it was ________ postman and he wanted me to sign for ________ registered letter!
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The telephone rang ________.
   (a) at a convenient time    (b) when the house was empty
   (c) when the tarts were in the oven    (d) at an inconvenient time

2 Everything got into a mess because ________.
   (a) the writer was making meat pies
   (b) the writer was interrupted several times while making meat pies
   (c) the writer answered the telephone
   (d) the writer opened the front door

Structure 句型

3 ________ breakfast is the first meal of the day.
   (a) The    (b) A   (c) This   (d) —

4 She returned home. She was ________ home all morning.
   (a) to    (b) at    (c) in    (d) on

5 Nothing could have been more annoying. It was ________ annoying thing that could have happened.
   (a) the more    (b) more    (c) most    (d) the most

6 Whose voice did she recognize? Helen ________.
   (a) Bate's    (b) Bates'    (c) Bates    (d) Bate

7 She had hardly got back to the kitchen ________ the doorbell rang.
   (a) when    (b) than    (c) as    (d) as soon as

Vocabulary 词汇

8 She was busy mixing butter and flour. She was ________.
   (a) joining them    (b) uniting them    (c) unifying them    (d) putting them together

9 Pastry is as sticky as ________.
   (a) ink    (b) water    (c) glue    (d) flour

10 She was dismayed when she heard Helen Bates. She felt ________.
   (a) pity    (b) sorry    (c) ill    (d) tired

11 She hung up the receiver. This means she ________.
   (a) let it hang    (b) didn’t put it back    (c) held it    (d) put it back in its place

12 She has just ________ up the receiver.
   (a) hanged    (b) hang    (c) hanging    (d) hung

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers. I was dismayed. I recognized the voice of Helen Bates.
Lesson 55  Not a gold mine  非金矿

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What did the team find?

Dreams of finding lost treasure almost came true recently. A new machine called ‘The Revealer’ has been invented and it has been used to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. The machine was used in a cave near the seashore where — it is said — pirates used to hide gold. The pirates would often bury gold in the cave and then fail to collect it. Armed with the new machine, a search party went into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. The leader of the party was examining the soil near the entrance to the cave when the machine showed that there was gold under the ground. Very excited, the party dug a hole two feet deep. They finally found a small gold coin which was almost worthless. The party then searched the whole cave thoroughly but did not find anything except an empty tin trunk. In spite of this, many people are confident that ‘The Revealer’ may reveal something of value fairly soon.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

- gold (title) /gəʊld/ n. 金子
- mine (title) /maɪn/ n. 矿
- treasure (1.1) /ˈtreʒə/ n. 财宝
- revealer (1.2) /rɪˈviələ/ n. 探测器
- invent (1.2) /ɪnˈvent/ v. 发明
- detect (1.3) /dɪˈtekt/ v. 探测
- bury (1.3) /ˈbɜːrri/ v. 埋藏
- cave (1.4) /kɛv/ n. 洞
- seashore (1.4) /ˈsiːʃɔː/ n. 海岸
- pirate (1.5) /ˈpɛərəit/ n. 海盗
- arm (1.6) /ɑːm/ v. 武装
- soil (1.8) /soʊl/ n. 泥土
- entrance (1.8) /ˈentəns/ n. 入口
- finally (1.10) /ˈfɪnəli/ adv. 最后
- worthless (1.10) /ˈwɜːθləs/ adj. 毫无价值的
- thoroughly (1.10) /ˈθɔːrəli/ adv. 彻底地
- trunk (1.11) /trʌŋk/ n. 行李箱
- confident (1.11) /ˈkɒnfɪdənt/ adj. 有信心的
- value (1.12) /ˈvæljuː/ n. 价值

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 Dreams of finding lost treasure almost came true recently. 近来，找到丢失宝藏的梦想变现实
2 it is said 是插入语，当“据说”讲。课文中用破折号把插入语与正文隔开，给人以临时插入的感觉。
3 The pirates would often bury gold in the cave and then fail to collect it. 海盗们埋金子在洞里，但后来却没取走。would 表述过去的习惯性动作，fail 后面接动词不定式表示否定。
4 armed with the new machine，由于装备着这台新机器。这里过去分词短语作状语，表示伴随状态。
5 hoping to find buried treasure, 希望能找到埋在洞里的金子。现在分词短语作状语，表示目的。
6 a hole two feet deep, 两英尺深的洞。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.
回答下列问题，每个问题都要是一个段落，不要超过65个单词。
1. Is 'The Revealer' a new machine or an old machine? Is it used for detecting buried gold or not? (which)
2. Did a search party use this machine or not? Where did they try to find gold recently? (Using this machine ...)
3. Did they examine the cave thoroughly or not? Did they only find a small gold coin? Was it valuable or was it practically worthless? (Although ... which)
4. Do many people believe that the machine may reveal something of value soon or not? (However)

Composition 写作

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下提示写出2至3个句子来：
I was digging in the garden — lost a gold ring — searched everywhere — dug up the garden — did not find it — found a valuable old coin instead.

Letter writing 书信写作

Arrange this heading in the correct order:
按书信要求排列以下信头：
Seventoaks, 17 Bunyan St., England, Kent, 27th March, 19__

Now write the first sentence of a letter to a friend beginning: 'I was very pleased to ...'
写出给朋友的信的第一句话，用"I was very pleased to ..."开头。

Key structures 关键句型

Pirates would often bury gold in the cave and then fail to collect it. 表示过去习惯性动作。
A Study these sentences carefully:
仔细阅读以下句子：
I dropped my briefcase as I was getting off the bus. (KS7) (第7课关键句型)
I used to go to work by bus. Now I go by car. (KS31) (第31课关键句型)
I have given up smoking. I used to smoke very heavily. 我已戒烟。过去我抽得很厉害。 (KS31) (第31课关键句型)
When we refer to a definite time in the past, we can sometimes use *would* in place of *used to*. We cannot, for instance, use *would* in this sentence:

This sort of novel *used to* be very popular.

But note the use of *would* in these sentences:

- When I was young I used to have a lot more free time than I do now. I used to live near my work and *would* always get home early. Sometimes I *would* do a bit of gardening or go for a long walk. Now I never have time for anything like that. When I was young, I used to have a lot more free time than I do now. I used to live near my work and *would* always get home early. Sometimes I *would* do a bit of gardening or go for a long walk. Now I never have time for anything like that.

**Exercises 练习**

A. Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us *what happened, what was happening* and *what used to/ would happen*.

In the passage below, underline the verbs which indicate past events, events happening at the time of speaking, and past habitual actions.

B. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

The machine *is used* to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. The machine was used in a cave near the seashore where — it is said — pirates *used to* hide gold. The pirates often *are used to* bury (bury) gold in the cave and then *are used to* fail (fail) to collect it. Armed with the new machine, a search party *is used to* go (go) into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. The leader of the party *is used to* examine (examine) the soil near the entrance to the cave when the machine *is used to* show (show) that there *is used to* be (be) gold under the ground. Very excited, the party *is used to* dig (dig) a hole two feet deep. They finally *is used to* find (find) a small gold coin which was almost worthless.

**Special difficulties 难点**

**Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词**

a. *I use, I am used to, I used to.*

Study these examples:

- The machine has been used to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. The machine was used in a cave near the seashore where — it is said — pirates used to hide gold. (II.3-5)
- I am used to staying up late. (KS44) (第44课关键句型)
- I am used to looking after myself. (KS34) (第34课关键句型)
- She didn't like this district at first, but she is used to it now. 她刚开始不喜欢这个地区，但现在习惯了。

**Exercise 练习**

Choose the correct form of the verbs given in parentheses:

1. He (is used to) (used to) work sixteen hours a day.
2. I (use to) (used to) see him often.
3. He always (use) (used to) scented soap.
4. He (used to) (is used to) buy two bars of chocolate a day.
5. I couldn’t stand the noise at first but I (am used to) (used to) it now.
6. I (am used to) (used to) swimming in cold water.
Gold and Golden.

Study these examples:

It has been used to detect gold. (II.2-3)
He has a gold watch.
He missed a golden opportunity.

Exercise

Supply gold or golden:

1. All that glitters is not ___________.
2. Silence is ___________.

Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1. The search party was looking for _________.
   (a) gold    (b) a gold mine    (c) pirates    (d) a tin trunk
2. The search for gold proved that ‘The Revealer’ _________.
   (a) works very well    (b) doesn’t work well    (c) is quite useless    (d) isn’t very good

Structure

3. ‘The Revealer’ has been used for ________ gold.
   (a) to detect    (b) detecting    (c) detect    (d) detected
4. Pirates used to hide gold there, _________.
   (a) and they always do    (b) and they still do    (c) and they still do sometimes    (d) that’s what they would do
5. They hoped to find buried treasure. They hoped they ________ it.
   (a) would find    (b) had found    (c) will find    (d) are going to find
6. Where did they ________ the hole?
   (a) dig    (b) digging    (c) dug    (d) have dug
7. How ________ was the hole?
   (a) deeply    (b) depth    (c) deep    (d) down

Vocabulary

8. ‘The Revealer’ is a very good ________.
   (a) machine    (b) engine    (c) machinery    (d) mechanic
9. The leader of the party was examining the soil. He was _________.
   (a) testing it    (b) looking at it carefully    (c) watching it    (d) trying it
10. The coin was almost worthless. So it was of small _________.
    (a) worthy    (b) honour    (c) price    (d) value
11. They searched the cave thoroughly. They searched it _________.
    (a) completely    (b) across    (c) inside    (d) finally
12. Some people are confident. They ________ the machine will be useful.
    (a) confide    (b) believe    (c) confuse    (d) confess
Lesson 56  Faster than sound!  比声音还快!

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音, 然后回答以下问题。
How fast did the winning car go?

Once a year, a race is held for old cars. A lot of cars entered for this race last year and there was a great deal of excitement just before it began. One of the most handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost. The most unusual car was a Benz which had only three wheels. Built in 1885, it was the oldest car taking part. After a great many loud explosions, the race began. Many of the cars broke down on the course and some drivers spent more time under their cars than in them! A few cars, however, completed the race. The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour — much faster than any of its rivals. It sped downhill at the end of the race and its driver had a lot of trouble trying to stop it. The race gave everyone a great deal of pleasure. It was very different from modern car races but no less exciting.

New words and expressions

sound (title) /saʊnd/ n. 声音  
excitement (1.2) /ɪk'saɪtment/ n. 激动, 兴奋  
handsome (1.3) /'hændsəm/ adj. 漂亮的, 美观的  
Rolls-Royce (1.3) /ˈraʊlz-ˈrois/ 罗尔斯－罗伊斯  
Benz (1.4) /bɛnz/ n. 奔驰  
wheel (1.5) /wiːl/ n. 轮子  
explosion (1.6) /ɪkˈsploʊʒən/ n. 爆炸, 轰响  
course (1.7) /kɔːs/ n. 跑道, 行程  
rival (1.9) /ˈrɪvəl/ n. 对手  
speed (1.9) /spiːd/ (sped /sped/, sped) v. 疾驰  
downhill (1.9) /ˌdaʊnˈhɪl/ adv. 下坡

Notes on the text

1. once a year, 每年一次。
2. A lot of cars entered for this race last year. 去年许许多多车参加了这项比赛。
3. a great deal of, 大量的, 后面接不可数名词。
4. break down, 抛锚, 出故障。
5. some drivers spent more time under their cars than in them! 有些驾驶员花在汽车底下的时间比坐在车子里里面的时间长。under the car 是指在车底下修理, in the car 是指正常驾驶。句中的 under 和 in 都是状语, 主要是用来对比, 有强调的意味, 要重读。
6. its driver had a lot of trouble trying to stop it, 驾驶员费了很大劲才把车停了下来。
7. but no less exciting, 但激动人心的程度并不亚于现代汽车大赛。这是一句省略句, 完整的句子应是 but it was no less exciting than modern car races。

参考译文

旧式汽车的比赛每年举行一次。去年有很多汽车参加了这项比赛。比赛开始之前, 人们异常激动。最漂亮的汽车之一是罗尔斯－罗伊斯生产的银鬼汽车, 而最不寻常的一辆则要数只有 3 只轮子的奔驰牌汽车了。该车
Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. Did a lot of old cars enter for the race or not? How often is it held? (which)
2. What could be heard when they set off? Did many cars break down during the race or not? Did a few manage to complete the course or not? (and though)
3. Did the winning car go downhill quickly or slowly? When did its driver have a lot of difficulty trying to stop it? (so quickly...that)

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses. Where necessary omit the words in italics.

1. There was a loud explosion. My old car stopped. (and)
2. I got out. I wanted to have a look at the engine. (to)
3. Then a man passed me. He was driving a large modern car. (a man who)
4. I waved to him. He did not stop. (but)
5. I passed the large car later. Its driver was changing a wheel. (When)

Learn the following opening phrases by heart:

I am sorry it has taken me so long to write, but ...
I was glad to hear from you at last and to learn that ...

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.

Do you remember these sentences: (KS32)
He is as old as I am. 他与我同龄。
She is not as intelligent as we think. 她并不像我们想像的那样聪明。
There is little I can do to help him. 我帮不了他多少忙。
There were few people in the shop. 商店里几乎没有人。
There isn’t much whisky, but you can have a little. 威士忌酒不多,但你可以喝一点。
There aren’t many apples, but you can pick a few. 苹果不多了,但你可摘一些。

A lot of cars entered for this race.

He is as old as I am. 他与我同龄。
She is not as intelligent as we think. 她并不像我们想像的那样聪明。
There is little I can do to help him. 我帮不了他多少忙。
There were few people in the shop. 商店里几乎没有人。
There isn’t much whisky, but you can have a little. 威士忌酒不多,但你可以喝一点。
There aren’t many apples, but you can pick a few. 苹果不多了,但你可摘一些。
b Now study these sentences:

Instead of saying:
There isn't much I can do to help him.

Many of our products are sold overseas.

We can say:
There isn't a lot I can do to help him.

There isn't a great deal I can do to help him.

A lot of our products are sold overseas.

A great many of our products are sold overseas.

A great number of our products are sold overseas.

c Study these sentences:

Instead of saying:
My jacket is like yours.

We can say:
My jacket is the same as yours.

My jacket isn't like yours.

Exercises 练习

A How many comparisons can you find in the passage? Underline them. Note the use of the following:

a lot of, a great deal of, a great many, a few, and different from.

B Supply the missing words in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

Once a year a race is held for old cars. A ________ ________ cars entered for this race last year and there was a great ________ ________ of excitement just before it began. One of the ________ handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost. The ________ unusual car was a Benz which had only three wheels. Built in 1885, it was the ________ (old) car taking part. After a great ________ loud explosions, the race began. ________ of the cars broke down on the course and some drivers spent ________ ________ time under their cars than ________ in them! A ________ cars, however, completed the race. The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour — much faster ________ any of its rivals. It sped downhill at the end of the race and its driver had a ________ ________ trouble trying to stop it. The race gave everyone a great ________ ________ ________ of pleasure. It was very different ________ ________ modern car races but no ________ exciting.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study the examples given under each heading:

a Handsome (1.3), Beautiful, Pretty, Good-looking.

He is a very handsome young man. 他是一个非常清秀的年青人。
She used to be very pretty as a child. She is now a beautiful woman. 孩提时她很好看。现在是个漂亮的女子。
She’s a very good-looking girl, and her boyfriend’s good-looking too. 她是个很好看的女孩，男朋友也很好看。

b Reach and Arrive in/at.

The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour. (1.8-9)
Unit 3 Lesson 56

Will you pass me that book please? I can’t reach it. 你能把那本书递给我吗？我够不着。

We arrived in New York yesterday. We arrived at the station in good time. 我们昨天到达纽约。我们及时到站。

c Take Part and Take Place.
It was the oldest car taking part. (1.5)
The next race will take place in a year’s time. 下一次比赛会在一年后举行。

Exercise 练习

Write eight sentences using each of the above words.
用以上 8 个词各造一个句子。

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 What was unusual about the car race?
   (a) The Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost. (b) The Benz which was built in 1885.
   (c) All the cars were old. (d) There were many loud explosions.
2 A lot of cars took part in the race, __________.
   (a) but only a few completed the course (b) and they all completed the course
   (c) and most of them completed the course (d) but only one of them completed the course

Structure 句型

3 A lot of cars entered for this race. There were ________ cars in it.
   (a) much (b) lot of (c) lots of (d) plenty
4 ________ in 1885, so it was the oldest car in the race.
   (a) It built (b) Built (c) It was built (d) Having built
5 It was the oldest car taking part. There wasn’t ________ one.
   (a) an older (b) the oldest (c) an elder (d) the eldest
6 It reached a speed of forty miles an hour. It ________ forty miles an hour.
   (a) ran (b) ran with (c) went at (d) drove with
7 It was different from modern cars. It wasn’t ________ modern cars.
   (a) the same as (b) the same with (c) same with (d) same as

Vocabulary 词汇

8 One of the most handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce. It was a ________ car.
   (a) pretty (b) beautiful (c) seemly (d) nice
9 The most unusual car was a Benz. It wasn’t a ________ car.
   (a) used (b) common (c) vulgar (d) accustomed
10 There were many loud explosions. There were many loud ________.
    (a) knocks (b) hits (c) bangs (d) thumps
11 Many of the cars broke down. They ________.
    (a) were in pieces (b) were broken up (c) couldn’t go (d) were spoilt
12 It went faster than any of its rivals. It went faster than its ________.
    (a) opponents (b) enemies (c) competitors (d) partners
Lesson 57  Can I help you, madam? 您要买什么, 夫人?

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Did the woman get what she wanted?

A woman in jeans stood at the window of an expensive shop. Though she hesitated for a moment, she finally went in and asked to see a dress that was in the window. The assistant who served her did not like the way she was dressed. Glancing at her scornfully, he told her that the dress was sold. The woman walked out of the shop angrily and decided to punish the assistant next day. She returned to the shop the following morning dressed in a fur coat, with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other. After seeking out the rude assistant, she asked for the same dress. Not realizing who she was, the assistant was eager to serve her this time. With great difficulty, he climbed into the shop window to get the dress. As soon as she saw it, the woman said she did not like it. She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

madam (title) /'mædəm/ n.（对妇女的尊称）

jeans (1.1) /dʒiːnz/ n. 牛仔裤

hesitate (1.2) /'hezɪteɪt/ v. 犹豫, 迟疑

serve (1.3) /sɜːv/ v. 接待（顾客）

scornfully (1.4) /ˈskɔːrnfləli/ adv. 轻蔑地

punish (1.6) /ˈpʌnɪʃ/ v. 惩罚

fur (1.7) /fɜːr/ n. 被皮

eager (1.9) /ˈeɪdʒər/ adj. 热切的, 热情的

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 Can I help you, Madam? 您要买什么, 夫人? 这是售货员的常用语。
2 A woman in jeans, 一位穿着牛仔裤的妇女。
3 She returned to the shop the following morning dressed in a fur coat, with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other. 第二天上午她又来到这家商店, 穿着一件裘皮大衣, 一手拎着一只手提包, 另一只手拿着一把长柄伞。dressed in a fur coat 是过去分词短语作状语, 表示伴随状态。
4 seek out, 找出, 找到。
5 Not realizing who she was, 没有认出她是谁, 这是现在分词短语的否定形式。
6 She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window. 她开心地迫使那位售货员把橱窗里几乎所有的东西都拿了出来。enjoy oneself, 开心。

参考译文

一位穿着牛仔裤的妇女站在一家高档商店的橱窗前。她虽然犹豫了片刻, 但终于还是走进了商店, 要求把陈列在橱窗里的一件衣服拿给她看。接待她的售货员不喜欢她的那副打扮, 轻蔑地看了她一眼后, 便告诉她那
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 80 个单词。

1. Did the woman in jeans hesitate for a moment or not? Did she enter an expensive shop or not? What did she ask to see? (Though ... and)
2. What did an assistant tell her? When did the woman return? Was she dressed in a fur coat or not? (On being told by)
3. What was the assistant eager to do this time?
4. What did she make him bring her? What did the woman finally buy? (After making)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下词组写出 2 至 3 句子来:
The owner of a shop wanted to see how polite his assistants were — dressed as a tramp — went into his shop — asked to see a suit — was thrown out.

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart:
熟记以下两个开头语:
What a surprise it was to ...
Forgive me for not writing earlier, but ...

Exercise 练习

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.
用以上两个开头语写出两小段文字，每段不超过两句话。

Key structures 关键句型

At, In, Off and With (Compare KS9, KS33) (对比第 9, 33 课关键句型)

a Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics.
仔细阅读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的词。
Phrases with at. 带 at 的短语
He lives at 27 West Street. 他住在西大街 27 号。
A large crowd was waiting at the bus stop. 一大群人在公共汽车站等候。
I'll see you at the station. 我到车站送你。
On the way home, we stopped at a small village called Puddleton. 在回家的路上，我们在一个叫普都顿的小村逗留。
Someone is at the door. 有人敲门。
Phrases with **in**.

There were a lot of people in the street. 街上有许多人。
I would like to live in a warm country. 我喜欢住在一个气候温暖的国家。
He lives in Berlin. 他住在柏林。
Let's go for a walk in the park. 让我们到公园去散散步。
Where's Tom? He's in his room. 汤姆在哪里? 他在自己的房间里。

Phrases with **off**.

The lid came off easily. 这个盖子很容易掉。
Take your coat off. 把你的外套脱下来。
The pencil rolled off the table. 铅笔滚到桌子下面去了。

b Now study these phrases with **in** and **with**:

Can you see that woman in the blue coat? 你能看见那个穿蓝外套的女士吗？
He was dressed in a black suit. 他穿着一套黑衣服。
That man with long hair is supposed to be a poet. 那个留着长发的男人应该是个诗人。
The police are looking for a man with a scar on his face. 警察正在搜寻一个脸上有疤的男人。
The woman with the brown handbag and long umbrella is a famous novelist. 那个手上拿着棕色手提包和长柄伞的女士是一位著名的小说家。

**Exercises**

A Study the use in the passage of the following words: **in**, **at**, **out of**, **to**, **with** and **into**.

B Supply the missing words in the following sentences. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

1. A woman _______ jeans stood _______ the window of an expensive shop. Though she hesitated for a moment, she finally went _______ and asked to see a dress that was _______ the window.
   - jeans: **in**
   - window: **in**
   - went: **in**
   - window: **in**

2. Glancing _______ her scornfully, he told her that the dress was sold. The woman walked _______ the shop angrily.
   - glanced: **at**
   - walked: **out of**

3. She returned _______ the shop the following morning dressed _______ a fur coat, _______ a handbag _______ one hand and a long umbrella _______ the other.
   - returned: **to**
   - dressed: **in**
   - handbag: **in**
   - one hand: **out of**
   - long umbrella: **out of**

4. _______ great difficulty, he climbed _______ the shop window.
   - great difficulty: **in**
   - window: **in**

5. She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything _______ the window.
   - brought: **in**

**Special difficulties**

**Make and Let**

Study these examples:

She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window. (Ll.11-12)
I can't make him change his mind. 我无法使他改变主意。
The teacher made the boy write the exercise again. 教师叫那男孩把练习重做一遍。
Don't let him *persuade* you. Don't let him persuade you.
Let me try. 让我试一试。
Don't let the children *touch* anything in this room please. 请别孩子们动这个房间里的任何东西。

**Exercise 练习**

Complete these sentences:

1. Don't let him _________.
2. Why don't you make him _________?
3. No one can make me _________.
4. Will your parents let you _________?
5. Let's _________.

**Multiple choice questions 多项选择题**

**Comprehension 理解**

1. The assistant refused to help the woman because he _________.
   (a) didn’t approve of the way she was dressed
   (b) approved of the way she was dressed
   (c) liked the way she was dressed
   (d) noticed the way she was dressed

2. The woman got her revenge by _________.
   (a) buying a dress
   (b) putting the assistant to a lot of trouble
   (c) complaining to the manager
   (d) asking for something in the window

**Structure 句型**

3. The woman stood at the window. She stood ________ it.
   (a) in front
   (b) in front of
   (c) front
   (d) ahead of

4. The assistant ________ her did not like the way she was dressed.
   (a) served
   (b) serving
   (c) who serving
   (d) was serving

5. After ________ out the rude assistant she asked for the same dress.
   (a) she was seeking
   (b) she had sought
   (c) sought
   (d) when she sought

6. ________ who she was, the assistant was eager to serve her this time.
   (a) Not to realize
   (b) Without to realize
   (c) Except realizing
   (d) Without realizing

7. She bought the dress ________ she had first asked for.
   (a) who
   (b) what
   (c) that
   (d) whom

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. He glanced at her scornfully. He ________ her.
   (a) mocked
   (b) teased
   (c) laughed at
   (d) despised

9. She returned the following day. She returned the day _________.
   (a) other
   (b) next
   (c) after
   (d) else

10. She sought out the rude assistant. He had been ________ polite.
    (a) un-
    (b) im-
    (c) in-
    (d) dis-

11. He was eager to serve her. He was ________ to serve her.
    (a) prompt
    (b) fast
    (c) nervous
    (d) anxious

12. He brought almost everything in the window. He brought ________ everything.
    (a) nearly
    (b) scarcely
    (c) hardly
    (d) already
First listen and then answer the question.

The tiny village of Frinley is said to possess a ‘cursed tree’. Because the tree was mentioned in a newspaper, the number of visitors to Frinley has now increased. The tree was planted near the church fifty years ago, but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation. It is said that if anyone touches the tree, he will have bad luck; if he picks a leaf, he will die. Many villagers believe that the tree has already claimed a number of victims. The vicar has been asked to have the tree cut down, but so far he has refused. He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income, as tourists have been coming from all parts of the country to see it. In spite of all that has been said, the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names on the tree-trunk. So far, not one of them has been struck down by sudden death!

New words and expressions

- blessing (title) /'blesip/ n. 福分, 福气
- disguise (title) /dis'gaiz/ n. 伪装
- tiny (1.1) /'taini/ adj. 极小的
- possess (1.1) /pa'zes/ v. 拥有
- cursed (1.1) /kɜːsd/ adj. 可恨的
- increase (1.3) /ɪnˈkriːs/ v. 增加
- plant (1.3) /plɑːnt/ v. 种植
- church (1.4) /tʃətʃ/ n. 教堂
- evil (1.5) /'iːvl/ adj. 坏的
- reputation (1.5) /ˌrepjuˈteʃən/ n. 名声
- claim (1.7) /kleɪm/ v. 以……为其后果
- victim (1.8) /'viktm/ n. 受害者, 牺牲品
- vicar (1.8) /ˈvɪkər/ n. 教区牧师
- source (1.9) /ˈsɔrs/ n. 来源
- income (1.9) /ˈɪnkaʊm/ n. 收入
- trunk (1.11) /trʌŋk/ n. 树干

Notes on the text

1. a blessing in disguise, 福分变坏事, 因祸得福。
2. The tiny village of Frinley, 弗林利这个小村庄, 介词 of 这里表示的是同位关系。
3. but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation, 但是只是近年来才得到了一个坏名声。句中的 it 是强调句型, 结构是 it is (was) + 被强调的部分 + that (who) 从句。
4. to have the tree cut down, 把这棵树砍掉。在这个短语中 cut down 是动词 have 的宾语 the tree 的补足语, 常用来表示叫别人完成的动作。
5. In spite of all that has been said 是介词短语, 在句中作让步状语。that has been said 是定语从句, 修饰 all, 关系代词 that 在从句中作主语, 不能省略。

参考译文

据说弗林利这个小村里有一棵“该诅咒的树”。就因为报上提到过这棵树，所以现在来弗林利参观的人越来
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer the questions in not more than 85 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不超过 85 个单词。

1 Has the number of visitors to the village of Frinley increased or not? Is there said to be a ‘cursed tree’ near a church or not? (because)

2 Do the villagers believe that if anyone picks a leaf he will die? What have they asked the vicar to do? (Since)

3 Is the tree a useful source of income or not? Has the vicar agreed to have the tree cut down, or has he refused to do so? (As)

4 Have tourists been picking leaves or not? Have any of them come to harm or not? (Meanwhile, though ...)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:
用括号内的连词改写以下句子:

1 A village well was said to be cursed. It was bought by a man. (which)

2 Tourists came to see it. There was not even any water in it. (though)

3 The tourists could look into the well. They had to throw a coin in first. (Before)

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart:
熟记以下两个开头语:

You will be glad to hear that ...

Thank you for letting me know that ...

Exercise 练习

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.
用以上两个开头语写出两小段文字, 每段不要超过两句话。

Key structures 关键句型

Frinley is said to possess a ‘cursed tree’, 被动语态

a Do you remember these sentences? (KS34)

You remember these sentences? (参见第 34 课关键句型)

He is being sent abroad. 他正被送出国。

I was told to wait for him. 我被通知等等他。

Your wallet has been found. 你的钱包被找到了。

越早。该树是 50 年前栽在教堂附近的，但只是近几年才得到了一个坏名声。据说，谁要是触摸了这棵树，谁就会交上恶运；如果谁摘了一片树叶，谁就会死去。很多村民相信此树已经害了不少人。人们曾请求教区的牧师叫人把树砍掉，但他直到现在也没有同意。他指出，由于人们从全国各地纷前来参观这棵树，它成了一个有用的财源。尽管有上述种种说法，但游客们还是照常摘树叶和把它们的名字刻在树干上。然而到目前为止，还没有人暴死呢！
b Now study these sentences:

- Instead of saying:
  People say he is a genius.
  We can say:
  He is said to be a genius.
  Or: It is said that he is a genius.

- People say that there is oil under the North Sea.
  There is said to be oil under the North Sea.
  Or: It is said that there is oil under the North Sea.

- She gave me a pen.
  A pen was given to me.
  Or: The vacant post was offered to him.

Exercises 练习

A There are some verbs in the passage which are similar in form to the examples given above. Can you find them?

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

1 The tiny village of Frinley _________ (say) to possess a 'cursed tree'. Because the tree _________ (mention) in a newspaper, the number of visitors to Frinley has now increased. The tree _________ (plant) near the church fifty years ago, but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation. It _________ (say) that if anyone touches the tree, he will have bad luck.

2 The vicar _________ (ask) to have the tree cut down, but so far he has refused.

3 In spite of all that _________ (say), the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names on the tree-trunk. So far, not one of them _________ (strike) down by sudden death!

Special difficulties 难点

Verbs often confused 经常容易混淆的动词

Study these examples:

a Increase and Grow.

- The number of visitors to Frinley has now increased/grown. (II.2-3)
- She has grown so much she is nearly as tall as I am. 她长了这么多，都快和我一样高了。

b Gain and Earn.

- It has gained/earned an evil reputation. (II.4-5)
- He has gone abroad and I hear he is earning a lot of money. 他已经成为出国，我听说他赚了许多钱。

c Pick and Cut.

- The tourists have been picking the leaves and cutting their names on the tree-trunk. (II.10-11)
- She has picked a lot of flowers. 她摘了许多花。
- She cut the apple into two. 她把苹果切成两块。
Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in these sentences:

选择正确的词:
1 This fruit is fresh. I have just (cut) (picked) it.
2 If you travel by air, you will (earn) (gain) time.
3 He (earns) (gains) £300 a week.
4 Judy has (increased) (grown) so much I can hardly recognize her.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The vicar has refused to have the tree cut down because ________.  
   (a) it is cursed (b) it earns money (c) he is afraid (d) he is superstitious
2 One of these statements is true. Which one?  
   (a) Tourists are afraid to pick leaves off the tree.  
   (b) Tourists are afraid to cut their names on the tree-trunk.  
   (c) Tourists who have picked leaves have died.  
   (d) Tourists who have picked leaves haven’t died.

Structure 句型
3 ________ that Frinley has a cursed tree.  
   (a) They say (b) It said (c) Said (d) It is saying
4 If anyone picked the leaves, he ________ die.  
   (a) would (b) will (c) shall (d) would have
5 Tourists have been coming from all parts of the country. They haven’t stopped coming ________.  
   (a) still (b) even (c) yet (d) more
6 ________ all that has been said, the tourists have been picking leaves.  
   (a) In spite (b) Despite (c) Even (d) Even so
7 So far ________ of them has been struck down by sudden death.  
   (a) no one (b) nobody (c) not any (d) none

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Frinley is a tiny village. It is very ________.  
   (a) big (b) great (c) small (d) famous
9 The number of visitors has increased. The number has ________.  
   (a) grown (b) grown up (c) overgrown (d) grown old
10 It has ________ an evil reputation.  
   (a) won (b) beaten (c) profited (d) earned
11 It has gained an evil reputation. It has a bad ________.  
   (a) fame (b) name (c) rumour (d) report
12 He has pointed out that it’s a source of income. He’s ________ this to the villagers.  
   (a) shown (b) pointed (c) noted (d) explained
Lesson 59 In or out? 进来还是出去？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why did Rex run away?

Our dog, Rex, used to sit outside our front gate and bark. Every time he wanted to come into the garden he would bark until someone opened the gate. As the neighbours complained of the noise, my husband spent weeks training him to press his paw on the latch to let himself in. Rex soon became an expert at opening the gate. However, when I was going out shopping last week, I noticed him in the garden near the gate. This time he was barking so that someone would let him out! Since then, he has developed another bad habit. As soon as he opens the gate from the outside, he comes into the garden and waits until the gate shuts. Then he sits and barks until someone lets him out. After this he immediately lets himself in and begins barking again. Yesterday my husband removed the gate and Rex got so annoyed we have not seen him since.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

bark (1.1) /bɑ:k/ v. 狗叫
press (1.4) /pres/ v. 按, 压
paw (1.4) /pɔ/ n. 脚爪
latch (1.4) /lætʃ/ n. 门闩

expert (1.5) /'eksp3:t/ n. 专家
develop (1.8) /di'velp/ v. 养成
habit (1.8) /'haebit/ n. 习惯
remove (1.11) /ri'muiv/ v. 拆掉, 取下

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. every time 此处是连词，作“每当”、“无论何时”讲，引出时间状语从句。
2. Rex soon became an expert at opening the gate. 冒号在句子后“成为”的后面，表示“成为”的后置定语。
3. This time he was barking so that someone would let him out! 这次他叫着让人把它放出去。so that 是连词，作“为的是”讲，引导状语从句。
4. Rex got so annoyed we have not seen him since. 我们再也见不到它。句子中有一个 so annoyed that ... 的状语从句，表示结果，但 that 被省略了。

参考译文

我家的狗雷克斯，过去常坐在大门外面叫。每当它想到花园里来时，便汪汪叫个不停，直到有人把门打开。由于邻居们对狗叫很有意见，所以我丈夫花了几个星期的时间训练它用脚爪按住门闩把自己放进来。雷克斯很快成了开门的专家。然而上星期我正要出去买东西时，发现它正呆在花园里边靠门的地方。这次它叫着让人把它放出去！从那以后，它养成了另外一种坏习惯。它从外面把门一打开，就走进花园，等着门自动关上。这之后他就坐下汪汪叫起来，直到有人来把它放出去。出去之后，它又马上把自己放进来，接着再开始叫。昨天，我丈夫把大门卸了下来，雷克斯很生气，此后我们再也见不到它。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in no more than 80 words.

1. Why did our dog, Rex, use to sit outside the front gate and bark? (so that)
2. Did my husband train him to open the gate himself or not? Has Rex developed another bad habit or not? (Ever since)
3. Why does he bark when he is in the garden? (so that)
4. Does he let himself in after this or not? Does he bark until someone opens the gate again or not? (and)
5. Has my husband removed the gate or not? Has Rex disappeared or not? (Now that)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:

My husband put the gate back — kept it locked — Rex returned — delighted at first — could not open the gate — dissatisfied — disappeared.

Letter writing 书信写作

How would the following appear in a letter:

August the first; the third of December; July the second; Avenue; Place; Street; London, East Central 4.

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS50-58 复习第 50-58 课的关键句型

These things always happen. (KS50) (第 50 课)
What happened? (KS51) (第 51 课)
What has happened? What has been happening? (KS52) (第 52 课)
Pirates would often bury gold in the cave ... (KS55) (第 55 课)
Frinley is said to possess a ‘cursed tree’. (KS58) (第 58 课)

Exercises 练习

A Which verbs in the passage tell us a what is happening now; b what always happens; c what happened; d what has happened; e what was happening.

From the passage choose the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

Our dog, Rex, ________ (sit) outside our front gate and bark. Every time he ________ (want) to come into the garden he ________ (bark) until someone opened the gate. As the neighbours ________ (complain) of the noise, my husband ________ (spend) weeks training him to press his paw on the latch to let himself in. Rex soon ________ (become) an expert at opening the gate. However, when I ________ (go) out shopping last week, I ________
Unit 3 Lesson 59

(notice) him in the garden near the gate. This time he _______ (bark) so that someone would let him out! Since then, he _______ (develop) another bad habit. As soon as he opens the gate from the outside, he _______ (come) into the garden and _______ (wait) until the gate shuts. Then he _______ (sit) and _______ (bark) until someone lets him out. After this he immediately lets himself in and _______ (begin) barking again. Yesterday my husband _______ (remove) the gate and Rex _______ (get) so annoyed we _______ (not see) him since.

C Write these sentences again changing the form of the words in italics. Omit any words that are not necessary.

1 People say that he _______ very rich.
2 People say that there _______ a hold-up on the roads.
3 She _______ me a pen.

Special difficulties 难点

To, in order to, so as to, so that, in order that 表示目的的几种方式

Note the way these pairs of sentences have been joined:

Exercise 练习

Join the following sentences leaving out the verb to want.

1 He left early. He did not want to see me. (so as to)
2 The secretary asked me into the office. The manager wanted to speak to me. (so that)
3 I ran to the station. I did not want to be late. (so as to)
4 He worked hard. He wanted to learn English. (in order to)
5 He has not sent me his address. He does not want me to write to him. (so that)
6 I went to see him. I wanted to find out what had happened. (to)
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The writer's husband trained Rex to open the gate because __________.
   (a) Rex couldn't get in  (b) Rex needed help
   (c) Rex enjoyed opening the gate  (d) Rex barked a lot and disturbed the neighbours

2. One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) Rex only learnt to open the gate from the inside.
   (b) Rex only learnt to open the gate from the outside.
   (c) Rex never learnt to open the gate.
   (d) Rex doesn't like opening the gate.

Structure 句型
3. He would bark until someone opened the gate. That's what he __________.
   (a) is used to doing  (b) used  (c) is used to  (d) used to do

4. The neighbours complained __________ the noise.
   (a) for  (b) to  (c) concerning  (d) about

5. The writer went __________ last week.
   (a) for shopping  (b) for shop  (c) to shopping  (d) shopping

6. He was barking __________ let him in.
   (a) for someone to  (b) in case someone  (c) so someone to  (d) so that someone

7. As soon as he __________ the gate from the outside he comes into the garden.
   (a) will open  (b) opens  (c) is opening  (d) has been opening

Vocabulary 词汇
8. My husband spent weeks __________ him to press his paw on the latch.
   (a) teaching  (b) guiding  (c) leading  (d) conducting

9. Rex became an expert. He was very __________.
   (a) crafty  (b) sly  (c) cunning  (d) skilful

10. I __________ him in the garden.
    (a) observed  (b) looked  (c) remarked  (d) took care of

11. He has developed another bad __________.
    (a) habit  (b) custom  (c) use  (d) usefulness

12. My husband removed the gate. He __________.
    (a) took it in  (b) took it away  (c) took it on  (d) took it up

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 10 行，核对你的答案。
Then he sits. He barks. Someone lets him out.
Lesson 60 The future 卜算未来

First listen and then answer the question.

听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Does what Madam Bellinsky said come true?

At a village fair, I decided to visit a fortune-teller called Madam Bellinsky. I went into her tent and she told me to sit down. After I had given her some money, she looked into a crystal ball and said: 'A relation of yours is coming to see you. She will be arriving this evening and intends to stay for a few days. The moment you leave this tent, you will get a big surprise. A woman you know well will rush towards you. She will speak to you and then she will lead you away from this place. That is all.'

As soon as I went outside, I forgot all about Madam Bellinsky because my wife hurried towards me. 'Where have you been hiding?' she asked impatiently. 'Your sister will be here in less than an hour and we must be at the station to meet her. We are late already.' As she walked away, I followed her out of the fair.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>future (title)</td>
<td>/'fjuːtʃə/</td>
<td>n. 未来，前途</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fair (1.1)</td>
<td>/fɛə/</td>
<td>n. 集市</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortune-teller (1.1)</td>
<td>/'fɔːtʃən-,tɛlə/</td>
<td>n. 算命人</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crystal (1.3)</td>
<td>/'kristl/</td>
<td>n. 水晶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation (1.4)</td>
<td>/'rɪləʃən/</td>
<td>n. 亲属</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impatiently (1.10)</td>
<td>/ɪm'petʃəntli/</td>
<td>adv. 不耐烦地</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. a relation of yours, 您的一个亲戚，这是名词双重所有格的一个例子。
2. The moment you leave the tent, 您一走出帐篷，the moment 起连词作用，相当于 as soon as。
3. A woman you know well, 一个您很熟悉的女人。you know well 作名词 woman 的定语。
4. That is all. 就这些。

参考译文

在一个乡村集市上，我决定去拜访一位叫别林斯基夫人的算命人。我走进她的帐篷，她叫我坐下。我给了她一些钱后，她便看着一个水晶球说道：您的一位亲戚就要来看您了。她将于今天傍晚到达，并准备好住上几天。您一走出这个帐篷，就会大吃一惊。一位您很熟悉的女人将向您冲来。她会对您说点什么，然后带您离开这个地方。就是这些。”

我一走出帐篷，就把别林斯基夫人给我算卦的事忘得一干二净了，因为我的妻子正匆匆向我跑来。“你躲到哪儿去了?”她不耐烦地问，“再有不到一个小时你姐姐就要到这儿了，我们得去车站接她，现在已经晚了。”当她走开时，我也跟着她出了集市。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.

1. Whom did the writer visit at a village fair? Did she tell him that a relation was coming to see him or not? (who)
2. Who would speak to him when he left the tent? Would he follow her out of the fair or not? (She added that ... and)
3. Did this come true or not? Did his wife speak to him when he went outside, or did a strange woman speak to him? (because)
4. Whom did she tell him they had to meet at the station? Did she lead him out of the fair or not? (and)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses.

1. Fortune-tellers always tell the truth. They speak in general terms. (because)
2. They say you will go on a journey. You will meet a friend. They are right. We often do these things. (If... or... because)

Letter writing 书信写作

Address an envelope to a married couple who live abroad.

Key structures 关键句型

The moment you leave this tent, you will get a big surprise. 表示将要发生的事情

a. Do you remember these sentences. (KS36)
   你记得这些句子吗？（参见第 36 课关键句型）
   I am going to travel by air. 我将乘飞机旅行。
   You will enjoy yourself if you travel by sea. 如果你乘船旅行，你会玩得很开心的。

b. Now study these sentences carefully:
   仔细阅读以下句子，英文中可用现在进行时来表示即将安排好的活动和事件。
   Instead of saying: 除了这种表达方法外：
   He will arrive tomorrow. 他要在明天来。
   He will come at four o'clock. 他将在下午四点来。
   She will leave in two days' time. 她将在两天后离开。
   We can say: 还可以说：
   He is arriving tomorrow. 他明天就要来。
   He is coming at four o'clock. 他将在下午四点来。
   She is leaving in two days' time. 她将在两天后离开。

c. Study these sentences. Pay close attention to the words in italics:
   细读以下句子，特别注意用斜体印出的词语：
   If it rains tomorrow we shall stay at home. (KS16) （第 16 课关键句型）
   The moment he arrives, I shall let you know. 他一到我就告诉你。
   I shall wait here until he comes. 我要在这里等他来。
   As soon as the rain stops, we shall go out. 雨一停我们就要出去。
   You must finish your dinner before you leave the table. 你必须把饭吃完后才能离开桌子。
   We'll go into the living room after we finish dinner. 吃完饭后我们到起居室。
   I'll give him the message when he returns. 他回来时我就把这个口信给他。

277
Unit 3 Lesson 60

Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen in the future.
划出课文中表示将要发生的动作的动词。

B This is what Madam Bellinsky told the writer. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Note that more than one form can be used for some of these verbs. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
以下是别林斯基夫人对作者说的话。用正确的动词形式填空。注意其中的有些动词可以有多种形式。
A relation of yours (come) to see you. She (arrive) this evening and intends to stay for a few days. The moment you (leave) this tent, you (get) a big surprise. A woman you know well (rush) towards you. She (speak) to you and then she (lead) you away from this place.

C What will happen tonight? Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:
用正确的时态填空:
A lifeboat (set) out tonight to search for the shipwreck. The crew (send) radio messages to the wreck until they (receive) a signal from the men on board. As soon as they (receive) a signal, they (try) and find the wreck with powerful searchlights. The moment the crew (locate) the wreck, they (fire) a special gun which (carry) a rope from the life boat to the sinking ship. If the sea is rough, they (pour) oil on the water. They are sure to succeed, but if they fail, a helicopter (send) out tomorrow morning. Helicopters are very useful for rescue work, but they cannot be used at night.

Special difficulties 难点

At a village fair, I decided to visit a fortune-teller. (Compare SD13)
（对比第13 课难点）
Instead of saying: 除了这种表达之外:
We went to the fair in the village.  We went to the village fair.
It is better to say: 这样说更合适:

Exercise 练习

Write these sentences again. Express the phrases in italics in a different way:
改写以下句子中用斜体印出的部分:
1 The dining room in our school is very large.
2 He told us a story about ghosts.
3 She gave me a present for my birthday.
4 We stopped at a pub in the village.
5 The leader of the party made a speech.
6 I have lost the key to the front door.
7 He sent me a card for Christmas.
8 We are painting the gate in our garden.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Madam Bellinsky could only tell the writer’s future when ________.
   (a) he asked her  (b) he paid her
   (c) she looked into the crystal ball  (d) he showed her his palm
2 Madam Bellinsky ________.
   (a) told the future correctly  (b) told him a lot of nonsense
   (c) was a bad fortune-teller  (d) was a liar

Structure 句型
3 A relation of yours is coming to see you. She ________ soon.
   (a) comes  (b) came  (c) will be coming  (d) will have come
4 She intends to stay for a few days. That’s what she ________ to do.
   (a) is about  (b) plans  (c) is due  (d) hopes
5 When he ________ this tent he will get a surprise.
   (a) will leave  (b) leave  (c) leaves  (d) is leaving
6 You will get a surprise. You ________.
   (a) will surprise  (b) will be surprised  (c) surprise  (d) will be surprising
7 ‘Where have you been hiding?’ she asked. She asked me where ________ hiding.
   (a) I had been  (b) had I been  (c) had been I  (d) had I being

Vocabulary 词汇
8 I decided to visit a fortune-teller. That’s what I ________ to do.
   (a) made up  (b) made up my mind  (c) minded  (d) cared
9 Crystal is a kind of ________.
   (a) glass  (b) metal  (c) wood  (d) plastic
10 A relation of yours is coming. A ________ is coming.
   (a) friend  (b) colleague  (c) relative  (d) acquaintance
11 A woman you know well will rush towards you. She will ________.
   (a) be in a hurry  (b) be slow  (c) be tired  (d) be angry
12 She was impatient. She ________.
   (a) was angry  (b) was cross  (c) didn’t speak  (d) didn’t like waiting

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 2-3 行，核对你的答案。
First I gave her some money. Then she looked into a crystal ball.
After I ________.
Lesson 61  Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What is the special importance of a telescope in space?

The Hubble telescope was launched into space by NASA on April 20, 1990 at a cost of over a billion dollars. Right from the start there was trouble with the Hubble. The pictures it sent us were very disappointing because its main mirror was faulty! NASA is now going to put the telescope right, so it will soon be sending up four astronauts to repair it. The shuttle Endeavour will be taking the astronauts to the Hubble. A robot-arm from the Endeavour will grab the telescope and hold it while the astronauts make the necessary repairs. Of course, the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere, so it will soon be sending us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen. The Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. By the time you read this, the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

Hubble (title) /ˈhaibl/ n. 哈勃

 telescope (1.1) /ˈtelɪskəʊp/ n. 望远镜

 launch (1.1) /ləntʃ/ v. 发射

 space (1.1) /speɪs/ n. 空间

 NASA (1.1) /ˈnesəʊ/ n. (National Aeronautics and Space Administration) 国家航空和航天局

 billion (1.2) /ˈbɪljən/ n. 10 亿

 faulty (1.4) /ˈfɒlti/ adj. 有错误的

 astronaut (1.6) /ˈæstrənɒtə/ n. 宇航员

 shuttle (1.6) /ˈʃʌtl/ n. 航天飞机

 Endeavour (1.6) /ˈendəvə(r)/ n. “奋进”号

 robot-arm (1.7) /ˈrəʊbɒt-ərn/ n. 机器手

 grab (1.8) /græb/ v. 抓

 atmosphere (1.9) /ˈætmosfɪə/ n. 大气层

 distant (1.10) /ˈdɪstənt/ adj. 遥远的

 galaxy (1.10) /ˈɡæləksɪ/ n. 星系

 universe (1.11) /ˈjuːnɪvɜːs/ n. 宇宙

 eagle eye (1.11) /ˈiɡəl-ˌaɪ/ 鹰眼

Notes on the text 课文注释

1  the Hubble telescope. 哈勃望远镜。

2  at a cost of. 造价为 ……。

3  right from the start. 从最开始。

参考译文

哈勃望远镜于1990年4月20日由国家航空航天局发射升空，耗资10多亿美元。从最开始哈勃望远镜就有问题，它传送给我们的图像很令人失望，因为它的主镜有误差。国家航天局准备纠正这一误差。为此将把4名宇航员送入太空修复望远镜。“奋进”号航天飞机将把宇航员送上哈勃。当宇航员进行必要的修复工作时，“奋进”号上的一只机器手将抓住望远镜并托住它。当然，哈勃位于地球的大气层之外，因此，它很快
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 60 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过60个单词。
1. When was the Hubble telescope launched into space? What were the pictures it sent us like? Why? (When the Hubble... the pictures... because...)
2. What will the four astronauts from the shuttle Endeavour be doing? What will the pictures from the Hubble tell us? (and eventually)

Composition 作文

Write three or four sentences using the ideas given below.
用以下词组写出3至4个句子来。
There was trouble with the Hubble — the main mirror — faulty — the pictures — disappointing — now the shuttle Endeavour — four astronauts — make the necessary repairs — the Hubble — soon send — the clearest pictures — ever seen.

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart:
熟记以下两个开头语:
I have not heard from you for some time, so...; It was very kind of you to...

Exercise 练习

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.
用以上两个开头语写出两小段话，每段不超过两句。

Key structures 关键句型

By the time you read this, the Hubble’s eagle eye will have sent us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures. 将来完成时，将来进行时和将来完成进行时

a. Study these sentences. (KS37)
   细读以下句子。（参见第37课关键句型）
   I will be writing letters all day tomorrow. 明天我将整天写信。
   Soon the astronauts will have repaired the telescope. 宇航员很快会把望远镜修好。

b. Compare these two sentences:
   对比将来完成时和将来完成进行时:
   Soon the astronauts will have repaired the telescope. 宇航员很快会把望远镜修好。
   By Friday midday, they will have been working on it for seven days. 到星期五中午，他们就在这个工程上干了7天了。

c. Compare these pairs of sentences. Pay close attention to the words in italics. (KS60c)
   对比以下各组句子，特别注意用斜体印出的部分。（参见第60课关键句型 c）
   He will have arrived by this time tomorrow. 明天的这个时候他已经到了。
The moment he has arrived, I will let you know. 他一来我就会告诉你。
You can go home at five o’clock. 你可以在 5 点钟的时候回家。
Now that you have finished work, you can go home. 你既然已经做完工作, 你就可以回家了。
He will phone us later today. He will have received his exam results by then. 今天晚些时候他会给我们打电话,那时他已经得到考试成绩了。
As soon as he has received his exam results, he will phone us. 他一接到考试成绩就会给我们打电话的。

Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen in the future.
划出课文中所有表示将来发生事情的动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you have finished the exercise.
用正确的时态填空, 完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
The Hubble telescope _______ (launch) into space by NASA on April 20, 1990, at a cost of over a billion dollars. Right from the start there _______ (be) trouble with the Hubble. The pictures it _______ (send) us _______ (be) very disappointing because its main mirror _______ (be) faulty! NASA now _______ (put) the telescope right, so it soon _______ (send up) four astronauts to repair it. The shuttle Endeavour _______ (take) the astronauts to the Hubble. A robot-arm from the Endeavour _______ (grab) the telescope and _______ (hold) it while the astronauts _______ (make) the necessary repairs. Of course, the Hubble _______ (be) above the earth’s atmosphere, so it soon _______ (send) us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we ever _______ (see). The Hubble _______ (tell) us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. By the time you _______ (read) this, the Hubble’s eagle eye _______ (send) us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词
Study these examples: 精读以下例子:
a Nouns: Cost, Price, Value
The Hubble was launched at a cost of over a billion dollars. 哈勃望远镜发射升空, 耗资 10 多亿美元。
How much is that blouse? Let’s ask the price. 这件衬衫多少钱? 让我们来问一下价钱。
The stolen items were of sentimental, rather than financial value. 被盗物品更具有情感上的含义, 而不是经济上的价值。

b Verbs: Cost, Price, Value.
What does this blouse cost, please? 请问, 这件衬衫多少钱?
I want to price the bed linen in a few other shops before I buy any. 我想在买床单之前打听几家商店的价格。
I value your advice a great deal. 我非常尊重你的建议。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences. 选择正确的词。
1 There has been a sharp rise in the (price) (cost) (value) of living.
2 Whenever I buy anything new, my father always asks me the value (cost) (price).
3 If you have to work for something you will value (price) (cost) it more.
4 That house valued (cost) (priced) a fortune to build.
5 Dr. James’ work is of enormous value (cost) (price) to the community.
6 Jane has valued (cost) (priced) the alternative products and she recommends this one.
7 So far, ten countries have given money towards the value (price) (cost) of rebuilding after the earthquake.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The Hubble failed to send us satisfactory pictures because _________.
   (a) the cost of sending satisfactory pictures was terrible
   (b) there was a problem with its main mirror
   (c) it was a long time since it was launched into space
   (d) it was high above the earth’s atmosphere
2 The Hubble telescope _________.
   (a) will tell us a great deal about the universe
   (b) cost a lot but was almost worthless
   (c) will measure the size of the earth
   (d) requires constant care from the astronauts

Structure 句型
3 NASA is now going to put the telescope right. NASA ________ it.
   (a) is repairing
   (b) has already repaired
   (c) will be repairing
   (d) to repair
4 Four astronauts ________ to the Hubble.
   (a) will take
   (b) will send up
   (c) will be taken
   (d) will be sending up
5 A robot-arm will hold the telescope ________ the astronauts to repair it.
   (a) for
   (b) so that
   (c) so long as
   (d) which
6 The Hubble will be sending us clear pictures ________ it is above the earth’s atmosphere.
   (a) when
   (b) and
   (c) while
   (d) because
7 ________ you read this, thousands of pictures will have been sent to us.
   (a) As soon as
   (b) The moment
   (c) Before
   (d) When

Vocabulary 词汇
8 The Hubble was launched by NASA. It was _________.
   (a) sent into space
   (b) carried away
   (c) put up
   (d) taken up
9 There was trouble with the Hubble _________.
   (a) then
   (b) from the beginning
   (c) a few years ago
   (d) before
10 The pictures the Hubble sent us were _________.
    (a) wonderful
    (b) unsatisfactory
    (c) the clearest
    (d) disappointed
11 The main mirror of the Hubble _________.
    (a) had problems
    (b) was distant
    (c) was the clearest
    (d) requires repairs
12 The Hubble is ________ the earth’s atmosphere.
    (a) below
    (b) over
    (c) within
    (d) outside
Lesson 62  After the fire  大火之后

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What was the danger to the villages after the fire?

Firemen had been fighting the forest fire for nearly three weeks before they could get it under control. A short time before, great trees had covered the countryside for miles around. Now, smoke still rose up from the warm ground over the desolate hills. Winter was coming on and the hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction, for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause serious floods as well. When the fire had at last been put out, the forest authorities ordered several tons of a special type of grass-seed which would grow quickly. The seed was sprayed over the ground in huge quantities by aeroplanes. The planes had been planting seed for nearly a month when it began to rain. By then, however, in many places the grass had already taken root. In place of the great trees which had been growing there for centuries, patches of green had begun to appear in the blackened soil.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

control (1.2) /'kon'trɔːl/ n. 控制
smoke (1.3) /smɔːk/ n. 烟
desolate (1.4) /'dɛsələt/ adj. 荒凉的
threaten (1.5) /'θretn/ v. 威胁
surrounding (1.5) /'sɜːraʊndɪŋ/ adj. 周围的
destruction (1.5) /dɪ'strʌkʃən/ n. 破坏，毁灭
flood (1.7) /flʌd/ n. 洪水，水灾
authority (1.8) /ɔː'tɔːrəti/ n. (常用复数) 当局
grass-seed (1.8-9) /'grɑːsˌsiːd/ n. 草籽
spray (1.9) /spreɪ/ v. 喷出
quantity (1.9) /'kwɒntəti/ n. 量
root (1.11) /rʊt/ n. 根
century (1.11) /'sɜːntəri/ n. 世纪
patch (1.11) /pætʃ/ n. 小片
blacken (1.12) /'blækən/ v. 变黑，发暗

Notes on the text 谋文注释

1. had been fighting 是过去完成进行时, 表示过去某一时刻之前一直进行的动作。
2. before they could get it under control, 他们才能控制住火势。
3. for miles around, 围绕数英里。
4. Winter was coming on, 冬季即将来临, come on 这里作“开始”、“来临”讲, 用于指时间、季节等自然条件情况的出现。
5. for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause serious floods as well, 因为大雨不仅会冲走土壤, 而且还会引起严重的水灾。for 是一个并列连词, 用于陈述原因; wash away 是“冲刷”的意思。
6. in huge quantities, 大量地。
7. take root, 生根。
8. in place of, 代替。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.

1. How long did it take the firemen to get the forest fire under control?
2. Had all the great trees been burnt or not? Was there danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods or not? Would the floods destroy the surrounding villages or not? (Now that ... which)
3. Did the forest authorities order grass-seed to prevent this or not? For how long was it sprayed over the ground by planes? (To prevent this ... which ...)
4. Did it begin to rain or not? Where had the grass taken root? (By the time that ...)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. The firemen cut down trees. They prevented the fire from spreading. (in order to)
2. The fire raged for two weeks. It caused millions of pounds' worth of damage. (which)
3. Forest workers planted young trees quickly. The whole area would become a desert. (so that ... not)

Letter writing 书信写作

Write six sentences beginning with each of the following phrases:

I am sorry ....; Forgive me for ....; I was so glad ....; I have not heard ....; What a surprise ....; It was very kind ....

Key structures 关键句型

The planes had been planting seed for nearly a month when it began to rain. 过去完成时和过去完成进行时

a. Do you remember these sentences? (KS38)
   你还记得以下句子吗? (参见第38课关键句) 
   He lived in Scotland fifteen years ago. 他已在十五年前在苏格兰。

b. Now compare these pairs of sentences:
   对比以下句子:
   He had already finished work before I arrived. 我到达之前他已经完成了工作。
   He had been working in a factory for years before he got this job. 在得到这个工作前,他已在一个厂工作了多年。
   I asked him what he had lost. 我问他丢失了什么。
   I asked him what he had been doing all afternoon. 我问他整个下午在干什么。
Unit 3 Lesson 62
Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what had happened and what had been happening.
划出课文中过去完成时和过去完成进行时的句子。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案：
1 Firemen ________ (fight) the forest fire for nearly three weeks before they could get it under control. A short time before, great trees ________ (cover) the countryside for miles around.
2 The planes ________ (plant) seed for nearly a month when it began to rain. By then, however, in many places the grass already ________ (take) root. In place of the great trees which ________ (grow) there for centuries, patches of green ________ (begin) to appear in the blackened soil.

C What happened? What had happened? What had been happening?
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:
用正确的时态填空：
After Howard Carter ________ (discover) Tutankhamen’s tomb, strange reports ________ (appear) in the newspapers. Three of the people who ________ (take) part in the discovery ________ (die) soon afterwards. Though nothing ________ (happen) to Carter himself, newspapers ________ (claim) that these people ________ (die) because of the “curse of the Pharaohs”. These absurd stories have been forgotten, but Carter’s great discovery remains. Archaeologists ________ (search) the Valley of Kings for years, but until 1922 nothing ________ (find).

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词
Study these examples:
细读以下例子：

a Control (1.2) and Check.
   He controls a large business company. 他掌握着一个很大的商业公司。
   A mechanic checked my car engine. 一位机械师检查了我汽车的发动机。

b Great (1.2) and Big.
   The Parthenon is a great building. (An important building.) 巴台农神殿是一座重要的建筑。
   Skyscrapers are big buildings. 摩天大楼是高大的楼房。

c Soil (1.6) and Ground (1.4).
   Olive trees can grow in poor soil. 橄榄树能在贫瘠的土壤里生长。
   The ball fell to the ground. 球落到地面上。

Exercise 练习
Choose the correct words in the following sentences:
选择正确的词：
1 The inspector (checked) (controlled) my ticket.
2 Nothing can grow in this poor (soil) (ground).
3 Have you (checked) (controlled) those figures?
4 Beethoven was a (big) (great) composer.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**

1 Grass-seed had to be planted quickly ________.
   (a) to prevent flooding
   (b) because it was late in the season
   (c) to save the trees
   (d) because the trees had been growing for centuries

2 Planes were used because ________.
   (a) there had been a fire
   (b) the hills were bare
   (c) there weren’t any trees
   (d) this was the quickest way to plant huge quantities of seed

**Structure 句型**

3 ________ had they been fighting the forest fire? For nearly three weeks.
   (a) How much
   (b) How often
   (c) What time
   (d) How long

4 The hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction. The villages ________.
   (a) were destroyed
   (b) had destroyed
   (c) might be destroyed
   (d) could destroy

5 If it rained heavily there ________ floods.
   (a) will be
   (b) can be
   (c) had been
   (d) would be

6 The planes ________ nearly a month to plant the seed.
   (a) did
   (b) made
   (c) took
   (d) had

7 The trees had been there ________.
   (a) since centuries
   (b) before centuries
   (c) for centuries
   (d) centuries long

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 Heavy rain would wash away the soil. It would ________.
   (a) clean it
   (b) carry it away
   (c) wash it
   (d) wet it

9 Large ________ of seed were used.
   (a) weights
   (b) measures
   (c) tons
   (d) amounts

10 The seed had already taken root. It had begun to ________.
    (a) grow
    (b) root
    (c) grow up
    (d) increase

11 Patches of green had begun to appear. There was green grass ________.
    (a) everywhere
    (b) only in one or two places
    (c) in one place
    (d) here and there

12 The grass had begun to appear in the soil. It had begun to ________.
    (a) point
    (b) show
    (c) seem
    (d) point out
Lesson 63  She was not amused  她并不觉得好笑

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why did Jenny want to leave the wedding reception?
Jeremy Hampden has a large circle of friends and is very popular at parties. Everybody admires him for his great sense of humour — everybody, that is, except his six-year-old daughter, Jenny. Recently, one of Jeremy’s closest friends asked him to make a speech at a wedding reception. This is the sort of thing that Jeremy loves. He prepared the speech carefully and went to the wedding with Jenny. He had included a large number of funny stories in the speech and, of course, it was a great success. As soon as he had finished, Jenny told him she wanted to go home. Jeremy was a little disappointed by this but he did as his daughter asked. On the way home, he asked Jenny if she had enjoyed the speech. To his surprise, she said she hadn’t. Jeremy asked her why this was so and she told him that she did not like to see so many people laughing at him!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

| circle (1.1) /'s3:kal/ n. 圈子 | wedding (1.5) /'wedɪŋ/ n. 婚礼 |
| admire (1.2) /əd'maɪə/ v. 赞美，钦佩 | reception (1.5) /ri'sepʃən/ n. 招待会 |
| close (1.4) /kloʊs/ adj. 亲密的 | sort (1.5) /sɔ:t/ n. 种类 |

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. a large circle of friends，交际很广。
2. Everybody admires him for his great sense of humour. 人人都钦佩他那绝妙的幽默感。admire ... for 钦佩……的……；sense of humour，幽默感。
3. but he did as his daughter asked. 但他还是按照女儿的要求做了。as 是连词，引导出状语从句，表示方式。did 是指前一句话中的 go home。
4. To his surprise. 使他吃惊的是。
5. she did not like to see so many people laughing at him, 她不愿意看到那么多人嘲笑他。句中的 laughing at him 是现在分词短语，作 see 的宾语补足语。

参考译文

杰里米，汉普登交际甚广，是各种聚会上深受欢迎的人。人人都钦佩他那绝妙的幽默感——人人，就是说，除他 6 岁的女儿珍妮之外的每一个人。最近，杰里米的一个最亲密的朋友请他在一个婚礼上祝词。这正是杰里米喜欢做的事情。他认真准备了讲稿，带这珍妮一道去参加了婚礼。他的祝词里面加进了大量逗人的故事，自然大获成功。他刚一讲完，珍妮就对他说要回家。这不免使杰里米有点扫兴，但他还是按照女儿的要求做了。在回家的路上，珍妮主动要去接车。杰里米问她为何不喜欢，她说她不愿意看到那么多人嘲笑他！
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不超过 80 个单词。
1. Is Jeremy Hampden greatly admired for his great sense of humour or not? What was he invited to do? Did he immediately agree to do so or not? (When Jeremy ... who is ...)

2. Did the speech contain a lot of funny stories or not? Was it a great success or not? (Since)

3. What did his six-year-old daughter, Jenny, want to do after his speech? Was Jeremy disappointed or not? (When)

4. Why had she not enjoyed it? (because)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below.
用以下词组写出 2 至 3 个句子来。
Jeremy was amused by Jenny’s answer — he explained why everybody laughed — there was another reception some time later — Jeremy made a speech — not very funny — Jenny asked why no one laughed.

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart.
熟记以下两个开头语。
You must be very annoyed with me for ...
I have just heard that ...

Exercise 练习

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.
用以上两个开头语写两小段话，每段不超过两句。

Key structures 关键句型

He said that ... He told me ... He asked ... 间接引语 (KS15, KS39)

Study these sentences carefully:
仔细阅读以下句子:
‘Open the door for me please,’ she said to me. “请给我开门，”她对我说。
What did she ask me to do? 她让我干什么?
She asked me to open the door for her. 她让我给她把门打开。
‘Don’t make so much noise,’ she said to the children. “别弄出这么大的噪音，”她对孩子们说。
What did she tell the children? 她告诉孩子们什么?
She told them not to make so much noise. 她告诉他们不要弄出这么大的噪音。
‘Stay to lunch,’ he insisted. “留下来吃午饭，”他坚持说。
What did he do? 他干什么?
He insisted that I should stay to lunch. 他坚持我也留下来吃午饭。
‘Come with me,’ he suggested. “跟我来，”他建议说。
What did he suggest? 他建议了什么?
He suggested that I should go with him. 他建议我一定要跟他去。
Unit 3 Lesson 63

Exercises 练习

A This is the conversation which took place between Jenny and her father. Supply speech marks, commas and question marks where necessary.

下面是珍妮和她父亲的一段对话，在需要的地方加上引号、逗号和问号。 (SD26) (参见第26课难点)

1 I want to go home Jenny told him.
2 Did you enjoy the speech Jenny Jeremy asked.
3 No she said.
4 Why didn't you enjoy it Jeremy asked.
5 I do not like to see so many people laughing at you she told him.

B Now answer these questions. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

回答以下问题，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案：

1 What did Jenny tell him?
2 What did Jeremy ask Jenny?
3 What did she answer?
4 What did Jeremy ask her?
5 What did she tell him?

C Answer these questions:

回答以下问题：

1 ‘Keep quiet!’ he said. What did he tell me to do?
2 ‘Send him a fax,’ he suggested. What did he suggest?
3 ‘Don’t worry about it,’ he told me. What did he tell me?
4 ‘Ask him about it,’ he insisted. What did he do?

D Study these examples:

仔细阅读以下句子：

Will it rain tomorrow? I wonder if it will rain tomorrow.
I wonder why didn’t he mention this to me? 他为什么不向我提这件事？
I wonder why he didn’t mention this to me. 我不知道他为什么不向我提这件事。

Write the following sentences again, beginning each one with ‘I wonder’.

用I wonder开头来改写以下句子。

1 Can he wait a few minutes longer? I wonder if ...
2 When will he arrive? I wonder when ...
3 Has he passed his examination?
4 Where is he?
5 Why didn’t she telephone?
6 When shall we see him again?
7 Did she catch the wrong bus?
8 Could you spare me a moment?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Jeremy is very popular because ________ .
   (a) he makes speeches          (b) he tells stories
   (c) he loves wedding receptions  (d) he’s an amusing person
2 Jeremy’s daughter, Jenny, failed to realize that ________ .
   (a) the wedding reception hadn’t finished
   (b) everyone had been laughing at Jeremy’s stories, not at Jeremy
   (c) it was a party
   (d) Jeremy had finished his speech

Structure 句型
3 Everybody admires him because ________ a great sense of humour.
   (a) he’s got          (b) he is          (c) he got         (d) has he
4 ________ Jenny, everyone admires him for his great sense of humour.
   (a) Except for    (b) Apart        (c) Except       (d) Unless
5 Jeremy ________ making speeches.
   (a) is loving    (b) loves         (c) has been loving (d) was loving
6 It was a great success. He succeeded ________ everyone laugh.
   (a) to make     (b) for making     (c) in make      (d) in making
7 Jeremy was a little disappointed. He was ________ disappointed.
   (a) little       (b) somehow       (c) enough       (d) somewhat

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Everyone admires him. They ________ him.
   (a) think highly of (b) laugh at    (c) estimate      (d) esteem
9 Recently he was invited to a reception. He was invited to a reception ________ .
   (a) lastly          (b) at last      (c) lately        (d) at least
10 He made a speech at a wedding reception. He spoke during the ________ .
    (a) wedding       (b) marriage      (c) ceremony     (d) party
11 This is the sort of thing he loves. It’s the ________ of thing he loves.
    (a) species       (b) category     (c) kind          (d) class
12 He included some funny stories. He ________ .
    (a) put them in   (b) consisted of them (c) contained them (d) comprised them

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，完成练习后再对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。
After preparing the speech carefully, he went to the wedding with Jenny.
He ________ .
Lesson 64  The Channel Tunnel  海峡隧道

First listen and then answer the question.

Why was the first tunnel not completed?

In 1858, a French engineer, Aimé Thomé de Gamond, arrived in England with a plan for a twenty-one-mile tunnel under the English Channel. He said that it would be possible to build a platform in the centre of the Channel. This platform would serve as a port and a railway station. The tunnel would be well-ventilated if tall chimneys were built above sea level. In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low. He suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built. This would solve the problem of ventilation, for if a train entered this tunnel, it would draw in fresh air behind it. Forty-two years later a tunnel was actually begun. If, at the time, the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed. The world had to wait almost another 100 years for the Channel Tunnel. It was officially opened on March 7, 1994, finally connecting Britain to the European continent.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

tunnel (title) /ˈtʌnəl/ n. 隧道
port (1.4) /pɔːt/ n. 港口
ventilate (1.5) /ˈventɪleɪt/ v. 通风
chimney (1.6) /ˈtʃɪmni/ n. 烟囱
sea level (1.6) /ˈsiː lɪvəl/ 海平面
double (1.7) /ˈdʌbl/ adj. 双的
ventilation (1.8) /ˌventɪˈleɪʃən/ n. 通风
fear (1.10) /fɪə/ v. 害怕
invasion (1.10) /ɪnˈvɛəʒən/ n. 入侵
officially (1.11) /əˈfɪsɪəli/ adv. 正式地
connect (1.12) /kəˈnekt/ v. 连接
European (1.12) /ˌjuərəˈpɪən/ adj. 欧洲的
continent (1.12) /ˈkɒntɪnent/ n. 大陆

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. a plan for a twenty-one-mile tunnel under the English Channel, 建造一条长21英里的海峡隧道计划，for a ... Channel是介词短语，作定语，修饰名词 plan。
2. serve as ...，充当……，与 serve for 同义。
3. a better plan was put forward, 提出了一项更好的计划，put forward 提出（计划、建议等）。
4. He suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built. 他提议建造双轨隧道。在英文中，动词 suggest, demand, recommend 等后面所接的 that 宾语从句中，谓语动词要用 should + 动词原形，而 should 又常常省略，这是一种虚拟语气的结构。
5. If, at the time, the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed. 如果不是因为那时英国人害怕入侵，隧道早就建成了。这是英语中的虚拟语气。虚拟语气所表述的不是一个事实，而只是一种假设或愿望，常伴有 if 引导的非真实条件句。以上的这句话是对大战期间所发生的事情的一种假设，而这种假设与事实不符。因此，在条件句中要用过去完成时 had not feared，而主句中则要用 would + have + 过去分词。
1858年，一位名叫埃梅·托梅·德·干的法国工程师带着建造一条长21英里、穿越英吉利海峡的隧道计划到了英国。他说，可以在隧道中央建造一座平台，这座平台将用作码头和火车站。如果再建些伸出海面的高大的烟囱状通风管，隧道就具备了良好的通风条件。1860年，一位名叫威廉·洛的英国人提出了一项更好的计划。他提议建一条双轨隧道，这样就解决了通风问题。因为如果有一列火车开进隧道，它就把新鲜空气吹入隧道。42年以后，隧道实际已经开始建了。如果不是因为那时英国人害怕入侵，隧道早已建成了。世界不得不再等将近100年才看到海峡隧道竣工。它于1994年3月7日正式开通，将英国与欧洲大陆连到了一起。

**Summary writing**

**摘要写作**

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过85个单词。

1. Who planned to build a tunnel under the English Channel in 1858? How would it be ventilated? (The tunnel, which ...)
2. Who suggested a better plan two years later?
3. How would passing trains solve the problem of ventilation in his proposed double railway-tunnel? (because they would)
4. Did work begin forty-two years later or not? Why was it stopped? (Though ... because)
5. When was the Channel Tunnel officially opened? (However)

**Composition**

**作文**

用括号中的连词改写以下句子：

1. The English Channel separates Britain from Europe. The country has not been invaded since 1066. (Thanks to ... which)
2. Modern warfare is far more complex. Such fears no longer exist. (However, now that ...)
3. Britain benefits enormously from a Channel Tunnel. Europe benefits enormously from a Channel Tunnel. (Both ... and)

**Letter writing**

**书信写作**

为以下信件写出恰当的开头语：

1. A former teacher who has just got engaged.
2. A friend who has sent you a telegram on your birthday.
3. A librarian who has sent you information you wanted.
4. An aunt you failed to meet for an appointment.

**Key structures**

**关键句型**

If the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed.

Do you remember these sentences:

- If he is out, I’ll call tomorrow. (KS16)（参见第16课关键句型）
- You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry. (KS16)（参见第16课关键句型）
- If you went to the exhibition, you would enjoy it. (KS40)（参见第40课关键句型）
Unit 3 Lesson 64

If you were in your position, I would act differently. (KS40) （参见第 40 课重点句型）

b Now study these sentences carefully:

You would have missed the train if you had not hurried. 如果你不赶，你就会赶不上火车。
If you had gone to the exhibition, you would have enjoyed it. 如果你去展览，你会享受到它的乐趣。
If I had been in your position, I would have acted differently. 如果我在你的位置上，我会采取不同的做法。
If you could have made him change his mind, you would have saved him a lot of trouble. 如果你本能让他说改变想法，你就会免他的麻烦。

Exercises 练习

A How many sentences in the passage contain the word if? Study the form of the verbs in these sentences.

课文中有几个包含 if 的句子？注意其中动词的时态。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

动词的正确形式。不要在练习完成之前查看课文。

1. The tunnel would be well-ventilated if tall chimneys _______ (be) built above sea level.
2. If a train entered this tunnel, it _______ (draw) in fresh air behind it.
3. If, at the time, the British had not feared invasion, it _______ (complete).

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

动词的正确形式。

1. If you had told me about it earlier, I _______ (be able) to help you.
2. If you _______ (can/come) with us, we would have been pleased.
3. You _______ (not make) such a mistake if you had been more careful.
4. If father _______ (be) alive, he would be horrified.
5. If it _______ (be) fine tomorrow, we shall go for a swim.

Special difficulties 难点

The verb draw has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully:

动词 draw 在以下句子中的含义各不相同。仔细阅读以下例句:

If a train entered this tunnel, it would draw in fresh air behind it. (1.9)

The dog drew back in terror when it saw the snake. 当它看到蛇时，它就吓得后退。

A taxi drew up outside the bank. (It stopped.) 一辆出租车停在银行外面。两个男人下了车。然后车开走了。

A new trading agreement was drawn up between Holland and Denmark. (It was made.) 荷兰和丹麦签署了一项新的贸易协定。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选择正确的词。

1. We shall have to draw (in) (up) a new plan.
2. When I recognized who he was I drew (back) (up) in horror.
3. The car drew (back) (up) outside the cinema.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. William Low's idea was better than de Gamond's because ________.
   (a) it was cheaper
   (b) there were no chimneys in his plan
   (c) his tunnel would be better ventilated
   (d) it wouldn't be necessary to build a platform in the centre of the Channel

2. Work on the Channel Tunnel ________.
   (a) began immediately after William Low outlined his plan
   (b) never began
   (c) began a long time after William Low put up his plan
   (d) began recently when William Low put up his plan

Structure 句型

3. It would be possible to build a platform. A platform ________.
   (a) could build  (b) would be built  (c) could be built  (d) would build

4. He suggested ________ a double railway tunnel.
   (a) to build  (b) build  (c) building  (d) that building

5. This would solve the problem. That's how the problem ________ solved.
   (a) would been  (b) would be  (c) would have been  (d) had been

6. If a train ________ this tunnel, it would draw in fresh air behind it.
   (a) would enter  (b) entered  (c) will enter  (d) enters

7. People were ________ the idea of a Channel Tunnel.
   (a) interesting in  (b) interested for  (c) interested in  (d) interesting for

Vocabulary 词汇

8. The tunnel would be well ventilated. It would have good ________.
   (a) air  (b) airing  (c) ventilation  (d) circulation

9. A plan was put forward by William Low. He ________ it.
   (a) suggested  (b) intended  (c) aimed at  (d) planned

10. The British feared invasion. They were ________ it.
    (a) in favour of  (b) afraid of  (c) prevented  (d) ended

11. It finally connects Britain and Europe. Britain and Europe are finally ________.
    (a) mixed  (b) joined together  (c) rejoined  (d) combined

12. The tunnel has now been completed. It has been ________.
    (a) ended  (b) finished  (c) prevented  (d) stopped

Sentence structure 句子结构

Make two sentences of the following, then check your answer against the text.
将下列句子改写成两句话，然后对照课文第 6-8 行，核对你的答案。

In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low, who suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built.
Lesson 65  Jumbo versus the police  小象对警察

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why did the police have to push Jumbo off the main street?

Last Christmas, the circus owner, Jimmy Gates, decided to take some presents to a children’s hospital. Dressed up as Father Christmas and accompanied by a ‘guard of honour’ of six pretty girls, he set off down the main street of the city riding a baby elephant called Jumbo. He should have known that the police would never allow this sort of thing. A policeman approached Jimmy and told him he ought to have gone along a side street as Jumbo was holding up the traffic. Though Jimmy agreed to go at once, Jumbo refused to move. Fifteen policemen had to push very hard to get him off the main street. The police had a difficult time, but they were most amused. ‘Jumbo must weigh a few tons,’ said a policeman afterwards, ‘so it was fortunate that we didn’t have to carry him. Of course, we should arrest him, but as he has a good record, we shall let him off this time.’

New words and expressions  生词和短语

versus (title) /ˈvɜːsəs/ prep. 对
Christmas (1.1) /ˈkrɪsməs/ n. 圣诞节
circus (1.1) /ˈsɜːkəs/ n. 马戏团
present (1.2) /ˈprezənt/ n. 礼物
accompany (1.3) /əˈkæmpəri/ v. 陪同，陪同

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 Dressed up as Father Christmas and accompanied by a ‘guard of honour’ of six pretty girls, 打扮成圣诞老人, 在由 6 位漂亮姑娘组成的“仪仗队”的陪同下。过去分词短语 dressed up 和 accompanied by 作状语，说明伴随状态。
2 He should have known, 他本应知道。这里“should + have + 过去分词”表示本应发生但实际上并未发生的事情。
3 He ought to have gone along a side street, 他本应该走一条小路。ought 是助动词，“ought + have + 过去分词”表示过去该做而没有做的事情。
4 hold up the traffic, 阻碍交通。
5 get him off the main street, 把它推离主要街道。
6 he has a good record, 他表现一贯很好, 这里的 record 是指履历, 特别是警察局的档案。
7 let him off, 饶恕。

参考译文

去年圣诞节，马戏团老板吉米·盖茨决定送些礼物给儿童医院。他打扮成圣诞老人，在由 6 个漂亮姑娘组
Summary writing
Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.

1. What did he decide to take to a children’s hospital? How did the circus owner, Jimmy Gates, dress up? Did he set off down the main street of the city, or did he go down a side street? Was he riding an elephant called Jumbo or not?
   (After having ...) and ... riding)

2. Was he told that he was holding up the traffic or not? Did Jimmy agree to go at once, or not? Did Jumbo agree to go, or did he refuse to move? How many policemen had to push him off the main street? (On being ... but ... so...)

3. Did he have a good record or not? Was Jumbo arrested or not? (As ... however, ...)

Composition
Write three or four sentences using the ideas given below:

The children were waiting at the hospital — Jimmy and the guard of honour arrived — a great welcome — Jimmy gave presents to the children — they rode on Jumbo — time to leave — Jumbo refused to move.

Letter writing
Learn the following opening phrases by heart:

I really hate to complain, but ... Some time ago, I ...

Exercise
Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.

Key structures
Must, Have to, Should and Ought to

a. Do you remember these sentences:

   I must leave now. I have got to leave now. (KS17) (参见第17课关键句型)

   She had to go shopping yesterday. (KS17) (参见第17课关键句型)

b. Now compare these pairs of sentences:

   I can’t go to the cinema tonight; I must (or have to) write some letters. 今晚我不能去看电影, 我必须写信。

   I should (or ought to) do some work tonight, but I think I shall go to the cinema instead. 我今晚应该做点事, 但我今晚会去看电影。
I missed the train, so I had to take a taxi. I'm sorry I'm late. I should have taken (or ought to have taken) a taxi.

Exercises 练习

A Study the use in the passage of have to, should and ought.

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

1. He ______ (should/know) that the police would never allow this sort of thing. A policeman approached Jimmy and told him he ______ (ought/go) along a side street as Jumbo was holding up the traffic.
2. Fifteen policemen ______ (have to) push very hard.
3. It was fortunate that we ______ (not have to) carry him. Of course, we ______ (should/arrest) him, but we shall let him off this time.

C Supply the correct form of should, ought to, or have to in these sentences:

1. He ______ (come) at 4 o'clock if the plane arrives on time.
2. I didn't go shopping this morning as I ______ (do) the housework.
3. She ______ (come) to see me yesterday, but she forgot.
4. You ______ (ask) for permission before you left the table.
5. As they didn't understand, I ______ (explain) everything again.

Special difficulties 难点

a The verb let has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully:

1. As he has a good record, we shall let him off this time. (We shall not punish him.)
2. I expected him to help me, but he let me down. (He failed to do what I expected him to do.)
3. If anyone knocks at the door when I am out, don't let him in. (Who let the dog out?)

b Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

1. Agree and Accept.
   Though Jimmy agreed to go at once, Jumbo refused to move. (We are not allowed to accept presents from customers.)

2. Dress up and Dress.
   Dressed up as Father Christmas ... (Wearing fancy dress.)
   I got up at 6 o'clock, washed, shaved, dressed and had breakfast.
Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:
选择正确的词:
1 The teacher (agreed) (accepted) the boy’s apology and let him (off) (down).
2 He was going to lend me a policeman’s uniform so that I could (dress) (dress up) for the party, but he let me (in) (down).

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Jimmy wouldn’t have been stopped if ________ .
   (a) he had gone down a side street
   (b) he hadn’t ridden an elephant
   (c) he had gone down the main street
   (d) he hadn’t dressed up as Father Christmas
2 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) Jumbo was arrested.
   (b) Jimmy was arrested.
   (c) The police were not amused by what had happened.
   (d) The police had a difficult time getting Jumbo off the main street.

Structure 句型
3 Jimmy _______ Father Christmas.
   (a) seemed as (b) looked like (c) looked as (d) seemed
4 He should have known the police wouldn’t allow it ________ .
   (a) and he did (b) but he didn’t (c) but he couldn’t (d) but he had
5 He ought to have gone along a side street. That’s what he ________ .
   (a) should do (b) should be doing (c) should have done (d) should
6 Jumbo must weigh a few tons. Jumbo ________ a few tons.
   (a) probably weighs (b) has to weigh (c) ought to weigh (d) should weigh
7 ________ to carry him?
   (a) Did they have (b) Had they (c) Must they (d) Have they

Vocabulary 词汇
8 He set off down the main street. He ________ .
   (a) ran (b) walked (c) rode (d) started his journey
9 Jumbo was holding up the traffic. He had ________ cars.
   (a) picked up some (b) sat on some (c) stopped the (d) held on to the
10 Jimmy agreed to go at once, but Jumbo ________ to move.
   (a) denied (b) resisted (c) refused (d) negated
11 It was fortunate we didn’t have to carry him. It was our ________ .
   (a) good chance (b) good luck (c) fortune (d) fate
12 The police let him off. They ________ him.
   (a) allowed (b) permitted (c) didn’t forbid (d) didn’t punish
First listen and then answer the question.  
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What was ‘sweet as honey’ and why?

In 1963 a Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island, a remote place in the South Pacific, a long way west of Samoa. The plane wasn’t too badly damaged, but over the years, the crash was forgotten and the wreck remained undisturbed. Then in 1989, twenty-six years after the crash, the plane was accidentally rediscovered in an aerial survey of the island. By this time, a Lancaster bomber in reasonable condition was rare and worth rescuing. The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France. Now a group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane restored. It has four Rolls-Royce Merlin engines, but the group will need to have only three of them rebuilt. Imagine their surprise and delight when they broke open the packing cases and found that the fourth engine was sweet as honey — still in perfect condition. A colony of bees had turned the engine into a hive and it was totally preserved in beeswax!

New words and expressions

Lancaster (1.1) /'laepkosto/ n. 兰开斯特 bomber (1.1) /'boma/ n. 轰炸机 remote (1.1) /'ri'maʊt/ adj. 偏僻的 Pacific (1.2) /pa'sifik/ n. 太平洋 damage (1.3) /'daemadʒ/ v. 毁坏 wreck (1.4) /rek/ n. 残骸 rediscover (1.5) /'rɪdɪskər/ v. 重新发现 aerial (1.5) /'eəriəl/ adj. 航空的 survey (1.6) /'sɜ:vr/ n. 调查 rescue (1.7) /'reskju:/ v. 营救 package (1.8) /'pækidʒ/ v. 移包 enthusiast (1.9) /'entju:ziəst/ n. 热心人 restore (1.9) /'rɪ'stro:/ v. 修复 imagine (1.10) /'ɪmædʒin/ v. 想像 packing case (1.10-11) /'pækɪŋ keɪs/ 包装箱 colony (1.11) /'kələni/ n. 群 bee (1.11) /bi:/ n. 蜜蜂 hive (1.12) /haiv/ n. 蜂房 preserve (1.12) /pri'zərv/ v. 保护 beeswax (1.12) /'biizwaeks/ n. 蜂蜡

Notes on the text 课文注释
1 west of Samoa, 萨摩亚群岛以西。
2 worth rescuing, 有抢救的价值。
3 The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France. 法国政府让飞机打包起来，一部分一部分地搬回法国。
Reference Translation

1963年，一架兰开斯特轰炸机在瓦立斯岛坠毁。那是南太平洋中一个很偏僻的小岛，位于萨摩亚群岛以西，距离群岛还有很长一段距离。飞机损坏的程度并不严重，但是，多年来这起飞机失事已经被遗忘。飞机残骸也没受到破坏。于是，到了1989年，飞机失事26年后，在对小岛的一次航空勘查中那架飞机被意外地发现了。到了那个时候，状况良好的兰开斯特轰炸机实属罕见。为了把这架飞机修复起来，一部分一部分地搬回法国。一群热心人计划修复这架飞机。该飞机装配有4台罗尔斯·罗伊斯的默林发动机，但是他们只需要修复其中的3台。想一想所受到的惊奇和兴奋——当他们拆开包装箱时，他们发现第4台发动机就像蜂蜜一样甜——发动机完好无损。一群蜜蜂把发动机当作了蜂房，发动机在蜂蜡中被完整地保存了下来。

Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 100 words.

1 Was the Lancaster bomber badly damaged when it crashed on a remote island in the south Pacific?
2 How long did the wreck remain undisturbed? How was it rediscovered? (Then ... until ...)
3 What did the French authorities do with the plane? Who will be having it restored? (.... where ...)
4 How many engines will they have to have rebuilt? Why is the fourth engine still in perfect condition? (.... but ... because ...)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the sentences below using the joining words in parentheses. Make any necessary changes:

1 The Lancaster bomber crashed. It was not too badly damaged. The island was very remote. The wreck remained undisturbed for more than twenty years. (When ..., but ... so ... that)
2 Now some enthusiasts in France plan to have the plane restored. They are absolutely delighted. (who)
3 They will only need to have three of the engines rebuilt. The fourth engine was preserved in beeswax. It is still as sweet as honey. (because ... and)

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a short opening paragraph of a letter to a friend who has invited you to go to the circus with him.

Key structures 关键句型

Have (KS18, KS42) （参见第18课和第42课的关键句型）

Study these sentences carefully.

I washed my car. (I washed it myself.) 我洗了车。
I had my car washed. (Someone else washed it for me.) 我让人洗了车。
I’m going to clean my suit. (I’m going to clean it by myself.) 我将洗一洗我的西服。
I’m going to have my suit cleaned. (Someone else will do it for me.) 我将把我的西服送出去洗一洗。
He had his hair cut yesterday. 他昨天理了发。
I will have to have my watch repaired. 我将不得不去修表。
Did you have your watch repaired? 你把你的表修好了吗?
I didn’t have my watch repaired. 我没有把表修好。
Unit 3  Lesson 66

Exercises 练习

A Find four examples in the passage of have + object + past participle: have something done.

B Write these sentences again using have with the verbs in italics. Do not refer to the passage until you have finished the exercise.

1 The French authorities took charge of the plane. It was packaged and moved in parts back to France.
2 The plane is going to be restored by a group of enthusiasts.
3 The group are delighted. Only three of the engines will need to be rebuilt.

C Rewrite these sentences using have with the verb in italics and making any necessary changes.

1 He is building a new house.
2 She will make a new dress.
3 I did not decorate the house.
4 They repaired the washing machine.
5 We must cut this dangerous tree down.
6 We have to install this new television set.

Special difficulties 难点

A group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane repaired.

Collective noun + singular or plural verb.

Study these sentences:

The national team is travelling to London tomorrow.
The team are all highly talented young people.
The audience is made up of school children.
The audience were spellbound by the magic of the performance.

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct verb in these sentences:

1 The Government (has) (have) taken strong measures against inflation.
2 The shipwrecked crew (was) (were) rescued from the water by helicopter.
3 (Has) (Have) the staff been informed about the meeting?
4 This class (is) (are) a pleasure to teach.

302
Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1 People are interested in restoring the Lancaster bomber because __________.
   (a) it had crashed over twenty years ago
   (b) the crash took place in a remote island in the South Pacific
   (c) it was a rare model
   (d) it was discovered accidentally

2 What had preserved one of the four engines all these years?
   (a) The kind efforts of the French government.
   (b) A colony of bees.
   (c) The interest of a group of enthusiasts.
   (d) The remote island west of Samoa.

Structure

3 Wallis Island is west of Samoa. Wallis is __________.
   (a) to the west of Samoa
   (b) to the east of Samoa
   (c) in the west of Samoa
   (d) in the east of Samoa

4 The wreck remained undisturbed. It was not __________.
   (a) moved
   (b) damaged
   (c) packaged
   (d) restored

5 By 1989, a Lancaster bomber was rare and worth __________.
   (a) to be saved
   (b) to save
   (c) saved
   (d) saving

6 Only three of the four Rolls Royce Merlin engines __________ rebuilt.
   (a) will have to be
   (b) need have been
   (c) are being
   (d) had to be

Vocabulary

7 A group of enthusiasts are planning to have the plane __________.
   (a) repaired
   (b) repairing
   (c) reparation
   (d) being repaired

8 The plane was moved back to France in parts. It was sent __________.
   (a) as a whole
   (b) bit by bit
   (c) completely
   (d) totally

9 Wallis Island is a remote place in the South Pacific. It is __________.
   (a) far away
   (b) well-known
   (c) popular
   (d) close to the European continent

10 __________ the years that followed, the crash was forgotten.
    (a) Between
    (b) During
    (c) While
    (d) Among

11 A Lancaster bomber was rare by 1989. It was __________.
    (a) common
    (b) uncommon
    (c) popular
    (d) well-known

12 The bomber was in __________ condition.
    (a) fair
    (b) bad
    (c) perfect
    (d) terrible

Sentence structure

Join the following sentences, then check your answer against the text.

A Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island. The island is a remote place in the South Pacific. It is west of Samoa. It is a long way from Samoa.
Lesson 67  Volcanoes 火山

First listen and then answer the question.

Why does Tazieff risk his life like this?

Haroun Tazieff, the Polish scientist, has spent his lifetime studying active volcanoes and deep caves in all parts of the world. In 1948, he went to Lake Kivu in the Congo to observe a new volcano which he later named Kituro. Tazieff was able to set up his camp very close to the volcano while it was erupting violently. Though he managed to take a number of brilliant photographs, he could not stay near the volcano for very long. He noticed that a river of liquid rock was coming towards him. It threatened to surround him completely, but Tazieff managed to escape just in time. He waited until the volcano became quiet and he was able to return two days later. This time, he managed to climb into the mouth of Kituro so that he could take photographs and measure temperatures. Tazieff has often risked his life in this way. He has been able to tell us more about active volcanoes than any man alive.

New words and expressions

volcano (title) /volˈkeɪnəʊ/ n. 火山
active (1.2) /ˈæktɪv/ adj. 活动的
Kivu (1.3) /ˈkɪvʊ/ n. 基伍湖
Congo (1.3) /ˈkɒŋɡəʊ/ n. (the ~) 刚果
Kituro (1.4) /kɪˈtʊroʊ/ n. 基图罗
erupt (1.5) /ɪˈrʌpt/ v. (火山) 喷发
violently (1.5) /ˈvaɪələntli/ adv. 猛烈地, 剧烈地
manage (1.6) /məˈneɪdʒ/ v. 设法
brilliant (1.6) /ˈbrɪliənt/ adj. 精彩的
liquid (1.7) /ˈlɪkwaɪd/ adj. 液态的
escape (1.9) /ɪˈskɛp/ v. 逃脱
alive (1.12) /ˈəʊlɪv/ adj. 活着的

Notes on the text

1 has spent his lifetime studying 指的精力都用于研究。动词 spend 后面常加 in doing sth., 其中 in 可以省略。
2 in all parts of the world 这个介词短语用来修饰前面两个名词，意思是“世界各地的（活火山和深洞）”。
3 a river of liquid rock，一段岩浆，这是一种修辞方法，被称为暗喻。
4 in time，及时地。
5 risked his life，冒着生命危险。
6 any man alive 中，alive 作定语，意思是“在世的人”，“活人”。

参考译文

波兰科学家哈罗恩·塔捷耶夫花了毕生的精力来研究世界各地的活火山和深洞。1948年他去了刚果的基伍湖，对一座后来被他命名为基图罗的新火山行观察。当火山正在猛烈地喷发时，塔捷耶夫有办法把帐篷搭在离它非常近的地方。尽管他设法拍了一些十分精彩的照片，但他却不能在火山附近停留太长的时间。他发现有一股岩浆正向他流过来，眼看就要将他团团围住，但塔捷耶夫还是设法及时逃离了。他等到火山平静下来，两天以后
Summary writing 摘要写作
Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.
回答下列问题，在不超过80个单词内回答。
1. Where did Tazieff, the Polish scientist, go in 1948? Why did he go there? What did he call it? (to... which)
2. Did he take photographs or not? Did he have to leave almost at once or not? Did a river of liquid rock threaten to surround him or not? (After taking ... because)
3. Did he escape just in time or not? When did he return? Had the volcano become quiet, or was it still active? (but ... when)
4. Where did he climb this time? Why did he do so? (in order to)

Composition 作文
Write three or four sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下信息写出 3 至 4 个句子来:
Tazieff went into the mouth of Kituro — saw the boiling red centre — ash — lumps of rock shooting up — in great danger — took photographs — returned to camp.

Letter writing 书信写作
Write six sentences beginning with each of the following:
用以下词组写出6封信的开头语;
Thank you ...; What a ...; Forgive ...; I have not ...; I am sorry ...; It was very ...;

Key structures 关键句型
Can, Be able to and Manage to
Can, Be able to and Manage to
a. Do you remember these sentences? (KS43b, c)
你还记得以下句子吗? (参见第43课关键句型 b, c)
I couldn’t understand him.
我不能理解他。
I wasn’t able to understand him.
我无法理解他。
He was able to leave Europe before the war began. 他在战争爆发前离开了欧洲。
b. Managed to can be used like was able to to show that an action has been completed successfully. (KS43c)
managed to 可以像 was able to 表示一个成功完成的动作。 (参见第43课关键句型 c)
Instead of saying:
除了这种表达方法外:
He didn’t agree with me at first but I was able to persuade him.
他开始时不同意我但我能成功说服他。
He was able to leave Europe before the war began.
他成功地在战争爆发前离开了欧洲。

We can say:
还可以说:
He didn’t agree with me at first but I managed to persuade him.
他开始时不同意我但 I managed to persuade him.
He managed to leave Europe before the war began.
他成功地在战争爆发前离开了欧洲。

Exercises 练习
A. Underline the verbs could, was able to and managed to in the passage. Note how they have been used.
划出课文中 could, was able to 和 managed to，并注意它们的用法。
Unit 3 Lesson 67

B Supply could, was able to or managed to in this paragraph. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

Tazieff _______ set up his camp very close to the volcano while it was erupting violently. Though he _______ take a number of brilliant photographs, he _______ not stay near the volcano for very long. He noticed that a river of liquid rock was coming towards him. It threatened to surround him completely, but Tazieff escaped just in time. He waited until the volcano became quiet and he _______ return two days later. This time, he _______ climb into the mouth of Kituro so that he _______ take photographs and measure temperatures.

C Rewrite these sentences using managed to in place of could not.

1 I could not get into town this morning. 2 I could not translate the passage into English. 3 They could not find the boy who had run away. 4 They could not swim to the other side of the river. 5 He could not find a new job.

Special difficulties 难点

Phrases with say and tell (KS15) 带 say 与 tell 的短语（参见第 15 课关键句型）

Study these phrases:

细读以下句子:

a Say.

Did he say anything to you about it? No, he said nothing. 他有没有告诉你有关的任何事情? 没有, 他什么也没有说。

He knelt down and said his prayers. 他跪下来祈祷。

If you want some more cake, please say so. 如果你还想要蛋糕的话, 请说一声。

I'm sure it would help if you could say a good word for him. 如果你能为他说句好话, 我相信肯定是有帮助的。

He said goodbye and left. 他告辞后离开了。

Please say no more about it. 请不要再提这件事了。

b Tell.

He has been able to tell us more about volcanoes ... （II.11-12）

Can you tell me anything about it? 你能告诉我有关的任何事情吗?

Please tell us a story. 请给我们讲个故事。

Can you tell the time in English? 你能用英语报时吗?

I want you to tell me the truth. 我要你讲真话。

He often tells lies. 他经常说谎。

If you promise not to tell anyone, I’ll tell you a secret. 如果你发誓不告诉任何人, 我要告诉你一个秘密。

Can't you tell the difference between an Austin and a Morris? 你能区分奥斯丁和莫利斯吗?

Exercise 练习

Supply the correct form of say or tell in the following sentence:

用 say 或 tell 填空:

1 He is only five, but he can already _______ the time.
2 They asked the prisoner several questions, but he _______ nothing.
3 If you _______ so, I suppose it's true. I don’t think you would _______ me a lie.
4 They are so alike, I can’t _______ the difference between them.
5 He _______ me about his experiences in the Navy.
6 If you could _______ a good word for him, he might get the job.

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**

1 Tazieff went to the Congo _______.
   (a) to observe Lake Kivu  (b) to take photographs
   (c) to name a new volcano  (d) to investigate a new volcano

2 Kituro erupted violently _______.
   (a) and Tazieff had to leave but he returned later  (b) so Tazieff had to leave and couldn’t return
   (c) so Tazieff couldn’t take photographs  (d) so Tazieff couldn’t measure temperatures

**Structure 结构**

3 He managed to take a number of photographs. This means he _______ them.
   (a) might have taken  (b) could have taken  (c) should have taken  (d) succeeded in taking

4 He escaped just in time. He _______ escaped.
   (a) just only  (b) only  (c) soon  (d) only just

5 He waited until the volcano became quiet. He waited _______ quiet.
   (a) to the volcano to become  (b) the volcano to become
   (c) the volcano became  (d) for the volcano to become

6 He was able to return. This means he _______.
   (a) could if he wanted to  (b) might  (c) could have  (d) did

7 He has been able to tell us a lot _______ volcanoes.
   (a) considering  (b) on the subject of  (c) in relation  (d) referring

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 Tazieff is a Polish scientist. He comes from _______.
   (a) Pole  (b) Poland  (c) Polish  (d) the Pole

9 He named it Kituro. That’s what he _______ it.
   (a) called  (b) shouted  (c) cried  (d) screamed

10 The rock was in a liquid state. It wasn’t _______.
    (a) firm  (b) stable  (c) whole  (d) solid

11 He wanted to measure temperatures. He wanted to _______ them.
    (a) count  (b) make  (c) do  (d) take

12 He has told us more than any _______ person.
    (a) alive  (b) lively  (c) live  (d) living

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Make two sentences of the following, then check your answer against the text.
将下面的句子改写成两句话，完成练习后，再对照课文第7-9行，核对你的答案。

Tazieff noticed that a river of liquid rock, which threatened to surround him completely, was coming towards him, but he managed to escape just in time.
Lesson 68  Persistent  纠缠不休

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Why did Elizabeth tell Nigel that she was going to the dentist?

I crossed the street to avoid meeting him, but he saw me and came running towards me. It was no use pretending that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. I never enjoy meeting Nigel Dykes. He never has anything to do. No matter how busy you are, he always insists on coming with you. I had to think of a way of preventing him from following me around all morning.

‘Hello, Nigel,’ I said. ‘Fancy meeting you here!’
‘Hi, Elizabeth,’ Nigel answered. ‘I was just wondering how to spend the morning — until I saw you. You’re not busy doing anything, are you?’

‘No, not at all,’ I answered. ‘I’m going to …’
‘Would you mind my coming with you?’ he asked, before I had finished speaking.
‘Not at all,’ I lied, ‘but I’m going to the dentist.’
‘Then I’ll come with you,’ he answered. ‘There’s always plenty to read in the waiting room!’

New words and expressions 生词和短语

persistent (title) /ps'sistant/ adj. 坚持的，固执的  insist (1.5) /m’sist/ v. 坚持做
avoid (1.1) /'əvɔid/ v. 避开

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 to avoid meeting him, 为了避免碰上他，这是动词后面用动名词作宾语的结构。本课下文中出现的 enjoy, fancy, mind, finish 等动词，也是只接动名词作宾语的动词。
2 came running towards me, 向我跑来，running 是现在分词，作状语，表示状况。
3 It was no use pretending, 装作……是没有用了。在这句话中，it 是先行词，实际上主语是动名词短语 pretending that I had not seen him。
4 No matter how busy you are, 不管你有多忙。这是一个让步状语从句，no matter 常与 how, when, where, what, who 等引导的从句相连，可译成“无论”。
5 prevent sb. from doing sth. 是“阻止某人做某事”，介词 from 可以省略。
6 Fancy meeting you here! 想不到在这里见到你！fancy + -ing 表示对后面的 -ing 所表示的动作感到惊奇。
7 You’re not busy doing anything, are you? 你不忙，是吧？这是一个附加疑问句，也称反意疑问句。它是由陈述句加上简略疑问句构成的。如果陈述句是肯定的，那么疑问句用否定形式；反之，陈述句是否定的，疑问句用肯定形式。
8 Would you mind my coming with you? 我跟你一道去行吗? 这是一个表示客气请求的结构，my 是动名词 coming 的逻辑主语。
9 the waiting room, 候诊室。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 70 words.

1. Did Elizabeth try to avoid meeting Nigel Dykes or not? Was she able to do so or not? (Even though)
2. Did he always insist on accompanying her or not? What did she have to do? (Av)
3. Where did she tell him she was going? Why did he say he would come with her? (When because)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the sentences below using the joining words in parentheses:

1. There was a dentist nearby. She knew him well. Elizabeth decided to go there. She would explain what had happened. (As ... whom ... in order to)
2. Nigel was in the waiting room. Elizabeth spoke to the dentist. He told her to leave at once through another door. (While ... and)
3. Elizabeth left. The dentist went into the waiting room. ‘Do you want to have your teeth examined?’ he asked Nigel. (After ... and asked Nigel if ...)

Letter writing 书信写作

Write four sentences beginning with each of the following:

You must be very annoyed with me for ...
I have just heard that ...
I really hate to complain, but ...
Some time ago, I ...

Key structures 关键句型

I crossed the street to avoid meeting him. (Compare KS20, KS44)

a. Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics:
   - I always avoid travelling during rush hour. 我总是避免在高峰时间乘车。
   - He enjoys playing football. 他喜欢踢足球。
He completely denies taking it. He completely denies taking it.

Fancy meeting you here! 真想不到在这里见到你。

It's no use crying about it. 为它而哭是没有用的。

It's not worth worrying about. 这不值得忧虑。

I can't stand people shouting and pushing. 我不能容忍人们大声吵嚷和乱冲乱撞。

Can't you see I'm busy writing? 你难道看不见我正忙着写作吗?

Would you mind opening the window? 麻烦你把窗子打开好吗?

I don't mind waiting. 我不在乎等候。

b Compare these sentences:  比较以下句子，注意动名词的逻辑主语的表达形式：

Would you mind opening the window? 你能打开窗户吗?

Would you mind my opening the window? 你介意我打开窗户吗?

Fancy writing a letter like that! 真想不到写了那样一封信。

Fancy her writing a letter like that! 真想不到她写了那样一封信。

c See, Hear and Smell.  看，听和闻。

Study these sentences:  研究这些句子：

I saw him coming. 我看见他来了。

He heard me opening the door. 他听见我开门。

I can smell something burning. 我闻见什么东西烧焦了。

d Go and Come.  去和来。

Study these sentences:  研究这些句子：

Let's go dancing. 让我们去跳舞。

I went shopping this morning. 今天上午我去买东西了。

Come swimming with me tomorrow. 明天和我一起去游泳。

Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage that end in -ing.  划出课文中所有以-ing 结尾的动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:  用正确的动词填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案:

I crossed the street to avoid ________ (meet) him, but he saw me and came ________ (run) towards me. It was no use ________ (pretend) that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. I never enjoy ________ (meet) Nigel Dykes. No matter how busy you are, he always insists on ________ (come) with you. I had to think of a way of ________ (prevent) him from ________ (follow) me around all morning.

'Hello, Nigel,' I said. 'Fancy ________ (meet) you here!'

'Hi, Elizabeth,' Nigel answered. 'I was just wondering how to spend the morning — until I saw you. You're not busy ________ (do) anything, are you?'

'No, not at all,' I answered. 'I'm going to ...'

'Would you mind my ________ (come) with you?' he asked, before I had finished ________ (speak).
C Write sentences beginning with each of the following:

1 It's no use ...
2 Let's go ...
3 Forgive my ...
4 Do you deny ...
5 He came ...
6 I'm busy ...
7 I always enjoy ...
8 Would you mind ...

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Elizabeth greeted Nigel Dykes _______.
   (a) because she likes him
   (b) out of politeness
   (c) because she likes his company
   (d) because he waved to her

2 Which word best describes Nigel Dykes? He is _______.
   (a) funny
   (b) insensitive
   (c) nuisance
   (d) cruel

Structure 句型

3 He came running towards her. He went _______ after her.
   (a) run
   (b) to running
   (c) running
   (d) ran

4 It was no use pretending that she had not seen him. It wasn’t worth _______.
   (a) to do
   (b) do
   (c) done
   (d) doing

5 Nigel Dykes never has anything to do. He always _______.
   (a) has to do nothing
   (b) has nothing to do
   (c) nothing has to do
   (d) to do nothing has

6 He insisted _______ with her.
   (a) to go
   (b) that he should go
   (c) to going
   (d) in going

7 She said she didn’t mind _______ going with her.
   (a) -
   (b) his
   (c) he
   (d) himself

Vocabulary 词汇

8 Elizabeth wanted to _______ meeting him.
   (a) prevent
   (b) prevent from
   (c) avoid
   (d) escape from

9 She didn’t pretend she hadn’t seen him. She didn’t _______ she hadn’t.
   (a) make as if
   (b) do as if
   (c) act as if
   (d) conduct as if

10 She waved to him. She _______ him.
    (a) shook
    (b) saluted
    (c) greeted
    (d) called

11 Fancy meeting you here! _______!
    (a) Imagine
    (b) Think
    (c) Consider
    (d) Contemplate

12 She lied to him. What she said was _______.
    (a) false
    (b) true
    (c) lie
    (d) wrong

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 4-5 行，核对你的答案。
It doesn’t matter whether you are busy or not, he always insists on coming with you.
No _______.
First listen and then answer the question.

Do you think that the writer passed his driving test? Why?

I was being tested for a driving licence for the third time. I had been asked to drive in heavy traffic and had done so successfully. After having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence. Sure that I had passed, I was almost beginning to enjoy my test. The examiner must have been pleased with my performance, for he smiled and said, ‘Just one more thing, Mr. Eames. Let us suppose that a child suddenly crosses the road in front of you. As soon as I tap on the window, you must stop within five feet.’ I continued driving and after some time, the examiner tapped loudly. Though the sound could be heard clearly, it took me a long time to react. I suddenly pressed the brake pedal hard and we were both thrown forward. The examiner looked at me sadly. ‘Mr. Eames,’ he said, in a mournful voice, ‘you have just killed that child!’

New words and expressions

murder (title) /ˈmɜːdər/ n. 谋杀
instruct (1.3) /ɪnˈstrʌkt/ v. 命令，指示
acquire (1.3) /əˈkwaɪər/ v. 取得，获得
certainty (1.4) /ˈkənfɪdəns/ n. 信心
examiner (1.5) /ɪɡˈzaɪmən/ n. 主考人
suppose (1.7) /səˈpɔz/ v. 假设
tap (1.8) /tæp/ v. 轻敲
react (1.10) /rɪˈeɪkt/ v. 反应
brake (1.10) /breɪk/ n. 刹车
pedal (1.10) /ˈpedl/ n. 踏板
mournful (1.11) /ˈmɔːnfl/ adj. 悲哀的

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. driving licence, 驾驶执照。
2. After having been instructed to drive out of town, 在接到把车开出城的指令后。介词 after 后接动名词完成式的被动结构，整个介词短语作时间状语，相当于一个由 when 引导的时间状语从句 After I had been instructed to ...。
3. Sure that I had passed, 确信我已通过考试, sure 的前面省略了 Being。
4. The examiner must have been pleased, 主考人对我的驾驶想必是满意的。这里用 must + have + 过去分词来对过去的事情表示推测。
5. in a mournful voice, 用悲伤的声调。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.

1. Had Mr. Eames driven successfully in heavy traffic during his third driving test or not? What did the examiner instruct him to do? (when)
2. What did he tell him to suppose? (that ... would)
3. What would Mr. Eames have to do when the examiner tapped on the window?
4. Did he tap loudly or not? Did Mr. Eames react quickly enough or not? What was he told? (Though ... and)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:

Three months later Eames appeared for his fourth test — again told to stop — the examiner was thrown forward, but the child’s life was saved — Eames passed his test, but the examiner said, ‘You nearly killed me this time!’

Letter writing 书信写作

Write five opening phrases which could be used in letters to friends or relations.

Key structures 关键句型

After having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence.

a. You have learnt to write sentences like these:

- It was made in Germany in 1681. (KS10) (第 10 课关键句型)
- I told you it could be done. (KS21) (第 21 课关键句型)
- I can’t find my bag. It must have been stolen. (KS21) (第 21 课关键句型)
- The man was being questioned by the police. (KS34) (第 34 课关键句型)
- He never expected the bicycle to be found. (KS34) (第 34 课关键句型)
- I found the parcel had been sent to the wrong address. (KS45) (第 45 课关键句型)

b. Now study these sentences:

- Instead of saying:
  - After he was arrested, the man confessed that he had stolen the money.

- We can say:
  - After being arrested, the man confessed that he had stolen the money.
  - After having been instructed to drive out of town, he began to acquire confidence.
Unit 3 Lesson 69
Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which are similar in form to the examples given above.
在课文中划出与以上句型相似的动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。
I ________ (test) for my driving licence for the third time. I ________ (ask) to drive in heavy traffic and had done so successfully. After ________ (have/instruct) to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence. Sure that I had passed, I was almost beginning to enjoy my test. The examiner ________ (must/please) with my performance, for he smiled and said, 'Just one more thing, Mr. Eames. Let us suppose that a child suddenly crosses the road in front of you. As soon as I tap on the window, you must ________ (stop) within five feet.' I continued driving and after some time, the examiner tapped loudly. Though the sound ________ (could/hear) clearly, it took me a long time to react. I suddenly pressed the brake pedal hard and we both ________ (throw) forward.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词
a Practice, Advice.
Study these pairs of sentences:
细读以下各对句子:
He still needs a lot of practice. 他仍需大量的练习。
He practises the piano every day. 他每天练习弹钢琴。
I want to give you some advice. 我想给你提点建议。
What do you advise me to do? 你想建议我干什么?

b Enjoy, Entertain, and Amuse.
Study these examples:
细读以下各对句子:
I was almost beginning to enjoy my test. (ll.4-5)
We enjoyed ourselves at the party. 在聚会上我们玩得很痛快。
He entertained me to dinner. 他请我吃饭。
He entertained everybody with his clever tricks. 他精彩的戏法使大家都很高兴。
The children were amused by the circus clown. (They laughed.) 孩子们被马戏团的小丑逗乐了。
His funny stories amused us all. (They made us laugh.) 他那些稀奇古怪的故事把我们都逗乐了。
That child can amuse himself for hours playing in the sand. (He can pass his time happily.) 那个孩子可以一个人在沙堆里玩上几个小时。

Exercise 练习
Choose the correct words in the following sentences:
选择正确的词:
1 I never (amuse)(enjoy)(practicing)(practising) the piano.
2 We were all (amused)(enjoyed) by the jokes he told us.
3 He (advised)(advised) me to get a (license)(licence).
4 We rarely (entertain) (amuse) these days.
5 We (entertained) (enjoyed) some friends to dinner last night.
6 The magician (amused) (enjoyed) the audience very much.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 Mr. Eames felt confident because ________.
   (a) he was sure he hadn’t failed this time  (b) he had driven in heavy traffic
   (c) he had driven out of town  (d) the examiner smiled
2 Mr. Eames probably failed his test because ________.
   (a) he ran over a child  (b) he didn’t stop quickly enough
   (c) he pressed the brake pedal too hard  (d) he and the examiner were thrown forward

Structure 旬型
3 Mr. Eames was taking the driving test. The examiner ________ him.
   (a) was being testing  (b) was being tested  (c) was testing  (d) was tested
4 The examiner must have been pleased. He ________ pleased.
   (a) had to be  (b) was probably  (c) was certainly  (d) should be
5 Let us suppose that a child suddenly crosses the road. Imagine it ________.
   (a) would happen  (b) happening  (c) had been happening  (d) will have happened
6 Mr. Eames continued ________.
   (a) to driving  (b) drive  (c) to drive  (d) to have been driving
7 I want the car to be stopped. I ________ the car.
   (a) want to stop  (b) want stop  (c) want you stop  (d) want you to stop

Vocabulary 词汇
8 When you have passed a driving test, you are allowed to ________.
   (a) drive a car  (b) buy a car  (c) sell a car  (d) keep a car
9 He began to acquire confidence. He gradually ________ confident.
   (a) became  (b) came  (c) obtained  (d) took
10 He was instructed by the examiner to drive out of town. He was ________ to do this.
    (a) taught  (b) told  (c) trained  (d) prepared
11 The examiner must have been pleased with my performance. He was pleased with my ________.
    (a) act  (b) behaviour  (c) efforts  (d) doings
12 The examiner spoke in a mournful voice. His voice was ________.
    (a) lamentable  (b) sorry  (c) pitiful  (d) sorrowful

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 2-3 行，核对你的答案。
I had been instructed to drive out of town and I began to acquire confidence.
After ________.

315
Lesson 70  Red for danger 危险的红色

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
How was the drunk removed from the ring?

During a bullfight, a drunk suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring. The crowd began to shout, but the drunk was unaware of the danger. The bull was busy with the matador at the time, but it suddenly caught sight of the drunk who was shouting rude remarks and waving a red cap. Apparently sensitive to criticism, the bull forgot all about the matador and charged at the drunk. The crowd suddenly grew quiet. The drunk, however, seemed quite sure of himself. When the bull got close to him, he clumsily stepped aside to let it pass. The crowd broke into cheers and the drunk bowed. By this time, however, three men had come into the ring and they quickly dragged the drunk to safety. Even the bull seemed to feel sorry for him, for it looked on sympathetically until the drunk was out of the way before once more turning its attention to the matador.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

bullfight (1.1) /'bolfait/ n. 斗牛
drunk (1.1) /dræŋk/ n. 醉汉
wander (1.1) /'wʌndər/ v. 窜出，乱走
ring (1.2) /rɪŋ/ n. 圆形竞技场地
unaware (1.2) /ˌʌnəˈweə/ adj. 未察觉的
bull (1.3) /bʊl/ n. 公牛
matador (1.3) /'matədɔ/ n. 斗牛士
remark (1.4) /'rɪmərk/ n. 评论；言语
apparently (1.5) /'æpərəntli/ adv. 明显地
sensitive (1.5) /'sensitiv/ adj. 敏感的
criticism (1.5) /'krɪtɪsɪzm/ n. 批评
charge (1.6) /tʃɑːdʒ/ v. 冲上去
clumsily (1.8) /'klʌmzɪli/ adv. 笨拙地
bow (1.9) /bau/ v. 端正
safety (1.10) /'sefti/ n. 安全地带
sympathetically (1.11) /ˌsɪmpəˈθɛtɪkli/ adv. 同情地

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. be unaware of ... 不知道，没有察觉……。
2. catch sight of ... 突然看到……。
3. Apparently sensitive to criticism，可以看作是省略了 being 的现在分词短语，作状语，说明原因。
4. charge at ... 向……攻击。
5. break into cheers，突然喝起彩来，break into ... 作“突然发出”，“突然……起来”讲。
6. look on，旁观。
7. out of the way，碍事；不挡路。

参考译文

在一次斗牛时，一个醉汉突然溜达到斗牛场中间，人们开始大叫起来，但醉汉却没有意识到危险。当时那公牛正忙于对付斗牛士，但突然它看见了醉汉，只见他正大声说着粗鲁的话，手里挥动着一顶红帽子。对挑衅显
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.

1. Did a drunk suddenly wander into the middle of the ring during a bullfight or not? What did he do? (and)
2. Did the bull ignore the matador or not? What did it do? Why did he step aside? (Ignoring ... but)
3. Did the crowd cheer or not? What did the drunk do? (and)
4. Did three men drag the drunk to safety just after this or not? Did the bull look on sympathetically or not? Did it once more turn its attention to the matador or not? (Just after this ... while ... before it ...)

Composition 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

用括号中的连词改写以下句子：

1. The man became sober. It was possible to discover his identity. (When)
2. He was Domingo Cordova. He had been a great matador in his youth. He had failed in the ring. He had taken to drinking. (... a man who ... but having ...)
3. He had changed. No one recognized him. (so much that)

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart:

熟记以下 3 个开头语：

I have not forgotten that ... You will find it hard to believe, but ... I am afraid I ...

Exercise 练习

Write sentences completing each of the above phrases.

用以上 3 个开头语写出完整的句子。

Key structures 关键句型

Words followed by for, with, of, to, at, from, in, on, and about (Compare KS22, KS46)

与 for, with, of, to, at, from, in, on 和 about 连用的词（对比第 22、46 课的关键句型）

Use this list for reference:

请参考下表：

a. FOR: eager, enough, famous, fit, grateful (or to), qualified (or in), ready (or to), responsible, sorry, sufficient, thankful (or to), valid.
   与 for 连用的形容词：渴望的，足够的，著名的，适合的，因……而感激；胜任的，准备好的，对……负责的，对……感到遗憾的，充足的，有效的，为……

b. WITH: angry (with someone; at something), busy (or at), consistent, content, familiar (or to), patient, popular.
   与 with 连用的形容词：因某人或某事生气，忙于，与……一致的，对……满意的，与……熟悉的，有耐心的，为……喜爱的。
A There are some words in the passage which are included in the above list. These words are followed by for, with, of, and to. Can you find them?

B Supply the missing words (for, with, of, to, at, from, in, on or about) without referring to the above list as far as possible.

1 George is jealous ______ his younger sister.
2 She is well-qualified ______ languages and very efficient ______ her work.
3 We are fortunate ______ having sufficient supplies of fuel ______ the winter.
4 Contrary ______ my expectations, there was no need to be uneasy ______ the results of the match.
5 I am not familiar ______ his novels and not very keen ______ reading them.
6 I know he is slow ______ understanding, but you have to be patient ______ him.
7 It is obvious ______ everyone that he is not responsible ______ this mistake.
8 I think he’s quite honest ______ his intentions.
9 He is not only indifferent ______ other people; he is often extremely rude ______ them as well.
10 I’m not very fond ______ dancing.
11 Children remain dependent ______ their parents for a long time.
12 I should be grateful ______ any advice you can give.
13 He is not different ______ anyone else.
14 He may be quick ______ understanding, but he’s not capable ______ remembering anything.
15 He is intent ______ passing the examination, but I’m doubtful ______ his chances.
16 He says he's sorry ________ what he did, so don't get angry ________ him.
17 I've never been good ________ arithmetic.
18 That boy is far ahead ________ everyone else in the class.
19 Even though he was often cruel ________ his dog, it remained faithful ________ him.
20 Your conclusions are not consistent ________ the facts.
21 This diary will prove useful ________ you.
22 I'm not sure ________ the exact date, but I think he arrived here in 1993.
23 He was found guilty ________ a great many crimes.
24 You should not be so sensitive ________ criticism.
25 This passport is valid ________ all countries.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The drunk went into the ring ________.
   (a) but the bull didn't notice him  (b) and the matador asked him to leave
   (c) and threw something at the bull  (d) and attracted the bull's attention
2 The drunk spent some time in the ring ________.
   (a) but the bull didn't notice him  (b) before he was removed
   (c) and was badly hurt  (d) and annoyed the crowd

Structure 句型
3 The bull charged at the drunk. It ran straight ________ him.
   (a) to  (b) against  (c) at  (d) for
4 The drunk was sure of himself. He was sure ________ be all right.
   (a) he will  (b) that he will  (c) he would  (d) he may
5 The drunk stepped aside and let the bull ________.
   (a) passing  (b) to pass  (c) in passing  (d) pass
6 ________, however, three men had come into the ring.
   (a) Up till that time  (b) By then  (c) So far  (d) Until then
7 It looked on before ________ its attention to the matador.
   (a) turn  (b) to turn  (c) it turned  (d) it was turning

Vocabulary 词汇
8 The drunk was unaware of the danger. He wasn't ________ it.
   (a) conscious of  (b) sensitive to
   (c) knowledgeable about  (d) sensible about
9 The crowd suddenly grew quiet. It ________ quiet.
   (a) increased  (b) began  (c) became  (d) behaved
10 He stepped aside. He got ________ the way.
    (a) in  (b) on  (c) this  (d) out of
11 It looked on sympathetically. It ________ him.
    (a) liked  (b) loved  (c) sympathised  (d) felt sorry for
12 The bull had been ________ the drunk.
    (a) taking care of  (b) looking after  (c) paying attention to  (d) minding
Lesson 71  A famous clock  一个著名的大钟

First listen and then answer the question.

Has Big Ben ever gone wrong?

When you visit London, one of the first things you will see is Big Ben, the famous clock which can be heard all over the world on the B.B.C. If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected. Big Ben takes its name from Sir Benjamin Hall who was responsible for the making of the clock when the new Houses of Parliament were being built. It is not only of immense size, but is extremely accurate as well. Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. On the B.B.C. you can hear the clock when it is actually striking because microphones are connected to the clock tower. Big Ben has rarely gone wrong. Once, however, it failed to give the correct time. A painter who had been working on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands and slowed it down!

New words and expressions

parliament (1.3) /'pa:lement/ n. 议会, 国会
erect (1.4) /'rekt/ v. 建立
accurate (1.7) /'ækjʊrət/ adj. 准确的
official (1.8) /ˈɔfiʃəl/ n. 官员, 行政人员
Greenwich (1.8) /'ɡreɪntʃ/ n. 格林尼治

Notes on the text

1 Big Ben, 大钟的名字, 译成 “大本”。
2 the B.B.C. 是英国广播公司（British Broadcasting Corporation）的缩写。
3 If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected.
   如果不是国会大厦在 1834 年被焚毁的话, 这座大钟永远也不会建造。这是一个表示与过去事实不相符的虚拟语气结构。
4 take its name from. 以……命名。
5 when the new Houses of Parliament were being built, 注意这个句中过去进行时的被动结构。
6 It is not only of immense size, 它不仅外型巨大, “to be of + 名词”用来表示人或物的特征。
7 Big Ben has rarely gone wrong. “大本” 钟很少出差错。

参考译文

当你游览伦敦时, 首先看到的东西之一就是“大本”钟, 即那座从英国广播公司的广播中全世界都可以听到它的声音的著名大钟。如果不是国会大厦在 1834 年被焚毁的话, 这座大钟永远也不会建造。“大本”钟得名于本杰明·霍尔爵士, 因为当建造新的国会大厦时, 他负责建造大钟。此钟不仅外型巨大, 而且走时也非常准确。格林尼治天文台的官员们每天两次派人矫正此钟。当大钟打点的时候, 你可以从英国广播公司的广播中听到。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 75 个单词。

1. When were the Houses of Parliament burnt down? Who was made responsible for the construction of a huge clock? Did it become known as Big Ben or not? (After which ...)
2. Why is it very accurate despite its immense size? (For)
3. Has this clock often gone wrong, or has it rarely gone wrong? Why can it be heard on the B.B.C. when it is striking? (This clock which ... because ...)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下词组写出 2 至 3 个句子来:
Big Ben tells correct time — it also tells us when Parliament is in session — there is a light in the clock tower — it is kept on until the House closes — sometimes it is on all night.

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following phrases by heart:
熟记以下两个开头语:
I wonder how you learnt that ... You will never guess who/what ...

Exercise 练习

Write two short paragraphs (of not more than two sentences each) completing the above phrases.
用以上开头语写出两小段话，每段不要超过两句。

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS60-69 复习第 60 - 69 课关键句型

The moment you leave this tent, you will get a big surprise. (KS60) (第 60 课)
By the time you read this, the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us thousands of wonderful pictures. (KS61) (第 61 课)
The planes had been planting seed for nearly a month when it began to rain. (KS62) (第 62 课)
If the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed. (KS64) (第 64 课)
Must, Have to, Should and Ought to. (KS65) (第 65 课)
Have (KS66) (第 66 课)
After having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence. (KS69) (第 69 课)

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage. Revise any Key structures you have forgotten.
划出课文中所有动词，复习已遗忘的句型。
Unit 3 Lesson 71

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

1 When you ________ (visit) London, one of the first things you will see is Big Ben, the famous clock which ________ (can/hear) all over the world on the B.B.C. If the Houses of Parliament ________ (not burn) down in 1834, the great clock would never have been erected.

2 Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock ________ (check) twice a day. On the B.B.C. you can hear the clock when it actually ________ (strike) because microphones ________ (connect) to the clock tower.

3 Once, however, it failed to give the correct time. A painter who ________ (work) on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands.

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1 I shall have completed this novel by December. By then I ________(work) on it for ten months.

2 Now that you ________(finish) work you can go home.

D Supply the correct form of should, ought to or have to in these sentences:

1 I couldn’t go shopping yesterday afternoon. I ________ (go) to the dentist.

2 I really ________ (buy) a new car but I can’t afford to.

3 I didn’t know you would be late. You ________ (telephone).

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a Official, Employee, Shop assistant.

Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. (II.8-9)
The Customs official asked me several questions. 那个海关官员问了我好几个问题。Over a thousand factory employees went on strike. 上千工厂的工人罢工了。She works as a shop assistant in a clothing store. 她在一家服装商店当店员。

b Hang/Hung and Hang/Hanged.

A painter hung a pot of paint on one of the hands. (II.11-12)
When the sun came out, she hung the washing on the line. 当太阳出来的的时候，她把洗好的衣服晾在绳子上。
The murderer was hanged. 杀人犯被绞死了。

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

1 The (clerk) (shop assistant) who served me was very helpful.

2 I (hanged) (hung) my coat in the hall.

3 Capital punishment has been abolished. Murderers will not be (hung) (hanged) in future.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 Big Ben was built ________.
   (a) for the B.B.C.  (b) after a fire
   (c) in honour of Sir Benjamin Hall  (d) long before 1834

2 Accuracy is maintained ________.
   (a) by microphones in the clock tower
   (b) by workmen
   (c) because the clock is at Greenwich Observatory
   (d) by officials who check the clock frequently

Structure 句型

3 Big Ben is one of the first sights you will see when you ________ London.
   (a) will visit  (b) visit  (c) have visited  (d) will be visiting

4 Big Ben is the ________ clock in London.
   (a) famousest  (b) most famous  (c) more famous  (d) famouser

5 It is ________ very big and very accurate.
   (a) and  (b) also  (c) both  (d) together

6 How often ________ checked?
   (a) have they it  (b) they have it  (c) do they have it  (d) they do have it

7 A painter ________ working on the tower hung a pot of paint on one of the hands.
   (a) who  (b) had been  (c) had  (d) —

Vocabulary 词汇

8 The clock was erected after 1834. That’s when it was put ________.
   (a) in  (b) up  (c) off  (d) down

9 Sir Benjamin Hall was responsible. It was his ________ to see to it.
   (a) responsible  (b) duty  (c) charge  (d) control

10 It is of immense size. It is ________.
   (a) great  (b) large  (c) huge  (d) big

11 You can hear it when it is actually striking. You can hear it ________ it is striking.
   (a) the hour  (b) the moment  (c) really  (d) indeed

12 The clock slowed down. It ________.
   (a) was slow  (b) was behind  (c) went back  (d) went slowly

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence with if... not, then check your answer against the text.
用 if... not 来改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 3-4 行，核对你的答案。

The Houses of Parliament had been burned down and that’s why the great clock was erected.
Lesson 72 A car called Bluebird “蓝鸟”汽车

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What mistake was made?

The great racing driver, Sir Malcolm Campbell, was the first man to drive at over 300 miles per hour. He set up a new world record in September 1935 at Bonneville Salt Flats, Utah. Bluebird, the car he was driving, had been specially built for him. It was over 30 feet in length and had a 2,500-horsepower engine. Although Campbell reached a speed of over 304 miles per hour, he had great difficulty in controlling the car because a tyre burst during the first run. After his attempt, Campbell was disappointed to learn that his average speed had been 299 miles per hour. However, a few days later, he was told that a mistake had been made. His average speed had been 301 miles per hour. Since that time, racing drivers have reached speeds over 600 miles an hour. Following in his father’s footsteps many years later, Sir Malcolm’s son, Donald, also set up a world record. Like his father, he was driving a car called Bluebird.

New words and expressions 生词和短语
racing (1.1) /ˈreizıŋ/ n. 竞赛
per (1.2) /pər/ prep. 每
Utah (1.3) /ˈjuːtʃə/ n. 犹他 (美国州名)
horsepower (1.5) /ˈhɔːspɔːr/ n. 马力
burst (1.7) /baːst/ (burst, burst) v. 爆裂
average (1.8) /ˈævərɪdʒ/ adj. 平均的
footstep (1.11) /ˈfʊtstep/ n. 足迹

Notes on the text 课文注释
1 drive at over 300 miles per hour, 以每小时 300 多英里的速度驾驶。
2 30 feet in length, 30 英尺长。
3 the first run, 开始的行程。
4 Following in his father’s footsteps, 踏着父亲的足迹。

参考译文
杰出的赛车选手马尔科姆·坎贝尔爵士是第一个以每小时超过 300 英里的速度驾车的人。他于 1935 年 9 月在犹他州的邦纳维尔盐滩创造了一项新的世界纪录。他驾驶的“蓝鸟”牌汽车是专门为他制造的。它的车身长 30 英尺，有一个 2,500 马力的发动机。尽管坎贝尔达到了每小时超过 304 英里的速度，但他很难把汽车控制住，因为在开始的行驶中爆了一只轮胎。比赛结束后，坎贝尔非常失望的得知他的平均时速是 299 英里。然而，几天之后，有人告诉他告诉弄错了。他的平均时速实际上是 301 英里。从那时以来，赛车选手已达到每小时 600 英里的速度。很多年之后，马尔科姆爵士的儿子唐纳德踏着父亲的足迹，也创造了一项世界纪录。同他父亲一样，他也驾驶着一辆名叫“蓝鸟”的汽车。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words.
回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过75个单词。
1. Who set up a land-speed record in 1935? What was his car called? Had it been specially built for him or not? (driving a car ... which)
2. Was his average speed incorrectly declared to be 299 miles per hour or 289 miles per hour? Was this mistake corrected later or not? (but)
3. How many miles an hour had he averaged?
4. Is Sir Malcolm’s son, Donald, one of the racing drivers who have exceeded the old record? What was his car called? (Among them is ... whose)

Composition 作文

Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below:
用以下词组写出2至3个句子来:
During a car race — leading car skidded — overturned — the driver was not hurt — got his car back on to the course — won the race.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write sentences completing each of the following phrases:
将以下书信的开头语写成完整的句子:
I have not forgotten that ...
You will find it hard to believe, but ...
I am afraid I ...
I wonder how you learnt that ...
You will never guess who/what ...

Special difficulties 难点

Review SD50-71 复习第50课至71课难点

Exercises 练习

A Words Often Confused 经常容易混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:
选择正确的词:
1. Hurry up or you will (lose) (miss) (loose) the train. (SD50a) (第50课 a)
2. I’m (expecting) (waiting) to receive a letter soon. (SD50b) (第50课 b)
3. You should (raise) (rise) that picture a few inches. (SD51a) (第51课 a)
4. I love (lying) (laying) in bed. (SD51b) (第51课 b)
5. He always (beats) (wins) me at chess. (SD51c) (第51课 c)
6. Are you (quiet) (quite) ready? (SD53b) (第53课 b)
7. I dislike getting up early, but I (am used to) (use to) it now. (SD55a) (第55课 a)
8. People often come into our garden and (pick) (cut) flowers. (SD58c) (第58课 c)
Whenever I buy anything new, my father always asks me the **value** (cost) (price). (SD61a)  
That house (valued) (cost) (priced) a fortune to build. (SD61b)  
I (value) (price) (cost) your advice a great deal. (SD61b)  
The oil level in the engine must be (checked) (controlled). (SD62a)  
I could not (accept) (agree) his offer. (SD65b)  
Who is going to (dress) (dress up) as Father Christmas? (SD65c)  
How many hours a day do you (practise) (practice)? (SD69b)  
We were (enjoyed) (amused) by his stories. (SD69b)  
She (hung) (hanged) the clothes on the line. (SD52)  
The train arrived (late) (lately) as usual. (SD71b)  
He has been working too (hardly) (hard). (SD52)  
He was (near) (nearly) run over by a car. (SD52)  

B Join the following sentences leaving out the verb want to. (SD59)  
I told him about it. I wanted to help you. (in order to)  
2 I opened the door quietly. I did not want to disturb him. (so as to)  
3 He left the letter on the table. He wanted me to see it. (in order that)  

C Draw (SD64); Let (SD65a)  
Complete these sentences by adding any of the following words: out, down, up, off.  
A big car drew _______ outside our house.  
2 You can’t rely on him. He is sure to let you _______.  
3 Don’t let the children _______ of the garden.  
4 We shall have to draw _______ a new agreement.  
5 He was going to punish the boy, but he let him _______.  

D Supply the correct form of say or tell in the following sentences: (SD67)  
I can _______ no more. He _______ me a secret and I have to keep it.  
2 Why don’t you _______ him the truth?  
3 If you didn’t want it, why didn’t you _______ so?  
4 He knelt down and _______ a prayer.  
5 I can’t prevent him from _______ lies.  

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题  

Comprehension 理解  
One of these statements is true. Which one?  
(a) There was some doubt whether Sir Malcolm had maintained an average speed of 301 miles per hour.  
(b) Sir Malcolm set up a new world record recently.  
(c) Sir Malcolm’s average speed was 299 miles per hour.  
(d) Sir Malcolm’s car had a 250-horsepower engine.
2 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) No one has ever driven faster than Sir Malcolm Campbell.
   (b) Donald Campbell couldn’t beat his father’s record.
   (c) More than one racing driver has driven faster than 300 miles per hour since Sir Malcolm set up his record.
   (d) Donald Campbell drove at 400 miles an hour.

Structure 句型
3 He was the first man to drive at over 300 miles an hour. No one had done this _______.
   (a) before    (b) ago    (c) since    (d) again

4 _______ was it? 30 feet.
   (a) How long ago    (b) Which length    (c) How length    (d) How long

5 _______ to control the car.
   (a) It was difficulty for him    (b) It was difficult for him
   (c) It was difficulty    (d) He was difficult

6 How fast did he drive? _______ 301 miles an hour.
   (a) At    (b) With    (c) To    (d) By

7 Donald Campbell was driving a car _______ Bluebird.
   (a) to call    (b) calling    (c) called    (d) calls

Vocabulary 词汇
8 He set up a new world record. He _______ a new record.
   (a) did    (b) played    (c) created    (d) found

9 It was over 30 feet in length. That’s how _______ it was.
   (a) length    (b) tall    (c) large    (d) long

10 It reached a speed of over 301 miles per hour. That’s how _______ it went.
   (a) speed    (b) fast    (c) soon    (d) rapid

11 He was disappointed to learn this. He felt _______.
   (a) sorry    (b) hopeless    (c) despair    (d) desperate

12 They had made a mistake. They had been _______.
   (a) mistake    (b) correct    (c) right    (d) wrong

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 10-11 行，核对你的答案。

Sir Malcolm’s son, Donald, followed in his father’s footsteps many years later and also set up a world record.
Following _______
PRE-UNIT TEST 4
测试 4
IF YOU CAN DO THIS TEST GO ON TO UNIT 4
如果你能完成以下测验，请开始第 4 单元的学习

Key structures 关键句型

A Word order in complex statements 复合句中的语序
Rewrite these sentences using the joining words in parentheses.

1. He missed the train. He did not hurry. (because)
2. He ran fast. He failed to win the race. (Although)
3. I was tired. I went to sleep immediately. (so ... that)
4. My neighbour went to Tokyo for a holiday. He could not return home. He did not have enough money. (who ... because)
5. I found the door unlocked. I went into the kitchen. (Finding)
6. I bought a picture. It was very valuable. (which)
7. He walked quietly down the corridor. He did not want anyone to hear him. (so that)
8. They cleared the ground. They wanted to build a house. (to)

B Composition 作 文
Write two or three sentences using the ideas given below.

A workman was digging in a field — struck a 6,000-volt electricity cable with his spade — was thrown twenty feet — unhurt — town was in darkness — no one knew what had happened.

C Verbs 动词
a These things always happen. 经常发生的事情

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

‘Let’s eat here,’ I said to my wife.
‘I _______ (prefer) to have a drink first,’ she answered.
‘That’s a good idea,’ I said. I picked up the menu. ‘I _______ (not understand) a thing,’ I said. ‘It’s all in Spanish.’
‘It _______ (not matter),’ said my wife.
‘What _______ that word _______ (mean)?’ I asked.
‘I _______ (not know),’ she answered.
We called the waiter and pointed to the word on the menu.
‘Two,’ I said, holding up two fingers.
After some time, my wife said suddenly, ‘Look! He _______ (bring) us two boiled eggs!’
b What happened? 一般过去时
The verbs in parentheses tell us what happened. Give the correct form of each verb.
括号中的动词告诉我们过去发生的动作。给出动词的正确形式。
My friend, Hugh, has always been fat, but things ________ (get) so bad recently that he ________ (decide) to go on a diet. He ________ (begin) his diet a week ago. First of all, he ________ (write) out a long list of all the foods which were forbidden. The list ________ (include) most of the things Hugh loves. Yesterday I ________ (pay) him a visit. I ________ (ring) the bell and ________ (not surprise) to see that Hugh was still as fat as ever. He ________ (lead) me into his room and hurriedly ________ (hide) a large parcel under his desk. It was obvious that he ________ (embarrass).

c What happened? What has happened? What has been happening? 一般过去时，现在完成时，现在完成进行时
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.
用括号中动词的正确形式填空。
Jack ________ (look) at his watch for the twentieth time. Suddenly Jill ________ (arrive). ‘I ________ (wait) for over an hour,’ he ________ (say) angrily. ‘You never come on time.’
‘Oh, is that so?’ Jill ________ (answer). ‘_______ (Be) you here at 2.30?’ Jack ________ (go) red. ‘Well,’ he ________ (say), ‘I ________ (get) here five minutes late myself, but you ________ (not be) here.’
‘I ________ (come) here at exactly 2.30,’ Jill (say) and I ________ (wait) for five minutes, but you ________ (not come).
‘What you ________ (do) since then?’ Jack ________ (ask).
‘I just ________ (be) to the hairdresser’s,’ Jill ________ (answer) brightly.

d What was happening? What happened? What used to happen? 过去进行时，过去时和表示过去习惯性动作
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Use would in place of used to where possible.
用括号中动词的正确形式填空。可能情况下用would来代替used to。
Dreams of finding lost treasure almost ________ (come) true recently. A new machine called ‘The Revealer’ has been invented and it has been used to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. The machine ________ (use) in a cave near the seashore where — it is said — pirates ________ (hide) gold. The pirates often ________ (bury) gold in the cave and then ________ (fail) to collect it. Armed with the new machine, a search party ________ (go) into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. The leader of the party ________ (examine) the soil near the entrance to the cave when the machine ________ (show) that there ________ (be) gold under the ground. Very excited, the party ________ (dig) a hole two feet deep. They finally ________ (find) a small gold coin which was almost worthless.

e What will happen tonight? 将来时
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.
用括号中正确的动词填空。
A lifeboat ________ (set) out tonight to search for the shipwreck. The crew ________ (send) radio messages to the wreck until they ________ (receive) a signal from the men on board. As soon as they ________ (receive) a signal, they ________ (try) and find the wreck with powerful searchlights. The moment the crew ________ (locate) the wreck, they ________ (fire) a special gun which ________ (carry) a rope from the lifeboat to the sinking ship. If the sea is rough, they ________ (pour) oil on the water. They are sure to succeed, but if they fail, a helicopter ________ (send) out tomorrow morning. Helicopters are very useful for rescue work, but they cannot be used at night.
Pre-Unit Test 4

f  What will happen? What will be happening? What will have happened? What will have been happening?

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

NASA is now going to put the telescope right, so it ________ (soon send) up four astronauts to repair it. The shuttle Endeavour ________ (take) the astronauts to the Hubble. A robot-arm from the Endeavour ________ (grab) the telescope and hold it while the astronauts make the necessary repairs. Of course, the Hubble is above the earth’s atmosphere, so it ________ (soon send) us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen. The Hubble ________ (tell) us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. By the time you read this, the Hubble’s eagle eye ________ (send) us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures.

g  What happened? What had happened? What had been happening?

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

After Howard Carter ________ (discover) Tutankhamen’s tomb, strange reports ________ (appear) in the newspapers. Three of the people who ________ (take) part in the discovery ________ (die) soon afterwards. Though nothing ________ (happen) to Carter himself, newspapers ________ (claim) that these people ________ (die) because of the ‘curse of the Pharaohs’. These absurd stories have been forgotten, but Carter’s great discovery remains. Archaeologists ________ (search) the Valley of Kings for years, but until 1922 nothing ________ (find).

h  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

I ________ (take) my driving test for the third time. I ________ (ask) to drive in heavy traffic and had done so successfully. After ________ (have/instruct) to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence. Sure that I had passed, I was almost beginning to enjoy my test. The examiner ________ (must/please) with my performance, for he smiled and said, ‘just one more thing, Mr. Eames. Let us suppose that a child suddenly crosses the road in front of you. As soon as I tap on the window, I want the car to ________ (stop) immediately.’ I continued driving and after some time, the examiner tapped loudly. Though the sound ________ (could/hear) clearly, it took me a long time to react. I suddenly pressed the brake pedal hard and we both ________ (throw) forward.

i  Answer the questions after each statement.

1 ‘Keep quiet!’ he said.
   What did he tell me to do?

2 ‘Send him a telegram,’ he suggested.
   What did he suggest?

3 ‘Ask him about it,’ he insisted.
   What did he do?

4 ‘Don’t worry about it,’ he told me.
   What did he tell me?
j Write the following sentences again beginning each one with 'I wonder'.

1 Can he wait a few minutes longer? 3 Has he passed his examination?
2 When will he arrive? 4 Where is he?

k If 条件句
Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1 If you _________ (listen) to me you would not have lost all that money.
2 I could have saved you a lot of trouble if you _________ (write) to me.
3 If you had applied earlier, you _________ (have) your passport by now.

l Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

I crossed the street to avoid _________ (meet) him, but he saw me and came _________ (run) towards me. It was no use _________ (pretend) that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. I never enjoy _________ (meet) Nigel Dykes. No matter how busy you are, he always insists on _________ (come) with you. I had to think of a way of _________ (prevent) him from _________ (follow) me around all morning.

‘Hello, Nigel,’ I said. ‘Fancy _________ (meet) you here!’

‘Hi, Elizabeth,’ Nigel answered. ‘I was just wondering how to spend the morning — until I saw you. You’re not busy _________ (do) anything, are you?’

‘No, not at all,’ I answered. ‘I’m going to …

‘Would you mind my _________ (come) with you?’ he asked, before I had finish _________ (speak).

D Other verbs 其他动词

a Supply the correct form of should, ought to, or have to in these sentences.

1 He _________ (come) at four o’clock if the plane arrives on time.
2 I didn’t go shopping this morning as I _________ (do) the housework.
3 She _________ (come) to see me yesterday, but she forgot.
4 You _________ (ask) for permission before you left the table.

b Rewrite these sentences using have with the verbs in italics.

1 He is building a new house. 3 I cut my hair yesterday.
2 She will make a new dress. 4 We must cut this tree down.

Rewrite these sentences using managed to in place of could not.

1 I could not get into town this morning.
2 They could not find the boy who had run away.
3 He could not find a new job.
4 I could not translate the passage into English.
Pre-Unit Test 4

E A, The and Some

Put in a, the and some where necessary

After _______ breakfast, I sent _______ children to _______ school and then I went to _______ market. It was still early when I returned home. _______ children were at _______ school, my husband was at _______ work, and _______ house was quiet. So I decided to make _______ tarts for _______ tea. In _______ short time I was busy mixing _______ butter and _______ flour and my hands were soon covered with _______ sticky pastry. At exactly that moment, _______ telephone rang. Nothing could have been more annoying. I picked up _______ receiver between _______ two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized _______ voice of Helen Bates. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later. At last I hung up _______ receiver. What _______ mess! There was _______ pastry on my fingers, on _______ telephone, and on _______ doorknobs. I had no sooner got back to _______ kitchen than _______ doorbell rang loud enough to wake _______ dead. This time it was _______ postman and he wanted me to sign for _______ registered letter!

F A lot of cars entered for the race.

Supply the missing words in the following.

Once a year a race is held for old cars. A lot _______ cars entered for this race last year and there was a great _______ of excitement just before it began. One of the _______ handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost. The _______ unusual car was a Benz which had only three wheels. Built in 1885, it was the _______ (old) car taking part. After a great _______ loud explosions, the race began. _______ of the cars broke down on the course and some drivers spent _______ time under _______ their cars than _______ in them! A _______ cars, however, completed the race. The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour — much faster _______ any of its rivals. It sped downhill at the end of the race and its driver had a _______ trouble trying to stop it. The race gave everyone a great _______ of pleasure. It was very different _______ modern car races but no _______ exciting.

G Supply the missing words in the following sentences.

1 A woman _______ blue jeans stood _______ the window of an expensive shop. Though she hesitated for a moment, she finally went _______ and asked to see a dress that was _______ the window.
2 Glancing _______ her scornfully, the assistant told her that the dress was sold. The woman walked _______ the shop angrily.
3 She returned _______ the shop the following morning dressed _______ a fur coat, _______ a handbag _______ one hand and a long umbrella _______ the other.

H Words followed by for, with, of, to and at

Supply the missing words in the following sentences.

1 You shouldn’t get so angry _______ him.
2 He is very good _______ finding excuses.
3 I’m not very fond _______ ice cream.
4 I would be thankful _______ any advice you can give me.
5 He remained faithful ______ the firm even after he had been dismissed.
6 I cannot be held responsible ______ other people’s mistakes.
7 Don’t be so sure ______ yourself.
8 His excellent progress should be obvious ______ everyone.

Special difficulties 难点
A Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

1 This screw is (loose) (lose).
2 I always (rise) (raise) at six o’clock.
3 He (laid) (lay) the book on the table.
4 He works very (hard) (hardly).
5 Who (won) (beat) the match?
6 Please keep (quiet) (quite).
7 I (used to) (am used to) smoke a lot once.
8 The waitress (fell) (dropped) her tray.
9 The teacher got angry and threw a book (to) (at) the boy.
10 We went into the orchard to help him (pick) (cut) some apples.
11 Your son has (increased) (grown) since I last saw him.
12 Sir Frank Whittle (discovered) (invented) the jet engine.
13 Please (leave) (let) him come with me.
14 Would you like to take (part) (place) in the contest?
15 No one knows the (reason) (cause) for his disappearance.
16 We were (amused) (enjoyed) by the circus clown.
17 They are now (controlling) (checking) our passports.
18 What do you (advice) (advise) me to do?

B Say and Tell

Write sentences using either say or tell with the following.

用动词 say 或 tell 与以下短语造句。

a secret, your prayers, a lie, nothing, a story, so.

C Write these sentences again. Express the phrases in italics in a different way.

改写以下句子，用另一种方式表达斜体印出的短语。

1 The dining room in our school is very large.
2 He told us a story about ghosts.
3 She gave me a present for my birthday.
4 We stopped at a pub in the village.
5 The leader of the party made a speech.
Unit 4
第 4 单元
Unit 4 第 4 单元

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE STUDENT 致学生

In Unit 4 you will be expected to write simple, compound and complex statements. You will have less help than you had in the previous Units.

在第 4 单元，要求你会写简单句、并列句和复合句。和前几个单元相比，你所能得到的帮助更少。

Before you begin each exercise, read these instructions carefully. Read them each time you begin a new piece. They are very important.

在开始每项练习之前，要细读这些指令。它们都很重要，每次开始新课前都要阅读指令。

How to work — Summary writing 如何写摘要

Unit 4 contains twenty-four short passages. There are no Comprehension questions under these passages. Instead, you will find the answers to imaginary questions. These ‘answers’ have been written in note form and are, in fact, the main points of a Summary.

第 4 单元共有 24 篇短文。课文之后没有设问。你会发现针对假设的问题的答案。这些答案是用笔记的形式列出的。事实上也组成了一篇摘要的要点。

1 Read the passage carefully two or three times. Make sure you understand it.

细读课文 2 至 3 遍，一定要理解课文。

2 Read the general instructions immediately below each passage. They will tell you what you have to do.

读每课之后的指令。

3 Under the titles connections, you will find two sets of joining words which have been given with each list of points.

在“连接词”的下面有两组词，与“要点”相对应的。

4 Using the first set of connections, join up the points to make sentences. The number of points which each sentence will contain is given in parentheses. All your sentences together should form a complete paragraph. When joining up the points, you may refer to the passage as much as you like.

用第 1 组“连接词”将要点连成句子。每句话所含的要点数目列在括号中。你所写的句子应组成一个完整的段落，在连接过程中可以随意查看课文。

5 Read through your work and correct your mistakes.

从头至尾读一遍你的答案，纠正其中的错误。

6 Count the number of words in your paragraph. Do not go over the word limit. Words like ‘the’, ‘a’, etc. count as single words. Words which are joined by a hyphen also count as single words. At the end of your paragraph, write the number of words that you have used.

数一下段落的总字数，不要超过字数的限制。冠词和用连字符组成的合成词作为一个词。在段落后面注明全段的字数。

7 Now, using the second set of connections, write another composition of the passage in exactly the same way.

然后，用第 2 组“连接词”按同样方式写出另一篇作文。

Example 范例

Work through this example carefully and then try to do the exercises in Unit 4 in the same way.

仔细研究以下例题，然后用同样的方式完成第 4 单元的练习。
The sacred tree

In the nineteenth century, Mugo Kibiru, a famous prophet of the Kikuyu tribe, foretold that a fig tree at Thika, twenty-six miles north of Nairobi, would wither and die on the day that Kenya gained independence. Kibiru also prophesied that Kenya would become a white man's colony, but that one day the white man would return the land to the Africans. He foresaw the coming of the railway which he described as 'an iron snake with many legs, like an earthworm'. Kibiru's prophecies proved to be so accurate that for many years the tree at Thika was regarded as sacred. Even the white men took the prophecy seriously, for they built the tree up with earth and put a concrete wall around it so that it would not fall. These measures were doomed to fail. Shortly before Kenya gained independence, the tree was struck by lightning and it began to wither rapidly. By the day Kenya officially became independent, it had decayed completely, fulfilling the prophecy made over seventy years before by Kibiru.

Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words write an account of the tree at Thika. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

A possible answer (First set of connections) 参考答案 1
In the nineteenth century, Kibiru, a famous prophet of the Kikuyu tribe, foretold that a fig tree at Thika would wither on the day that Kenya became independent. As many of Kibiru's prophecies proved to be accurate, the tree was considered sacred. Though white men built a wall round the tree, they could not prevent it from falling. Kibiru's prophecy came true, for the tree was struck by lightning just before Kenya gained her independence and it decayed completely. (76 words)

A possible answer (Second set of connections) 参考答案 2
According to a prophecy made in the nineteenth century by the Kikuyu prophet, Kibiru, a fig tree at Thika would wither on the day that Kenya gained independence. Other prophecies made by Kibiru proved to be accurate so the tree was regarded as sacred. The white men even built a wall round it to prevent it from falling. Eventually, however, the tree was struck by lightning and it began to wither rapidly. By the day Kenya officially became independent, it had decayed completely, fulfilling the prophecy made over seventy years before by Kibiru.
falling, but the prophecy came true. After having been struck by lightning just before Kenya became independent, the tree decayed completely.

(78 words)

Composition 作文

In Unit 4 Composition exercises are based on ideas suggested by each passage. You will be asked to write two paragraphs of about 150 words using ideas which have been given in note form. You may, of course, add to these ideas if you wish or change them to make them suit your purposes. 第 4 单元的作文练习是以课文引申出来的思路为基础的。要求你写出两篇 150 词左右的作文，使用所列的词组。你当然可以作出增补，以便使它们实现你的目标。

Example 范例

Work through this example carefully and then try to do the Composition exercises in the same way.

Composition 作文

Write an imaginary account of what happened to the tree from the time it was struck by lightning to when Kenya gained her independence. Write two paragraphs of about 150 words using the ideas given below. 根据想像写出从这棵树遭雷击到肯尼亚获得独立所发生的事情。用以下短语写出 150 词左右的两个段落。
1 Shortly before independence — storm — tree struck — news to Nairobi — whole of Kenya — Kibiru’s prophecy true.
2 Visitors from all parts of Kenya — excitement — tree decayed — completely by independence day — high wall remained — life to a new country.

A possible answer 参考答案

Shortly before Kenya gained her independence, there was a terrible storm. The next morning, the inhabitants of Thika were astonished to find that the sacred tree had been struck by lightning. Its trunk was split in the middle and blackened branches lay everywhere. The news travelled quickly to Nairobi. Soon everybody in Kenya heard that the sacred tree had begun to wither. It now seemed certain that Kibiru’s prophecy would come true.

During the next few weeks, people came from all parts of Kenya to see the sacred tree. The tree decayed before their eyes. Everybody was excited and a little frightened by what was happening. Day by day, branches fell, until only part of the trunk remained. By independence day, the trunk had decayed completely. Only the high wall, which had been built by the white men, was still standing. The dead tree had given its life to a new country.

(About 150 words)

Letter writing 书信写作

Follow the instructions given under each passage.

遵循每课书后的指令。
Key structures and Special difficulties 关键句型和难点

When you finish the Letter writing exercise, go on to the language exercises that follow. The Key structures deal with exactly the same problems that were considered in Units 1, 2 and 3. In this Unit you will revise what you have learnt so far. You may refer back if you have forgotten anything. Special difficulties are dealt with after the Key structures. The work you do in grammar is based on material contained in the passages. Refer to the passages frequently. They will help you to understand the grammar and to do the exercises.

当你完成“书信写作”后, 就可以开始紧随其后的语言练习。“关键句型”的问题与第 1、2、3 单元相同。在这个单元你将复习前面的知识。如有遗忘, 可以在前几个单元查找。“关键句型”之后是“难点”。其中的语法练习是以课文中的语言点为基础的。经常查找课文可以帮助你理解语法并完成练习。
Lesson 73  The record-holder

First listen and then answer the question.

Did the boy go where he wanted to?

Children who play truant from school are unimaginative. A quiet day's fishing, or eight hours in a cinema seeing the same film over and over again, is usually as far as they get. They have all been put to shame by a boy who, while playing truant, travelled 1,600 miles. He hitchhiked to Dover and, towards evening, went into a boat to find somewhere to sleep. When he woke up next morning, he discovered that the boat had, in the meantime, travelled to Calais. No one noticed the boy as he crept off. From there, he hitchhiked to Paris in a lorry. The driver gave him a few biscuits and a cup of coffee and left him just outside the city. The next car the boy stopped did not take him into the centre of Paris as he hoped it would, but to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. There he was picked up by a policeman and sent back to England by the local authorities. He has surely set up a record for the thousands of children who dream of evading school.

New words and expressions

- record-holder (title) /ˈrekərd-ˈhɔldər/ 纪录保持者
- truant (1.1) /ˈtruənt/ n. 逃学的孩子
- unimaginative (1.1) /ˌʌniməˈɡænətiv/ adj. 缺乏想像力的
- shame (1.4) /ʃeɪm/ n. 惭愧，羞耻
- hitchhike (1.5) /ˈhɪtʃhaɪk/ v. 搭便车旅行

meantime (1.7) /ˈmiːntaɪm/ n. 其间
lorry (1.9) /ˈlɒri/ n. 卡车
border (1.11) /ˈbɔːdər/ n. 边界
evade (1.12) /ɪˈveɪd/ v. 逃避，逃离

Notes on the text

1. play truant from school, 逃学，也可以说 play truant。
2. as far as they get，他们顶多到这种程度而已，as far as 作“到……程度”解。
3. They have all been put to shame …，这是被动语态，put sb. to shame，使某人感到羞愧，使……黯然失色。
4. While playing truant 是介词短语作状语，相当于一个状语从句 while he was playing truant。
5. in the meantime, 在此期间。
6. did not take him into the centre of Paris as he hoped it would, 没有像他希望的那样把他带到巴黎市中心。as he hoped it would 是一个方式状语从句，作“像……那样”解，would 后面省略了和前文相同的动词 take him into the centre of Paris。
时，发现船在这段时间已经到了加莱。当男孩从船里爬出来时，谁也没有发现他。从那里他又搭上卡车去了巴黎。司机给了他几块饼干和一杯咖啡，就把他丢在了城外。男孩截住的下一辆车，没有像他希望的那样把他带到巴黎市中心，而是把他带到了法国和西班牙边界的佩皮尼昂。他在那儿被一个警察抓住了，之后被当局送回了英国。他无疑为成千上万梦想逃避上学的孩子们创造了一项纪录。

**Summary writing 摘要写作**

*In not more than 80 words, describe the boy’s experiences. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.*

用不超过 80 个单词描述这个孩子的经历。用以下要点和连词写出两个不同的段落。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>1 Boy played truant.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Travelled 1,600 miles.</td>
<td>After</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>3 Hitchhiked — Dover.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Slept — boat.</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only to find</td>
<td>5 Found himself — Calais — morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 Lorry driver: lift and something to eat.</td>
<td>On getting off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>7 Boy got off near Paris.</td>
<td>which ... not to ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but, instead</td>
<td>8 Stopped another car.</td>
<td>but to ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of being</td>
<td>9 Not taken Paris — Perpignan.</td>
<td>There</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>10 Picked up — policeman.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 Sent home — authorities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Composition 作文**

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出 150 个词左右的两段文字：

1. The boy returned — sick, cold and hungry — his parents were worried — met him at the harbour — their reactions.
2. The boy returned to school — he was afraid he would be punished — the boys gave him a hero’s welcome — asked questions — the headmaster punished him by making him give a talk to the whole school about his experiences abroad.

**Letter writing 书信写作**

A letter contains three main parts: the Introduction, the Purpose and the Conclusion. The most important part is the Purpose. Here you must explain why you are writing.

每封信包含 3 个主要部分：引言、目的和结束语。其中最重要的部分是目的。在这部分中你必须说明为什么要写此信。

**Exercise 练习**

Write a short Introduction of a letter to a friend beginning:

用以下句子写出给朋友的一封信的引言。

‘You will never guess what ...’
Unit 4 Lesson 73

**Key structures** 关键句型

Simple, Compound and Complex Statements (KS1, 25, 49) 简单句、并列句和复合句

(复习第 1, 25, 49 课的关键句型)

**Exercises** 练习

A How many joining words can you find in the passage? Underline as many as you can.

B Rewrite these simple statements using the joining words in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

1. Children play truant from school. They are unimaginative. (who)
2. They have all been put to shame by a boy. He played truant. He travelled 1,600 miles. (a boy who, while ...)
3. He hitchhiked to Dover. Towards evening, he went into a boat. He wanted to find somewhere to sleep. (and ... to)
4. He woke up next morning. He discovered that the boat had, in the meantime, travelled to Calais. (When)
5. No one noticed the boy. He crept off. (as)
6. The driver gave him a few biscuits. He gave him a cup of coffee. He left him outside the city. (and ... and)

C Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

1. The climbers reached the top of the mountain. They spent the night there. (not only ... but ... as well)
2. A fire broke out in a cinema. Several hundred people tried to leave the building. A number of them were injured. (When ... and)
3. James Sullivan will give a lecture at the local library next week. His book on the Antarctic was published recently. (whose)
4. The police searched everywhere. The missing boy could not be found. His dog could not be found. (Although ... neither ... nor)
5. Fares have increased. The railway company is still losing money. The employees have demanded higher wages. (In spite of the fact that ... because)
6. He gave me a fright. I knocked the teapot over. (such ... that)
7. I made sure. The alarm clock worked. I set it. It would ring at six o'clock. (After making ... that ... so that)
8. I hid the Christmas presents under the desk quickly. My young daughter would not see them. She entered the room. (so that ... when)
9. I refused the offer. I explained. I had already been offered a job by another company. (Refusing ... that ...)
10. He fought the wolves off for three hours. Help arrived. (before)

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. How did the boy get to Dover?
   
   (a) He walked.  
   (b) He went by train.  
   (c) Someone gave him a lift.  
   (d) He went in a lorry.
2 The boy ________.
   (a) didn’t expect to be taken to Perpignan  (b) decided to go to Perpignan
   (c) went to Paris  (d) wanted to go to Spain

Structure Structure
3 _____ did he travel? 1,600 miles.
   (a) How long  (b) How long ago  (c) How much further  (d) How far

4 How did he get to Dover?
   (a) By hitchhiking.  (b) With hitchhike.  (c) Hitchhiking.  (d) With hitchhiking.

5 He wasn’t noticed by ________ as he crept off the boat.
   (a) no one  (b) none  (c) anyone  (d) not one

6 The driver gave him a few biscuits. ________ was given a few biscuits.
   (a) To him  (b) Him  (c) For him  (d) He

7 After ________ by a policeman, he was sent back to England.
   (a) being picked up  (b) he picked up  (c) been picked up  (d) picking up

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Little boys who play truant don’t go to school ________.
   (a) because they are ill  (b) because they have left
   (c) because they are not allowed to  (d) on purpose

9 They are unimaginative. They haven’t much ________.
   (a) imagination  (b) fantasy  (c) imaginary  (d) fantasia

10 They have been put to shame by a boy. They should feel ________.
   (a) ashamed  (b) shy  (c) shyness  (d) shameful

11 He was picked up by a policeman. A policeman ________ him.
   (a) gathered  (b) collected  (c) assembled  (d) found

12 Thousands of boys dream of evading school. They dream of ________ it.
   (a) escaping  (b) avoiding  (c) preventing  (d) running away

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 6-7 行，核对你的答案。
On waking up next morning, he discovered that the boat had, in the meantime, travelled to Calais.
When ________.
Lesson 74  Out of the limelight  舞台之外

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why was their disguise 'too perfect'?

An ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed and a party of famous actors and actresses got off. Dressed in dark glasses and old clothes, they had taken special precautions so that no one should recognize them. But as they soon discovered, disguises can sometimes be too perfect.

'This is a wonderful place for a picnic,' said Gloria Gleam.

'It couldn't be better, Gloria,' Brinksley Meers agreed. 'No newspaper men, no film fans! Why don't we come more often?'

Meanwhile, two other actors, Rockwall Slinger and Merlin Greeves, had carried two large food baskets to a shady spot under some trees. When they had all made themselves comfortable, a stranger appeared. He looked very angry. 'Now you get out of here, all of you!' he shouted. 'I'm sheriff here. Do you see that notice? It says "No Camping" — in case you can't read!'

'Look, sheriff,' said Rockwall, 'don't be too hard on us. I'm Rockwall Slinger and this is Merlin Greeves.'

'Oh, is it?' said the sheriff with a sneer. 'Well, I'm Brinksley Meers, and my other name is Gloria Gleam. Now you get out of here fast!'

New words and expressions 生词和短语

limelight (title) /'laimlait/ n. 舞台灯光  
sheriff (1.11) /'fert/ n. 司法长官
precaution (1.3) /pri'kə:fan/ n. 防御措施  
notice (1.12) /'nautis/ n. 告示
fan (1.8)/faen/ n. 狂热者，迷  
snee (1.14)/sneor/ n. 冷笑
shady (1.10) /'feidi/ adj. 遮荫的

Notes on the text 课文注释

1  Out of the limelight, 这里的 limelight 指舞台。
2  as they soon discovered 中的 as 是关系代词，代替后面的整个主句 disguises can sometimes be too perfect, 作动词 discovered 的宾语。
3  Why don’t we come more often? 我们为什么不经常来这里呢? 这是一个否定的特殊疑问句, 表示一种建议。
4  get out of here, 从这里走开。
5  in case you can’t read, 除非你们不识字。
6  be hard on us, 使我们难堪，对我们过于严厉。

参考译文

一辆古旧的汽车停在一条干涸的河床边，一群著名男女演员下了车。他们戴着墨镜，穿着旧衣裳，特别小心以防别人认出他们。但他们很快就发觉，化装的效果有时过分完美了。

“在这个地方野餐简直是太妙了，”格洛利亚·格利姆说。
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words describe what happened. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

Use不超过 80 个词的篇幅描述一下所发生的事情。用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>1 Bus stopped — river bed.</td>
<td>A party of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Film stars descended.</td>
<td>in order that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 Dressed — glasses, clothes.</td>
<td>Everyone had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Recognize.</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 Picnic things, shady spot.</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so as not to</td>
<td>6 Sat down.</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>7 Sheriff, rudely — must leave.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Just then</td>
<td>8 Camping not allowed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>9 Told him who they were.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Even when</td>
<td>10 Did not believe them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出 150 个词左右的两个段落:

1. A fine day — we prepared for a picnic — drove into the country — found a quiet spot — unpacked our hampers.

2. There were a few wasps — then a great many — our efforts to drive them away — saw a wasp nest in a tree nearby — seized our things — returned to car pursued by wasps — drove away.

Key structures 关键句型

What is happening? What always happens? (KS2, 26, 50) 现在进行时和一般现在时

Exercises 练习

A Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

用正确的时态填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案：

1. "It couldn’t be better, Gloria," Brinksley Meers agreed. "No newspaper men, no film fans! Why we _________ (not come) more often?"
Unit 4 Lesson 74

2 ‘I’m sheriff here. _______ you (see) that notice? It _______ (say) “No Camping” — in case you can’t read!’

B What happens? What is happening?

Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1 The police now _______ (investigate) the matter.
2 Light _______ (travel) at a speed of 186,000 miles a second.
3 He _______ (resemble) his father.
4 The postman who _______ (deliver) my letters is on holiday.
5 It _______ (look) as if it will rain.
6 Caroline still _______ (love) him even though he has behaved so badly.
7 Hurry up! The bus _______ (come).
8 Which _______ you _______ (prefer)? The red one or the white one?

C Write sentences using the following verbs:

contain, mean, believe, understand, want, matter.

Special difficulties 难点

a The verb get has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully:

Now you _______ out of here, all of you! (1.11)

The door is locked. I can’t _______ out. (1.11)

I’ve lost my key. I can’t _______ into the house. (1.11)

How is he _______ on in his new job? (How is he progressing?)

Get on with your work. (Continue …)

He’s so difficult, I can’t _______ on with him. (We are not on good terms.)

Tom was punished, but Jim _______ off lightly. (He escaped punishment.)

I can’t _______ the cap of this pen off. (I can’t remove it.)

He has now _______ over his illness. (He has recovered.)

I want to _______ this interview over as quickly as possible. (I want to finish it.)

He _______ through his exams. (He succeeded in passing his exams.)

He _______ through a huge amount of food. (He succeeded in eating …)

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1 He has never _______ his wife’s death.
2 How did the thief manage to _______ the house?
3 Did you _______ your driving test?
4 The lid is stuck. I can’t _______ it
5 He gets _______ very well _______ all his new colleagues.
6 ‘Please stop talking and get _______ your work,’ she said.
b  No Camping (1.12)

On public notices we write No Camping instead of Do not camp.

Exercise 练习

How would these appear on public notices:
下列词组应如何写到公告牌上:
1  Do not smoke in this compartment.  2  Do not park.  3  Do not wait on this side of the street today.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1  The actors disguised themselves ________.  
   (a) to have a picnic  (b) so that no one would know who they were  
   (c) so that the sheriff wouldn’t recognize them  (d) because they were famous  

2  The sheriff ________.  
   (a) knew that they were famous actors  (b) believed that they were famous actors  
   (c) was an actor himself  (d) didn’t believe that they were famous actors

Structure 句型

3  Disguises can be too perfect. This means they can be ________.  
   (a) perfect  (b) quite perfect  
   (c) more perfect than is convenient  (d) almost perfect  

4  This is a wonderful place. ________ wonderful place!  
   (a) How  (b) What  (c) What a  (d) How a

5  Why don’t we come more often? We ________ come more often.  
   (a) could  (b) would  (c) might  (d) should

6  ‘No Camping’ means ________.  
   (a) there isn’t any  (b) it’s without camping  
   (c) you aren’t allowed to camp  (d) you needn’t camp  

7  ________ you look at the notice, you’ll see it says ‘No Camping’.
   (a) If  (b) Providing that  (c) Whether  (d) In the situation

Vocabulary 词汇

8  They were dressed in old clothes. They were wearing old ________.  
   (a) cloth  (b) cloths  (c) clothing  (d) dresses

9  Which of these objects would make a good disguise? A ________.  
   (a) computer  (b) mask  (c) bus  (d) train

10  A film fan is a person who ________ films.  
    (a) makes  (b) sees  (c) enjoys seeing  (d) possesses

11  Do you see that notice? Do you see that ________?  
    (a) sign  (b) label  (c) signal  (d) board

12  ‘Oh, is it?’ said the sheriff with a sneer. He was ________.
    (a) pleased  (b) scornful  (c) teasing them  (d) mocking them
First listen and then answer the question.

How did the woman get help?

When a light passenger plane flew off course some time ago, it crashed in the mountains and its pilot was killed. The only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were unhurt. It was the middle of winter. Snow lay thick on the ground. The woman knew that the nearest village was miles away. When it grew dark, she turned a suitcase into a bed and put the children inside it, covering them with all the clothes she could find. During the night, it got terribly cold. The woman kept as near as she could to the children and even tried to get into the case herself, but it was too small. Early next morning, she heard planes passing overhead and wondered how she could send a signal. Then she had an idea. She stamped out the letters `SOS’ in the snow. Fortunately, a pilot saw the signal and sent a message by radio to the nearest town. It was not long before a helicopter arrived on the scene to rescue the survivors of the plane crash.

New words and expressions

thick (1.4) /θɪk/ adj. 厚的
signal (1.10) /ˈsɪgnəl/ n. 信号
stamp (1.10) /stæmp/ v. 踩, 踩

helicopter (1.12) /ˈhelɪkɒptə/ n. 直升飞机
scene (1.12) /siːn/ n. 现场
survivor (1.12) /ˈsɜːvɪvə/ n. 幸存者

Notes on the text

1. SOS = “Save Our Souls”, 国际通用的呼救信号。
2. fly off course, 飞行偏离航线。
3. Snow lay thick on the ground. 语系动词, thick 是表语, 表示主语的状态或性质。
4. she heard planes passing overhead. 她听见头顶上有飞机飞过。passing overhead 是现在分词短语, 作宾语 planes 的补足语。
5. stamp out, 踩出。其中 out 是一个副词, out 与一些动词连用时常常有“看得见”、“听得见”的意思, 如 write out, tap out, ring out 等。
6. It was not long before a helicopter arrived on the scene to rescue the survivors of the plane crash. 不久, 一架直升机飞抵失事现场, 来搭救这几个幸存者。注意这句话中的 before 是连词, 引导的是时间状语从句, long 是形容词, 是主句的表语。不要把这句话中的 long 和 before 的用法同 long before 或 before long 词组的用法混淆。

参考译文

不久前, 一架小型客机偏离了航线, 在山区坠毁, 飞行员丧生。机上仅有的乘客, 一位年轻的妇女和她的两个女婴却平安无事。此时正值隆冬季节, 地上积着厚厚的雪。这位妇女知道, 即使最近的村庄也有数英里远。
Summary writing 摘要写作

_In not more than 80 words, describe what happened. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below._

用不超过80个单词的段落来描述所发生的事情。用以下要点和连词写出两个不同的段落。

**CONNECTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>but</th>
<th>and</th>
<th>so</th>
<th>When</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Plane crashed — mountains.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Only passengers — woman, baby daughters not hurt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Mid-winter — extremely cold.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Put children in case.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Covered them — clothes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Kept close all night.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Planes — next morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Stamped ‘SOS’ — snow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Seen by pilot.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Message sent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Rescued — helicopter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Composition 作文**

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出150个单词的两段文字：

1. A light aeroplane with a heavy cargo — sudden storm — high winds — the pilot made a crash — landing in the snow.
2. The pilot was unhurt — roped the plane to a rock — spent the night in a tent — next morning — found that the plane had been swept away by the wind — smashed to pieces — cargo and wreckage in the snow.

**Letter writing 书信写作**

Write a suitable _Purpose_ in about 50 words to follow this introductory paragraph:

按照以下引言的思路，用50个左右的单词写出一段“目的”：

Forgive me for not writing earlier to thank you for the lovely scarf you sent me for my birthday, but I have been in bed with ‘flu.

**Key structures 关键句型**

What happened? 一般过去时 (KS3, 27, 51)（复习第3, 27, 51课的关键句型）
Unit 4  Lesson 75

Exercises 练习

A  Underline all the verbs in the passage that tell us what happened.

划出课文中所有一般过去时的动词。

B  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

用正确的动词填空，完成练习后再对照课文校对你的答案。

When a light passenger plane ___________________________ (fly) off course some time ago, it ___________________________ (crash) in the mountains and its pilot ___________________________ (kill). The only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, ___________________________ (be) unhurt. It ___________________________ (be) the middle of winter. Snow ___________________________ (lie) thick on the ground. The woman ___________________________ (know) that the nearest village ___________________________ (be) miles away. When it ___________________________ (grow) dark, she ___________________________ (turn) a suitcase into a bed and ___________________________ (put) the children inside it, covering them with all the clothes she ___________________________ (can) find. During the night, it ___________________________ (get) terribly cold. The woman ___________________________ (keep) as near as she could to the children and even ___________________________ (try) to get into the case herself, but it ___________________________ (be) too small. Early next morning, she ___________________________ (hear) planes passing overhead and ___________________________ (wonder) how she ___________________________ (can) send a signal. Then she ___________________________ (have) an idea. She ___________________________ (stamp) out the letters ‘SOS’ in the snow. Fortunately, a pilot ___________________________ (see) the signal and ___________________________ (send) a message by radio to the nearest town. It ___________________________ (not be) long before a helicopter ___________________________ (arrive) on the scene to rescue the survivors of the plane crash.

Special difficulties

When it grew dark ... (1.5)

Study the verbs in italics. They are all used in the sense of the verb become.

注意用斜体印出的动词，它们均有“变成”的意思。

He grew (or get) angry when I told him about it. 当我告诉他这件事时，他变得非常生气。
The leaves are turning (or getting) yellow. 枫叶正在变黄。
This apple has gone bad. 这个苹果坏了。
Coal got scarce last winter. 去年冬天煤变得很缺乏。
Everything you said came true. 你说过的每一件事都成了现实。
She fell ill while she was on holiday. 她在度假时生病了。

Exercise 练习

Supply the correct verbs in the following sentences:

用正确的动词填空：

1  During the night it ___________________________ terribly cold.
2  He was so tired, he ___________________________ asleep.
3  When the teacher left the classroom, the children ___________________________ noisy.
4  If you do not put the milk in the refrigerator, it will ___________________________ sour.
5  This knob has ___________________________ loose.
6  The children ___________________________ quiet when he entered the room.
7  Even though I am ___________________________ older, I am not ___________________________ wiser.
8  She’s ___________________________ so fat you won’t recognize her.
9  This post ___________________________ vacant last year.
10  Don’t worry, everything will ___________________________ right in the end.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The plane crashed because ________.
   (a) it was a light passenger plane  (b) the pilot was killed  
   (c) it wasn’t flying in the right direction  (d) it was the middle of winter
2. The next morning a pilot flying overhead ________.
   (a) must have seen the letters ‘SOS’ in the snow (b) must have seen the woman  
   (c) must have seen the wrecked plane  (d) must have seen the children

Structure 句型
3. She was a young woman. The woman was ________.
   (a) a youth  (b) young  (c) a young  (d) youth
4. Did the snow ________ thick on the ground?
   (a) lay  (b) laid  (c) lain  (d) lie
5. It was too small. It wasn’t ________.
   (a) enough big  (b) big enough  (c) fairly big  (d) rather big
6. She heard planes ________ overhead.
   (a) pass  (b) to pass  (c) to passing  (d) in passing
7. It was not long before a helicopter arrived. It arrived ________.
   (a) after  (b) soon afterwards  (c) behind  (d) much later

Vocabulary 词汇
8. It was a light plane. It wasn’t ________.
   (a) dark  (b) heavy  (c) black  (d) deep
9. It got terribly cold. The cold was ________.
   (a) frightening  (b) horrifying  (c) shocking  (d) frightful
10. She wondered how she could send a signal. She wanted to send ________.
    (a) a letter  (b) a sign  (c) a signature  (d) a message
11. She probably stamped out the letters ‘SOS’ with her ________.
    (a) hands  (b) head  (c) feet  (d) knees
12. The survivors were ________.
    (a) live  (b) lively  (c) alive  (d) in life

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 5-7 行，核对你的答案。
It grew dark. She turned a suitcase into a bed. She put the children inside it. She covered them with all the clothes she could find.
When ____________________________.
Lesson 76  April Fools’ Day  愚人节

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What was the joke?

‘To end our special news bulletin,’ said the voice of the television announcer, ‘we’re going over to the macaroni fields of Calabria. Macaroni has been grown in this area for over six hundred years. Two of the leading growers, Giuseppe Moldova and Riccardo Brabante, tell me that they have been expecting a splendid crop this year and harvesting has begun earlier than usual. Here you can see two workers who, between them, have just finished cutting three cartloads of golden brown macaroni stalks. The whole village has been working day and night gathering and threshing this year’s crop before the September rains. On the right, you can see Mrs. Brabante herself. She has been helping her husband for thirty years now. Mrs. Brabante is talking to the manager of the local factory where the crop is processed. This last scene shows you what will happen at the end of the harvest: the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition! Signor Fratelli, the present champion, has won it every year since 1991. And that ends our special bulletin for today, Thursday, April 1st. We’re now going back to the studio.’

New words and expressions 生词和短语

fool (title) /fuːl/ n. 童话
bulletin (1.1) /ˈbʊlətɪn/ n. 新闻简报
announcer (1.2) /əˈnəʊnsər/ (电视、电台)播音员
macaroni (1.3) /ˈmeɪkərəʊnɪ/ n. 通心面
leading (1.4) /ˈliːdɪŋ adj. 主要的
grower (1.4) /ˈɡroʊər/ n. 种植者
splendid (1.5) /ˈsplendid/ adj. 极好的
stalk (1.8) /stɔːk/ n. 梗
gather (1.9) /ˈɡætə/ v. 收获
thresh (1.9) /θref/ v. 打 (庄稼)
process (1.11) /ˈprəʊsəs/ v. 加工
Signor (1.13) /ˈsɪŋɡɔr/ n. (意大利语)先生
present (1.13) /ˈprezənt/ adj. 目前的
champion (1.13) /ˈtʃæmpɪən/ n. 冠军
studio (1.14) /ˈstjuːdɪəʊ/ n. 播音室

Notes on the text 课文注释

1  April Fools’ Day, 愚人节, 4 月 1 日。根据西方国家的风俗, 这一天人们往往以愚弄别人作为乐事，本文所述的通心粉长在地里便是一个例子。
2  between them 是“由于他们共同努力的结果”的意思。
3  the September rains, 9 月雨季。

参考译文

“作为我们专题新闻节目的结尾，”电视广播员说，“我们现在到克拉布利亚的通心粉田里。通心粉在这个地区已经种植了 600 多年了。两个主要种植者，朱塞皮·莫尔道瓦和里卡多·布拉班特告诉我，他们一直期待
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 85 words write an account of the television programme. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 85 个单词的篇幅叙述一下电视节目。用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

**POINTS**

1. End of news bulletin.
2. Television announcer showed viewers fields — Calabria.
4. Harvesting earlier this year.
5. Whole village working hard.
6. September rains.
7. Crop: processed — factory.
8. After harvest — famous competition.
10. End of bulletin — April 1st.

**CONNECTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>This year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>so that the crop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>With that</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write an imaginary account of a macaroni-eating competition. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出一个想像中的吃通心粉大赛的场面，写两段，150 个单词左右：

1. The appearance of the six competitors — all very fat — their past achievements — huge quantity of macaroni prepared, weighed and served.

2. Quantity, not speed was the important thing — competitors eating for three hours — only one man left — he asked for more!

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a suitable Purpose of about 50 words to follow this introductory paragraph:

按照以下引言的思路，用 50 个左右的单词写出一段“目的”。

I have just heard that Tom Blake will be staying with you for a week. I would love to meet him again as I haven’t seen him for years.

Key structures 关键句型

What has happened? What has been happening? (KS4, 28, 52) 现在完成时与现在完成进行时

(复习第 4, 28, 52 课关键句型)
A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what has happened and what has been happening.

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

Macaroni __________ (grow) in this area for over six hundred years. Two of the leading growers, Giuseppe Moldova and Riccardo Brabante, tell me that they __________ (expect) a splendid crop this year and harvesting __________ (begin) earlier than usual. Here you can see two workers who, between them, just __________ (finish) cutting three cartloads of golden brown macaroni stalks. The whole village __________ (work) day and night gathering and threshing this year’s crop before the September rains. On the right, you can see Mrs. Brabante herself. She __________ (help) her husband for thirty years now. This last scene shows you what will happen at the end of the harvest: the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition! Signor Fratelli, the present champion, __________ (win) it every year since 1991.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a Usual and Usually.
Harvesting has begun earlier than usual. (l.6)
He usually gets up at six o’clock.

b Between (在两者之间) and Among (在三者或三者以上之中).
Here you can see two workers who, between them, have just finished cutting three cartloads of macaroni. (ll.6-8)
Tom sat between Jill and Jennifer.
The Prime Minister was among those present.
You’ll find it somewhere among those newspapers.

Cc Manager (经理), Director (主任), Headmaster (校长).
Mrs. Brabante is talking to the manager of the local factory. (ll.10-11)
Mr. Jones is the director of several companies.
Who is the headmaster of this school?

Exercise 练习

Supply any of the above words in the following sentences:

1 I found your pipe. It was ________ those things on the table.
2 As ________, he asked the same silly questions.
3 The lady in the shop asked to see the ________.
4 He has been ________ of this school for seventeen years.
5 It seems to be warmer than _______ this month.

6 Everybody dreams of living like a company _______ with a large expense account.

7 She stuck the flower _______ the pages of a book.

8 He _______. returns from work about this time, but he is late today.

**Multiple choice questions 多项选择题**

**Comprehension 理解**

1 Macaroni _______.
   (a) grows in Calabria
   (b) grows in fields
   (c) must be harvested before the September rains
   (d) is man-made

2 What was the intention behind the television broadcast?
   (a) To show viewers how macaroni is grown.
   (b) To play a trick on viewers.
   (c) To provide useful information about macaroni.
   (d) To introduce viewers to conditions in Calabria.

**Structure 句型**

3 Giuseppe Moldova and Riccardo Brabante _______ they have been expecting a splendid crop.
   (a) tell
   (b) tell that
   (c) say to me
   (d) say

4 Harvesting has begun earlier than usual. It _______ yet.
   (a) hasn’t finished
   (b) didn’t finish
   (c) hadn’t finished
   (d) isn’t finishing

5 They must gather the crop before it rains _______ September.
   (a) in
   (b) on
   (c) the
   (d) at

6 How long has she been helping her husband? _______ she was a young woman.
   (a) From then
   (b) Since
   (c) For
   (d) By then

7 Where _______?
   (a) the crop is processed
   (b) is the crop processed
   (c) is processed the crop
   (d) processed is the crop

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 To end our bulletin ... To _______ our bulletin ...
   (a) conclude
   (b) stop
   (c) prevent
   (d) halt

9 It has been grown for over six hundred years. That’s more than six _______.
   (a) sentries
   (b) ages
   (c) centuries
   (d) eras

10 They’ve been expecting a splendid crop. That’s what they’ve been _______.
    (a) waiting
    (b) waiting for
    (c) waiting to
    (d) waiting on

11 They have been gathering this year’s crop. They have been _______.
    (a) assembling it
    (b) picking it up
    (c) collecting it
    (d) bringing it in

12 He is the manager of the factory. He’s _______ it.
    (a) charged with
    (b) in the charge of
    (c) charged
    (d) in charge of
Lesson 77  A successful operation  一例成功手术

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
Did the doctors find out how the woman died?

The mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B.C. has just had an operation. The mummy is that of Shepenmut who was once a singer in the Temple of Thebes. As there were strange marks on the X-ray plates taken of the mummy, doctors have been trying to find out whether the woman died of a rare disease. The only way to do this was to operate. The operation, which lasted for over four hours, proved to be very difficult because of the hard resin which covered the skin. The doctors removed a section of the mummy and sent it to a laboratory. They also found something which the X-ray plates did not show: a small wax figure of the god Duamutef. This god which has the head of a cow was normally placed inside a mummy. The doctors have not yet decided how the woman died. They feared that the mummy would fall to pieces when they cut it open, but fortunately this has not happened. The mummy successfully survived the operation.

New words and expressions

mummy (1.1) /ˈmʌmi/ n. 木乃伊
Egyptian (1.1) /ɪˈdʒɪpʃən/ adj. 埃及的
temple (1.3) /ˈtempəl/ n. 庙
mark (1.3) /mɑːk/ n. 斑点
plate (1.4) /pleɪt/ n. （照相）底片
disease (1.5) /dɪˈziːz/ n. 疾病
last (1.6) /laːst/ v. 持续
prove (1.7) /pruːv/ v. 显示出
resin (1.7) /ˈrezm/ n. 树脂
skin (1.8) /skɪn/ n. 皮，皮肤
section (1.8) /ˈseksʃən/ n. 切片
figure (1.9) /ˈfɪɡə/ n. （人的）体形; 人像
normally (1.10) /ˈnɔːmli/ adv. 通常地
survive (1.12) /ˈsɜːvɪv/ v. 幸免于

Notes on the text

1. 800 B.C., 公元前 800 年。B.C. 是 Before Christ 的缩略语。
2. ... plates taken of the mummy, taken 是过去分词作定语修饰 plates, take the plates of ... 作“给⋯⋯拍片子”讲。
3. die of ... 因（患）⋯⋯而死。
4. The operation, which lasted for over four hours, proved to be very difficult. 手术持续了 4 个多小时，非常难做。在这个句子中 which 引导的从句是一个定语从句，用来修饰前面的名词 operation。但这是一个非限定性定语从句，它与主句用两个逗号隔开，它所提供的仅是补充信息，可以略去而不影响主句所表达的意思。
5. fall to pieces, 散掉，成为碎片。

参考译文

死于公元前 800 年的一位埃及妇女的木乃伊刚刚接受了一次手术。这是曾经在底比斯神殿里当过歌手的赛普姆特的木乃伊。由于在给这个木乃伊拍摄的 X 光片子上有奇怪的斑点，所以，医生们一直试图搞清这位妇女是
### Summary writing 摘要写作

Write a summary of the passage *in not more than 70 words*. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 70 个单词的篇幅写出课文的摘要。用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>1 Doctors operated — mummy: Egyptian woman. who</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whether</td>
<td>2 Died 800 B.C. in order ... if</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 Wanted to find out — died rare disease. which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After removing</td>
<td>4 Removed section.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During the operation</td>
<td>5 Sent it to laboratory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Though</td>
<td>6 Unexpectedly found figure — god. Inside the mummy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 Afraid mummy fall to pieces. but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 Survived operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字, 字数为 150 词左右:

1. A mummy disappeared from a museum — newspaper reports — strange stories about the mummy — the public got alarmed.

2. An official announcement was issued from the museum — scientists were studying the mummy — it would be back in its place soon.

### Key structures 关键句型

*What happened? What has happened? What has been happening? (KS5, 29, 53)* 一般过去时, 现在完成时, 现在完成进行时 (复习第 5, 29, 53 课关键句型)

### Exercises 练习

A. Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what happened, what has happened, and what has been happening.

划出课文中所有一般过去时、现在完成时和现在完成进行时的动词。
Unit 4 Lesson 77

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

The mummy of an Egyptian woman who ________ (die) in 800 B.C. just ________ (have) an operation. As there ________ (be) strange marks on the X-ray plates taken of the mummy, doctors ________ (try) to find out whether the woman ________ (die) of a rare disease. The only way to do this ________ (be) to operate. The operation, which ________ (last) for over four hours, ________ (prove) to be very difficult. The doctors ________ (remove) a section of the mummy and ________ (send) it to a laboratory. They also ________ (find) something which the X-ray plates not ________ (show). The doctors not ________ (decide) yet how the woman ________ (die). They ________ (fear) that the mummy would fall to pieces when they ________ (cut) it open, but fortunately this not ________ (happen). The mummy successfully ________ (survive) the operation.

C Supply since, for or ago in the following sentences:

1. He stayed with us ________ two weeks.
2. She arrived two weeks ________.
3. I have not seen him ________ Monday.
4. He has been ringing up continually ________ lunchtime.
5. We waited ________ ages.
6. He left a month ________ and I have not seen him ________ then.
7. It has not rained ________ March.
8. My grandparents lived here a long time ________
9. I have not heard from him ________ 1993.
10. We have been working on this new plane ________ over a year now.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a B.C. and A.D.

The mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B.C. ________ (I.1) *
Julius Caesar died in 44 B.C. ________ (II) *
William the Conqueror invaded Britain in A.D. 1066. ________ (III) *

b Skin (皮肤), Leather (皮革), Complexion (肤色),

Hard resin covered the skin. (II.7-8)

This briefcase is made of leather. ________ (I.8-9)

Look at her rosy cheeks. She has a lovely complexion ________ (II.10)

Wax (蜡) and Candle (蜡烛) ________ (III)

a small wax figure of the god Duamutef (II.9-10)

The lights went out so we lit candles. ________ (IV)

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences: 选择正确的词:
1. Even though she is old, she still has a good (skin) (complexion).
2. These seat covers are made of (skin) (leather).
3 A baby’s (skin) (leather) is very soft.
4 It is pleasant to have a meal by (candle) (wax) light.
5 Homer lived around 800 (A.D.) (B.C.)

**Multiple choice questions** 多项选择题

**Comprehension 理解**

1 Doctors operated on the mummy ________.
   (a) to find out what the woman had died of
   (b) to find out what was inside it
   (c) to remove a small wax figure of the god, Duamutef
   (d) because the woman died of a rare disease
2 The doctors ________.
   (a) found out what they were looking for
   (b) couldn’t prevent the mummy from falling to pieces
   (c) haven’t yet found out what they were looking for
   (d) expected to find the small wax figure inside the mummy

**Structure 句型**

3 What did the woman die of? ________ did the woman die?
   (a) How       (b) Where      (c) What     (d) When
4 The only way to do this ... There was only one way ________ doing this.
   (a) in       (b) of       (c) by      (d) to
5 The operation proved to be very difficult. It proved to be ________ operation.
   (a) difficult  (b) the difficult  (c) a difficult  (d) difficult the
6 It was difficult because of the hard resin ________ the skin.
   (a) covered  (b) which covering  (c) in covering  (d) covering
7 They haven’t decided yet. They are ________ undecided.
   (a) even  (b) yet  (c) more  (d) still

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8 An operation is usually performed by a ________.
   (a) doctor  (b) dentist  (c) scientist  (d) surgeon
9 There were strange ________ on the X-ray plates.
   (a) markings  (b) notes  (c) signs  (d) messages
10 They wanted to know if the woman had died of a rare ________.
    (a) illness  (b) pain  (c) ache  (d) hurt
11 The operation lasted for over four hours. That’s how long it ________.
    (a) went  (b) went on  (c) went over  (d) went off
12 There was a small wax figure in it. It was ________.
    (a) a carving  (b) a shape  (c) a number  (d) a body
Lesson 78  The last one?  最后一根吗？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

For how long did the writer give up smoking?

After reading an article entitled 'Cigarette Smoking and Your Health' I lit a cigarette to calm my nerves. I smoked with concentration and pleasure as I was sure that this would be my last cigarette. For a whole week I did not smoke at all and during this time, my wife suffered terribly. I had all the usual symptoms of someone giving up smoking: a bad temper and an enormous appetite. My friends kept on offering me cigarettes and cigars. They made no effort to hide their amusement whenever I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket. After seven days of this I went to a party. Everybody around me was smoking and I felt extremely uncomfortable. When my old friend Brian urged me to accept a cigarette, it was more than I could bear. I took one guiltily, lit it and smoked with satisfaction. My wife was delighted that things had returned to normal once more. Anyway, as Brian pointed out, it is the easiest thing in the world to give up smoking. He himself has done it lots of times!

New words and expressions 生词和短语

entitle (1.1) /'entatil/ v. 以……为名

calm (1.2)/ka:m/ v. 镇定

temper (1.6) /'tempə/ n. 脾气

temperature (1.2) /kɒnsə'trəʧən/ n. 集中

concentration (1.2) /ˌkɒnsə'trəʧən/ n. 神经

suffer (1.5) /'səfə/ v. 受苦，受害

urge (1.10) /ə:dʒ/ v. 力劝，怂恿

appetite (1.6) /'æpitət/ n. 胃口，食欲

produce (1.8) /prə'djuːs/ v. 拿出

satisfaction (1.11) /ˌsætis'fækʃən/ n. 满意，满足

delighted (1.11) /'deltəid/ adj. 欣喜的

Note on the text 课文注释

1. an article entitled ‘…’，题名为‘……’的文章。

2. as I was sure that this would be my last cigarette, 因为我确信这是我最后一支烟。as 是“因为”的意思。

3. I had all the usual symptoms of someone giving up smoking …，戒烟的人通常表现的一切征兆，我都有……。

4. kept on offering me cigarettes and cigars，不断给我递香烟和雪茄。keep on doing 是“持续不断做”的意思。

5. They made no effort to hide，他们毫不掩饰。make no effort，根本不作努力。

6. seven days of this，其中 this 是指戒烟后的情况。

7. as Brian pointed out，正如布赖恩指出的，as 是关系代词，作 pointed out 的宾语，代替后面整个句子。
Summary writing

In not more than 80 words, describe the writer's experiences. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Having read</td>
<td>1. Read article — smoking.</td>
<td>The writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>2. Writer smoked last cigarette.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>3. Did not smoke — week.</td>
<td>because of her husband's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and ... to see</td>
<td>5. Bad temper — large appetite.</td>
<td>Whenever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>6. Friends offered cigarettes.</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>7. Amused — sweets.</td>
<td>However, at a ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and since then</td>
<td>8. Went to party.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. Accepted cigarette.</td>
<td>Now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10. Offered by friend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. Returned to normal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

1. Two young boys wanted to smoke — took two cigarettes from father's packet — went and hid in the garage.
2. They lit the cigarettes — smoke and coughing — father saw smoke coming from garage — rushed down — smiled — when he saw boys — offered them cigars — the boys accepted them — both very sick.

Letter writing

Arrange the following heading in the correct order. Put in full stops and commas where necessary:

Brisbane/15 Gower St/24th April 19— /Australia/Queensland

Key structures

A and The (KS6, 30, 54) (复习第 6, 30, 54 课关键句型)
Exercises 练习

A Put in *a(n)* or *the* where necessary. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

在需要的地方填上 *a(n)* 或 *the*, 完成练习后再对照课文, 核对你的答案:

After reading __________ article entitled *'Cigarette Smoking and Your Health'* I lit __________ cigarette to calm my nerves. I smoked with __________ concentration and __________ pleasure as I was sure that this would be my last cigarette. For __________ whole week I did not smoke at all and during this time my wife suffered terribly. I had all __________ usual symptoms of someone giving up __________ smoking: __________ bad temper and __________ enormous appetite. My friends kept on offering me __________ cigarettes and __________ cigars. They made no effort to hide their amusement whenever I produced __________ packet of __________ sweets from my pocket. After seven days of this I went to __________ party.

B Write sentences using *a, the, some* or *any* with the following:

用以下短语与 *a, the, some* 或 *any* 造句:

1. Making coffee. Do you want ...?
2. Exports/increase/this year.
3. Afraid/thunder/lightning.
5. Tax laws/help/rich.
8. Like/apple or orange?
9. Are you/artist or musician?
10. Take/sugar/tea?

Special difficulties 难点

The verb *keep* has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully:

在下列句子中 *keep* 有不同的含义。

My friends kept on offering me cigarettes. (I.7) (Continued.)

Please keep off the grass. (Do not walk on it.)

He kept away from the party. (He did not come.)

Under my essay, the teacher wrote, 'Good work! Keep it up!' (Continue making an effort.)

He ran so fast, I could not keep up with him. (I could not remain beside him.)

A big notice on the door said, 'Keep out!' (Do not come in.)

The cat was kept in during the fireworks. (It was made to stay indoors.)

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

填空:

1. I think he kept __________ the meeting on purpose.
2. Keep __________ the floor. I have just finished scrubbing it.
3. He has just begun a diary. I wonder how long he will keep it __________.
4. He kept __________ making the same mistake.
5. We keep Tim _______ of the room because Betty has measles.
6. Most people spend their lives trying to keep _______ _______ their neighbours.
7. Three children were kept _______ after school for being noisy in class.

**Multiple choice questions 多项选择题**

**Comprehension 理解**

1. What prompted the writer to give up smoking?
   (a) Something he had read.  
   (b) His health.  
   (c) Something he had heard.  
   (d) Something his wife said.
2. The writer _______.
   (a) succeeded in giving up smoking for good  
   (b) began smoking again to please his wife  
   (c) only gave up smoking for a short time  
   (d) started smoking again because he didn't like sweets

**Structure 句型**

3. Did he ______ a cigarette?
   (a) lit  
   (b) light  
   (c) lighted  
   (d) lighting
4. He smoked with concentration. He concentrated ______ it.
   (a) with  
   (b) on  
   (c) in  
   (d) for
5. He had an enormous appetite. He _______.
   (a) had hungry  
   (b) had hunger  
   (c) was hungry  
   (d) hungered
6. They kept on offering him cigarettes. They _______.
   (a) continued to do this  
   (b) did so  
   (c) kept them  
   (d) held them
7. Everybody around him was smoking ______ smoking.
   (a) They was all  
   (b) They all was  
   (c) They were all  
   (d) All of them was

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. He had a bad temper. He was in a bad _______.
   (a) spirit  
   (b) mood  
   (c) feeling  
   (d) disposition
9. They made no effort to hide their amusement. They _______.
   (a) didn’t try to  
   (b) didn’t afford to  
   (c) couldn’t afford to  
   (d) didn’t have a trial
10. I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket. I took one _______.
    (a) off  
    (b) out  
    (c) out of  
    (d) from
11. Brian urged me to accept a cigarette. He tried to ______ me to have one.
    (a) make  
    (b) pursue  
    (c) persuade  
    (d) do
12. He urged me to accept a cigarette. He wanted me to ______ one.
    (a) take  
    (b) agree to  
    (c) receive  
    (d) undertake

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 7-9 行，核对你的答案。
They made no effort to hide their amusement. I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket.
First listen and then answer the question.

Why did the plane turn back?

I used to travel by air a great deal when I was a boy. My parents used to live in South America and I used to fly there from Europe in the holidays. A flight attendant would take charge of me and I never had an unpleasant experience. I am used to travelling by air and only on one occasion have I ever felt frightened. After taking off, we were flying low over the city and slowly gaining height, when the plane suddenly turned round and flew back to the airport. While we were waiting to land, a flight attendant told us to keep calm and to get off the plane quietly as soon as it had touched down. Everybody on board was worried and we were curious to find out what had happened. Later we learnt that there was a very important person on board. The police had been told that a bomb had been planted on the plane. After we had landed, the plane was searched thoroughly. Fortunately, nothing was found and five hours later we were able to take off again.

New words and expressions

- parent (1.1) /ˈpeərənt/ n. 父（母）亲
- flight attendant (1.3) /ˈflaɪt-ə-tendənt/ 空中乘务员
- frightened (1.5) /ˈfrɜːntid/ adj. 害怕，担忧
- curious (1.10) /ˈkjuəriəs/ adj. 好奇的
- bomb (1.11) /bəm/ n. 炸弹
- plant (1.11) /plænt/ v. 安放

Notes on the text

1. take charge of me, 照顾我。
2. I am used to travelling by air, 我现在乘飞机出门旅行已经习惯了。
3. only on one occasion have I ever felt frightened, 只有一次使我吓坏了。这是一句倒装句，即 have 放在主语之前。如果 only 加上一个状语放在句首，那么就要用倒装语序。
4. take off, 起飞。
5. gain height,（飞机）爬高。
6. touch down,（飞机）着陆。
7. on board, 在……(如飞机) 上。
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words describe what happened from the moment the plane took off. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词的篇幅描述一下飞机起飞后发生的事情。用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>1 Plane took off.</td>
<td>After having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>2 Flew low — city.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meanwhile</td>
<td>3 Gaining height.</td>
<td>Although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>4 Had to return — airport.</td>
<td>During this time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone had told</td>
<td>5 Told to keep calm.</td>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but though</td>
<td>6 Disembarked.</td>
<td>Because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 Learnt — important person.</td>
<td>However</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 Police — bomb.</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 Searched.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Found nothing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 Five hours later took off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字，字数为 150 左右:

1 Plane took off — a passenger threw a lighted cigarette into an air vent — he thought it was an ash tray.
2 Smoke — panic — the plane returned to the airport — fire engines, ambulances — no one was hurt — the fire was put out — the plane took off again.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a suitable Purpose of about 50 words to follow this introductory paragraph:

按照以下引言的思路，写出一段 50 个词左右的“目的”:

You will be surprised to hear that your uncle Peter has unexpectedly returned from South America. He is staying with us at present and I know that he would very much like to see you.

Key structures 关键句型

What happened? What was happening? What used to happen? (KS7, 31, 55) 表示过去发生、过去正在进行和过去经常发生的动作（复习第 7, 31, 55 课关键句型）

Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage that tell us what happened, what was happening, and what used to/ would happen.

划出课文中所有说明过去发生、过去正在进行、过去经常／将要发生的情况的动词。
Unit 4 Lesson 79

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Use would in place of used to where possible. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

I ________ (travel) by air a great deal when I ________ (be) a boy. My parents ________ (live) in South America and I ________ (fly) there from Europe in the holidays. A flight attendant ________ (take) charge of me and I never ________ (have) an unpleasant experience. I am used to travelling by air and only on one occasion have I ever felt frightened. After taking off, we ________ (fly) low over the city and slowly ________ (gain) height, when the plane suddenly ________ (turn) round and ________ (fly) back to the airport. While we ________ (wait) to land, a flight attendant ________ (tell) us to keep calm and to get off the plane quietly as soon as it had touched down.

C Explain the difference in meaning between these two sentences:

1 I used to fly there from Europe in the holidays. (1.2-3)
2 I am used to travelling by air. (1.4)

Special difficulties

The verb take has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully:

After taking off, we were flying over the city ... (1.5-6)
He took off his coat. (He removed his coat.)
He is always taking his teacher off. (He is always making fun of him by imitating him.)
Young Tom takes after his father. (He resembles his father.)
That wardrobe takes up a lot of space. (It occupies a lot of space.)
He has taken up French. (He has begun to learn French.)
When his wife died, he took to drinking. (He started drinking and it became a habit.)
He was so persuasive that I was taken in. (I was deceived.)
The reporter took down everything I said. (The reporter wrote ...)
That business was doing very badly until Jones took over. (He became in charge of it.)

Exercise

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1 Who will take ________ when the present director leaves?
2 As soon as he got into the lift he took his hat ________.
3 You shouldn't be taken ________ by stories like that.
4 Last year he took ________ Russian; now he's taking ________ Chinese.
5 None of my children takes ________ me.
6 The new rocket will take ________ from Cape Canaveral.
7 'Please take ________ this letter for me, Pamela,' the manager said.
8 He takes people ________ so well he ought to go on the stage.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The aeroplane had to return _______.
   (a) a long time after it had taken off
   (b) shortly after it had taken off
   (c) just before landing
   (d) the next day
2 The plane had to return because _______.
   (a) there was a very important person on board
   (b) everyone was worried
   (c) the flight attendant said so
   (d) there was fear of an explosion.

Structure 句型
3 I used to travel a great deal when I was a boy. I still _______ a great deal today.
   (a) use to travel
   (b) used to travel
   (c) travel
   (d) am used to travelling
4 I used to travel a great deal. I used to travel _______.
   (a) very many
   (b) a great number
   (c) a lot
   (d) lots
5 _______ have you been travelling? Since I was a boy.
   (a) Since when
   (b) When
   (c) For when
   (d) How much
6 I used to fly to South America _______ the holidays.
   (a) on
   (b) to
   (c) at
   (d) during
7 I felt frightened. It was _______ experience.
   (a) frightening
   (b) a frightening
   (c) the frightening
   (d) one frightening

Vocabulary 词汇
8 I used to travel by air. I always went on a long _______.
   (a) trip
   (b) travel
   (c) way
   (d) distance
9 She would take charge of me. She was _______.
   (a) dutiful
   (b) commanding
   (c) charging
   (d) responsible
10 I am used to travelling by air. I am _______ to it.
    (a) accustomed
    (b) habitual
    (c) customary
    (d) inhabited
11 She told us to keep calm. She told us not to be _______.
    (a) nervous
    (b) angry
    (c) irritated
    (d) annoyed
12 We were curious to find out. We _______.
    (a) were strange
    (b) were odd
    (c) wanted to know
    (d) were peculiar

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 5 行，核对你的答案。
I have only ever felt frightened on one occasion.
Only on one occasion _______.
First listen and then answer the question.

Perhaps the most extraordinary building of the nineteenth century was the Crystal Palace, which was built in Hyde Park for the Great Exhibition of 1851. The Crystal Palace was different from all other buildings in the world, for it was made of iron and glass. It was one of the biggest buildings of all time and a lot of people from many countries came to see it. A great many goods were sent to the exhibition from various parts of the world. There was also a great deal of machinery on display. The most wonderful piece of machinery on show was Nasmyth’s steam hammer. Though in those days, travelling was not as easy as it is today, steam boats carried thousands of visitors across the Channel from Europe. On arriving in England, they were taken to the Crystal Palace by train. There were six million visitors in all, and the profits from the exhibition were used to build museums and colleges. Later, the Crystal Palace was moved to South London. It remained one of the most famous buildings in the world until it was burnt down in 1936.

New words and expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>palace</td>
<td>/ˈpælɪs/</td>
<td>n. 宫殿</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extraordinary</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstrɔːrəndəri/</td>
<td>adj. 非凡的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhibition</td>
<td>/ɪkˈstrɪbjuʃən/</td>
<td>n. 展览</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iron</td>
<td>/aɪrən/</td>
<td>n. 铁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various</td>
<td>/ˈveəriəs/</td>
<td>adj. 各种各样的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>machinery</td>
<td>/məˈʃɪəri/</td>
<td>n. 机器</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>/dɪˈspleɪ/</td>
<td>n. 展览</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steam</td>
<td>/stiːm/</td>
<td>n. 蒸汽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit</td>
<td>/ˈprɒfɪt/</td>
<td>n. 利润</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>college</td>
<td>/ˈkɒlɪdʒ/</td>
<td>n. 学院</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text

1. which was built in Hyde Park, 是一个非限定性定语从句, 修饰 the Crystal Palace。
2. the Great Exhibition, 世界博览会。
3. it was made of iron and glass, 它是用钢和玻璃建成的。be made of ....用⋯⋯制造（指原材料没有发生化学上的变化）。
4. of all time, 空前的。
5. on display = on show, 展出。
6. on arriving in England, 一到英国。
7. in all. 总共。

参考译文

19 世纪最不寻常的建筑也许要数水晶宫了。它是为 1851 年的“世界博览会”而建在海德公园的。这座水
Summary writing 摘要写作

Give an account of the history of the Crystal Palace in not more than 85 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 85 个单词的篇幅来讲述一下水晶宫的历史。用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 The Crystal Palace.</td>
<td>which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Built — exhibition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Different — others.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Iron and glass.</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Goods — world.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Machinery.</td>
<td>as well as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Visitors: boat, train.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Colleges — museums.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Profits.</td>
<td>Made of... it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Moved — South London.</td>
<td>... not only... but... as well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Remained.</td>
<td>This attracted... who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Burnt down 1936.</td>
<td>later from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Crystal Palace and... until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字，字数为 150 左右:

1. A visit to a modern exhibition — how I got there — the exhibition attracted large crowds.
2. My first impressions — the things on display — a walk round the exhibition hall — the exhibits that I liked best — tired at the end of the day.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a suitable Purpose of about 50 words to follow this introductory paragraph:

按照以下引言的思路，写出一段 50 个词的“目的”:

I have some wonderful news for you. I have at last managed to get two tickets for the Cup Final.

Key structures 关键句型

The best and the worst 形容词和副词的比较级和最高级 (KS8, 32, 56) (复习第 8, 32, 56 课关键句型)
UNIT 4 LESSON 80

Exercises

A How many comparisons can you find in the passage? Underline as many as you can.

B Supply the missing words in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

Perhaps the extraordinary building of the nineteenth century was the Crystal Palace, which was built in Hyde Park for the Great Exhibition of 1851. The Crystal Palace was different all other buildings in the world, for it was made of iron and glass. It was one of the buildings all time and a of people from countries came to see it. A great goods were sent to the exhibition from various parts of the world. There was also a great of machinery on display. The wonderful piece of machinery on show was Nasmyth’s steam hammer. Though in those days, travelling was not easy it is today, steam boats carried thousands of visitors across the Channel from Europe. The Crystal Palace remained one of the famous buildings the world until it was burnt down in 1936.

Special difficulties

Phrases with on (Compare SD43)

Study these examples:

There was also a great deal of machinery on display. (I.7-8)
The most wonderful piece of machinery on show... (I.8-9)
He has gone to Frankfurt on business. 他因公去法兰克福。
I didn’t catch the bus. I came here on foot. 我没赶上公共汽车, 我是走来的。
I asked to see the officer on duty. 我请求见值班官员。

On the whole, it has been a very successful year. 总起来说, 这是成功的一年。
Look at that smoke. That building must be on fire. 看那股烟, 那座大楼肯定着火了。
I don’t think it was an accident. He did it on purpose. 我认为那不是个意外事故, 他是故意的。
On the average, I make six telephone calls a day. 我每天平均打6个电话。
You mustn’t on any account sign the contract before you read it. 你一定要读完合同后再签字。
I know I had agreed to let you go to the cinema, but on second thoughts, you should stay at home and finish your homework. 我知道我曾同意你去看电影, 但经过重新考虑, 你应该呆在家里完成你的作业。

Exercise

Supply phrases with on in the following sentences:

1 While the guard was ________, he heard a shot.
2 I’ve changed my mind. ________ I’ll go by plane instead.
3 I think you dropped your handkerchief ________, so that he could pick it up.
4 You must be exhausted! Did you come all that way ________? You should have taken a taxi.
5 I’m not always pleased with his work, but ________ it is satisfactory.
6 You must not, ________, leave this room.
7 ________, 250,000 tourists visit this town each year.
Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1. The Crystal Palace differed from all other buildings at the time because _______.
   (a) it was very big
   (b) it was in an exhibition
   (c) it was made of unusual materials
   (d) it was in Hyde Park

2. The Great Exhibition of 1851 was _______.
   (a) a failure
   (b) highly successful
   (c) not very profitable
   (d) spoilt by a fire

Structure

3. When was the Great Exhibition? _______.
   (a) Of
   (b) On
   (c) At
   (d) In

4. A great many goods were sent. There were _______.
   (a) quite a few
   (b) quite a little
   (c) not too many
   (d) very much

5. Travelling was not as easy as it is today. It wasn’t so easy _______ in those days.
   (a) for travelling
   (b) in travelling
   (c) in order to travel
   (d) to travel

6. On arriving in England _______ they arrived in England _______.
   (a) On
   (b) Why
   (c) When
   (d) Where

7. It was one of the most famous buildings in the world. It was one of the most famous _______ all buildings.
   (a) of
   (b) from
   (c) by
   (d) than

Vocabulary

8. It was an extraordinary building. It was quite _______.
   (a) extreme
   (b) funny
   (c) big
   (d) exceptional

9. Goods were sent from various parts of the world. They came from _______.
   (a) mixed
   (b) assorted
   (c) different
   (d) mixed up

10. There was a great deal of machinery. This means there _______.
    (a) was one big machine
    (b) was one big engine
    (c) were many machines
    (d) was one powerful machine

11. There were six million visitors in all. That was the _______.
    (a) all
    (b) whole
    (c) result
    (d) total

12. Museums were built with the profits. They were built with the _______.
    (a) benefits
    (b) earnings
    (c) winnings
    (d) excesses

Sentence structure

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The Crystal Palace was different from all other buildings in the world. It was made of iron and glass.
First listen and then answer the question.

Why did the prisoner attack the driver?

When he had killed the guard, the prisoner of war quickly dragged him into the bushes. Working rapidly in the darkness, he soon changed into the dead man’s clothes. Now, dressed in a blue uniform and with a rifle over his shoulder, the prisoner marched boldly up and down in front of the camp. He could hear shouting in the camp itself. Lights were blazing and men were running here and there: they had just discovered that a prisoner had escaped. At that moment, a large black car with four officers inside it, stopped at the camp gates. The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted as they passed. When they had gone, the driver of the car came towards him. The man obviously wanted to talk. He was rather elderly with grey hair and clear blue eyes. The prisoner felt sorry for him, but there was nothing else he could do. As the man came near, the prisoner knocked him to the ground with a sharp blow. Then, jumping into the car, he drove off as quickly as he could.

New words and expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prisoner</td>
<td>/'prizana/</td>
<td>n. 囚犯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bush</td>
<td>/boj/</td>
<td>n. 灌木丛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rapidly</td>
<td>/'raepidi/</td>
<td>adv. 迅速地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform</td>
<td>/'juinifoim/</td>
<td>n. 制服</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rifle</td>
<td>/'raifol/</td>
<td>n. 步枪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoulder</td>
<td>/'soulda/</td>
<td>n. 肩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>march</td>
<td>/ma:tʃ/</td>
<td>v. 进行</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boldly</td>
<td>/'bouldli/</td>
<td>adv. 大胆地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blaze</td>
<td>/bleiz/</td>
<td>v. 闪耀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salute</td>
<td>/'salut/</td>
<td>v. 行礼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elderly</td>
<td>/'eldoli/</td>
<td>adj. 上了年纪的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grey</td>
<td>/grei/</td>
<td>adj. 灰白色的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharp</td>
<td>/ʃarp/</td>
<td>adj. 猛烈的</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>/blo/</td>
<td>n. 打击</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes on the text

1. When he had killed the guard, the prisoner of war quickly dragged him into the bushes. 他杀死了卫兵之后，迅速地将尸体拖进了灌木丛。这是一个含有时间状语从句的复合句，根据英语的习惯，人称代词要放在从句中，所代的名词要放在主句当中。
2. the prisoner of war (常缩写成 POW), 囚犯。
3. up and down, 来回，前后。
4. here and there, 到处。
5. stand to attention, 立正。

参考译文

那个战俘杀死卫兵以后，迅速地把尸体拖进了灌木丛。他在黑暗中忙活了一会儿，很快就换上了死者的衣
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 85 words describe what the prisoner did. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 85 个单词篇幅描述一下这个战俘脱逃的经过, 用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After having</td>
<td>1 Prisoner of war killed guard.</td>
<td>As soon as he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>2 Dragged bushes.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then he</td>
<td>3 Changed into clothes.</td>
<td>the prisoner of war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>4 Rifle over shoulder.</td>
<td>With</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A short time afterwards</td>
<td>5 Marched — camp.</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so ... and</td>
<td>6 Four officers — car.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When they had gone</td>
<td>7 Attention — saluted.</td>
<td>When the driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and after</td>
<td>8 Driver — towards him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>9 Knocked out.</td>
<td>Then, jumping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Jumped into car.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 Drove away.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字, 字数为 150 左右:

1. Dark night — a prisoner of war who had escaped was dressed as a guard — he was still in the camp — took part in the search for the ‘missing’ prisoner.

2. He went out in a lorry with the other guards — into the countryside — the guards went into the forest — the prisoner escaped.

Letter writing 书信写作

The Conclusion. The last paragraph of a letter should take the form of a polite wish. Learn the following phrases by heart:

结束语: 书信的最后一般应是有礼貌的问候。熟记以下短语:
Please give my love/regards to ...
I hope you feel better soon.

Exercise 练习

Write five opening sentences which could be used in letters to friends or relations.

写出 5 句给朋友或亲属的信的开头语。
Unit 4  Lesson 81

**Key structures 关键句型**

At, In, To, With, etc. (KS9, 33, 57) (复习第 9, 33, 57 课关键句型)

**Exercise 练习**

A Underline the words into, in, with, at, and to in the passage. Note how they have been used.

在课文中划出 into, in, with, at 和 to。注意它们的用法。

B Supply the missing words in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

1. When he had killed the guard, the prisoner of war quickly dragged him _______ the bushes. Working rapidly _______ the darkness, he soon changed _______ the dead man’s clothes. Now, dressed _______ a blue uniform and _______ a rifle over his shoulder, the prisoner marched boldly up and down in front of the camp. He could hear shouting _______ the camp itself.

2. _______ that moment, a large black car _______ four officers inside it, stopped _______ the camp gates. The officers got out and the prisoner stood _______ attention.

3. He was rather elderly _______ grey hair and clear blue eyes.

4. As the man came near, the prisoner knocked him _______ the ground _______ a sharp blow. Then, jumping _______ the car, he drove off as quickly as he could.

**Special difficulties 难点**

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

a. Cloth, Clothing, Clothes.
   I wanted to have a suit made so I bought three and a half yards of cloth. 我想做套西服，因此我买了 3 码半布料。
   You should give all this old clothing away. 你应该把旧衣物送人。
   He soon changed into the dead man’s clothes. (II.2-3)

b. Salute, Greet.
   He stood to attention and saluted as they passed. (I.9)
   He went to the station to greet his friend. 他去车站迎接他的朋友。

c. Clear, Clean.
   He was rather elderly with clear blue eyes. (II.10-11)
   The water in the stream was very clear. 小河的水很清澈。
   His instructions were very clear. (They were easy to understand.) 他讲授的条理非常清楚。
   We can cross now. The road is clear. 我们可以过马路了，路上没车。
   She keeps her house very clean. 她把她的房子收拾得干干净净。

**Exercise 练习**

Supply any of the above words in the following sentences:

用以上词组填空:

1. The guard _______ the general.

2. When the canal was _______ the ship went through.
3 I bought a piece of _______ to make a dress.
4 I haven’t bought any new _______ for years.
5 The soldier _______ his mother with a kiss.

**Multiple choice questions**

**Comprehension**

1 The prisoner’s escape _______.
   (a) had not attracted any attention in the camp  (b) had passed unnoticed
   (c) was never discovered  (d) was soon discovered in the camp

2 The four officers must have thought the man was _______.
   (a) a guard  (b) a driver  (c) a prisoner  (d) an officer

**Structure**

3 When he had killed the guard, he dragged him into the bushes. _______ the guard he dragged him into the bushes.
   (a) On having killed  (b) When killing  (c) When having killed  (d) On having been killed

4 A black car stopped at the gates. _______ officers inside it.
   (a) They had  (b) There had  (c) There was  (d) There were

5 He saluted as they passed. He saluted _______.
   (a) while they had passed  (b) while they were passing  (c) though they were passing  (d) because they had passed

6 He was rather elderly. He was _______.
   (a) very old  (b) quite old  (c) too old  (d) old enough

7 There was nothing else he could do. That was _______.
   (a) the whole  (b) complete  (c) every  (d) all

**Vocabulary**

8 He dragged him into the bushes. He _______.
   (a) carried him  (b) lifted him
   (c) pulled him along the ground  (d) took him

9 He changed into the dead man’s clothes. He _______ them.
   (a) changed  (b) wore  (c) dressed  (d) put

10 He marched boldly. He was _______.
   (a) timid  (b) bald  (c) strong  (d) brave

11 Lights were blazing. They were _______.
   (a) gleaming  (b) shining  (c) reflecting  (d) being burnt

12 He knocked him down with a sharp blow. He _______.
   (a) beat him  (b) blew him over  (c) knocked him  (d) struck him

**Sentence structure**

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The officers got out. The prisoner stood to attention. He saluted. They passed.
Lesson 82  Monster or fish?  奇怪还是鱼？

First listen and then answer the question.

What was the monster called?

Fishermen and sailors sometimes claim to have seen monsters in the sea. Though people have often laughed at stories told by sea-men, it is now known that many of these ‘monsters’ which have at times been sighted are simply strange fish. Occasionally, unusual creatures are washed to the shore, but they are rarely caught out at sea. Some time ago, however, a peculiar fish was caught near Madagascar. A small fishing boat was carried miles out to sea by the powerful fish as it pulled on the line. Realizing that this was no ordinary fish, the fisherman made every effort not to damage it in any way. When it was eventually brought to shore, it was found to be over thirteen feet long. It had a head like a horse, big blue eyes, shining silver skin, and a bright red tail. The fish, which has since been sent to a museum where it is being examined by a scientist, is called an oarfish. Such creatures have rarely been seen alive by man as they live at a depth of six hundred feet.

New words and expressions  生词和短语

monster (title) /ˈmonsta/ n. 怪物
peculiar (1.6) /pr'kjulær/ adj. 奇怪的，不寻常的
sailor (1.1) /ˈseilə/ n. 海员
shining (1.10) /ˈʃainig/ adj. 闪闪发光的
creature (1.5) /′kjri:tə/ n. 动物，生物
oarfish (1.12) /′oəfish/ n. 柴鱼

Notes on the text  课文注释

1 Fishermen and sailors sometimes claim to have seen monsters in the sea. 渔夫和水手有时声称看到过海里的妖怪。句中的动词不定式 to have seen 是不定式的完成时结构，作动词 claim 的宾语。
2 at times. 有时。
3 out at sea. 在远海。
4 no ordinary fish. 根本不是一条普通的鱼，no 比 not 否定的意味更重。
5 made every effort. 尽一切努力。

参考译文

渔夫和水手有时声称看到过海里的妖怪。虽然人们常常对水手们讲的故事付诸一笑，但现在看来，人们有时看到的这些“妖怪”多不过是一些奇怪的鱼。一些异常的生物偶尔会被冲到岸上来，但它们在海上却极少能被捕到。然而不久前，在马达加斯加附近的海里却捕到了一条奇怪的鱼。一条小渔船被一条咬住钩的强壮的大鱼拖到了几英里以外的海面上。那位渔民意识到这根本不是一条普通的鱼，于是千方百计不让它受到丝毫伤害。当终于把它弄上岸后，人们发现它身长超过了13英尺。它长着一个像马一样的头，有着大而蓝眼睛和闪
Summary writing 摘要写作

Give an account of what happened in not more than 80 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词的篇幅描述一下所发生的事情, 用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

CONNECTIONS
after having pulled
Making
The fish, which with
it … who said
and

POINTS
1 Strange fish caught — Madagascar.
2 Fishing boat — out to sea.
3 Effort — damage.
4 Fisherman — brought it to shore.
5 Thirteen feet.
6 Head like horse.
7 Sent museum.
8 Examined — scientist.
9 Oarfish.
10 Six hundred feet.

The Conclusion. Learn the following phrases by heart:

I shall be looking forward to hearing from /seeing you soon.
I hope you will soon settle down in your (new job, school, etc.).

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两个段落, 字数为 150 个词左右:

1 A man in a bar — explaining to others how he caught a big fish — rough seas — great difficulty — boat carried out to sea.
2 After several hours he pulled the fish up — never seen before — its size, appearance and colours — but it got away.

Letter writing 书信写作

The Conclusion. Learn the following phrases by heart:

I shall be looking forward to hearing from /seeing you soon.
I hope you will soon settle down in your (new job, school, etc.).

Exercise 练习

Write a suitable Purpose for a letter in about 50 words.

The letter has as its conclusion:

根据这封信的结束语, 写出 50 个词左右的“目的”。其结束语为:

'I hope you feel better soon.'
Unit 4 Lesson 82

Key structures 关键句型

A peculiar fish was caught near Madagascar. (KS10, 34, 58) (复习第 10, 34, 58 课关键句型)

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage and study their form.
划出文中的动词并学习它们的用法。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.
用正确的动词填空，完成练习后不再对照课文，核对你的答案。

Though people have often laughed at stories told by seamen, it now (know) that many of these ‘monsters’ which at times (sight) are simply strange fish. Occasionally, unusual creatures (wash) to the shore, but they rarely (catch) out at sea. Some time ago, however, a peculiar fish (catch) near Madagascar. A small fishing boat (carry) miles out to sea by the powerful fish as it pulled on the line. When it (eventually) (bring) to shore, it (find) to be over thirteen feet long. The fish, which (since) (send) to a museum where it (examine) by a scientist, (call) an oarfish. Such creatures (see) alive by man as they live at a depth of six hundred feet.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:
细读以下例子：

a Laugh and Laugh at.
Everybody laughed when the circus clown made his appearance. 马戏团的小丑出现时大家都笑了。

Though people have often laughed at stories told by seamen ... (1.2-4) (People have made fun of ...)

b Wash and Wash up.
I must wash my hands. They are very dirty. 我必须洗手，它们很脏。

Have you ever seen a cat washing itself? 你见过猫给自己洗澡吗？

Unusual creatures are washed to the shore. (1.4-5) (They are carried to the shore by water.)

The man was washed overboard by a big wave. 那个男的被一个大浪从船上卷入水中。

I’ll wash up tonight. (I’ll wash the dishes.) 今晚我洗碗。

Exercise 练习

Supply any of the above words in the following sentences:
用以上词和词组填空：

1 What a lot of dirty plates! Who is going to ________?
2 Don’t wear that hat. People will ________ you.
3 The bridge was ________ away by the river.
4 We all ________ when he told us a funny story.
5 The boy was told to ________ his hands before sitting at table.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The monsters which fishermen sometimes claim to have seen _______.
   (a) are probably unusual fish  
   (b) are not fish at all
   (c) exist in deep water  
   (d) are often washed up on the shore

2. The creature that was caught in Madagascar by a fisherman was _______.
   (a) a monster  
   (b) an unusual fish
   (c) half horse, half fish  
   (d) a common fish

Structure 句型

3. They claim _______ monsters in the sea.
   (a) that they have seen  
   (b) have seen
   (c) to be seen  
   (d) to being seen

4. People often laugh at stories _______ told by seamen.
   (a) which  
   (b) which have
   (c) which have being  
   (d) which have been

5. When _______ that this was no ordinary fish, he tried not to damage it.
   (a) realizing  
   (b) having realized
   (c) he realized  
   (d) he has realized

6. _______ eventually brought to the shore, it was found to be very long.
   (a) Been  
   (b) When being
   (c) On being  
   (d) When it was being

7. It had a head like a horse. _______ head was like that of a horse.
   (a) It  
   (b) It’s
   (c) Its’  
   (d) Its

Vocabulary 词汇

8. Fishermen claim to have seen monsters. They _______ that they have.
   (a) state  
   (b) own
   (c) owe  
   (d) persist

9. People have often laughed at these stories. They _______.
   (a) haven’t taken them seriously  
   (b) enjoyed them
   (c) teased them  
   (d) mocked them

10. ‘Monsters’ have at times been sighted. They have been _______.
    (a) viewed  
    (b) glanced at
    (c) seen  
    (d) caught

11. The fish was powerful. It was _______.
    (a) dynamic  
    (b) strong
    (c) forceful  
    (d) wilful

12. Such creatures have rarely been seen. They have _______ been seen.
    (a) never  
    (b) unusually
    (c) always  
    (d) seldom

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these two sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The fish is called an oarfish. It has since been sent to a museum. It is being examined by a scientist.
Lesson 83 After the elections

First listen and then answer the question.

Why did Patrick keep on asking the same question?

The former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, was defeated in the recent elections. He is now retiring from political life and has gone abroad. My friend, Patrick, has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane’s Radical Progressive Party. After the elections, Patrick went to the former Prime Minister’s house. When he asked if Mr. Lane lived there, the policeman on duty told him that since his defeat, the ex-Prime Minister had gone abroad. On the following day, Patrick went to the house again. The same policeman was just walking slowly past the entrance, when Patrick asked the same question. Though a little suspicious this time, the policeman gave him the same answer. The day after, Patrick went to the house once more and asked exactly the same question. This time, the policeman lost his temper. ‘I told you yesterday and the day before yesterday,’ he shouted, ‘Mr. Lane was defeated in the elections. He has retired from political life and gone to live abroad!’

‘I know,’ answered Patrick, ‘but I love to hear you say it!’

New words and expressions

election (title) /ɪˈlekʃən/ n. 选举
former (1.1) /ˈfɔːmər/ adj. 从前的
defeat (1.1) /ˈdefɪt/ v. 打败
fanatical (1.3) /ˈfænətɪkal/ adj. 狂热的
opponent (1.3-4) /əˈpəʊnənt/ n. 反对者, 对手

radical (1.4) /ˈrædɪkəl/ adj. 激进的
progressive (1.4) /prəˈgrɛsɪv/ adj. 进步的
ex- (1.7) /eks/ prefix (前缀, 用于名词前) 前……
suspicious (1.9) /səˈspiʃəs/ adj. 怀疑的

Notes on the text

1 the elections, 大选。在英文中 election 常用复数形式, 后接表示复数的动词, 用来指全国性的选举。
2 Prime Minister, 首相。
3 He is now retiring from political life, 他现在正退出政界。
4 Though a little suspicious this time, 虽然这次有点疑心, 这是一个让步状语从句, 其中的主语和谓语动词都已经省略了, 完整的从句应是 Though the policeman was a little suspicious this time。
5 lost his temper, 发脾气。

参考译文

前首相温特沃兹·莱恩先生在最近的大选中被击败。他现在退出了政界，到了国外去了。我的朋友帕特里克一直是莱恩先生的激进党的强烈反对者。大选结束后，帕特里克来到了前首相的住处。当他询问莱恩先生是否住在那里时，值班的警察告诉他这位前首相落选后出国去了。第二天，帕特里克再次来到前首相的住处。昨天的那位警察正从门口慢慢走过，帕特里克上前问了和昨天同样的问题。虽然那位警察这次有点疑心，但还是对
Summary writing 摘要写作

Give an account of what happened in not more than 80 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词的篇幅描述一下所发生的事情，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>After having</td>
<td>1 Defeated — elections</td>
<td>Since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>2 Prime Minister retired — abroad.</td>
<td>As</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>3 Patrick — fanatical opponent — Party.</td>
<td>Each time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whether</td>
<td>4 Went — house — three times.</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>5 Asked policeman.</td>
<td>he was told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 Mr. Lane’s house.</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 Third time — angry policeman.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 Told — defeat, retirement.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 Patrick said — something he loved to hear.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字，字数在 150 左右：

1. A politician was giving a pre-election speech: big promises: more houses, schools etc. — better foreign policy.

2. Members of the audience asked rude questions — the politician lost his temper — said that the audience did not deserve more houses, etc. — walked off angrily — defeated in the election.

Letter writing 书信写作

The Conclusion

Learn the following phrases by heart:

I am very sorry for all the trouble this has caused you. I wish you good luck/every success in …

Exercise 练习

In about 50 words write the Purpose for a letter which has one of the above phrases as its conclusion. 写出一段 50 个词左右的“目的”，而你的信可以使用以上一句话作为结束语。

Key structures 关键句型

Review KS74-82 复习第 74-82 课关键句型

What is happening? What always happens? (KS74) (第 74 课)
Unit 4 Lesson 80

What happened? (KS75) (第 75 课)
What has happened? What has been happening? (KS76) (第 76 课)
What was happening? (KS79) (第 79 课)
A peculiar fish was caught near Madagascar. (KS82) (第 82 课)

Exercises 练习

A. Underline all the verbs in the passage noting carefully how they have been used. Revise any key structures you have forgotten.

B. Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

The former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, _______ (defeat) in the recent elections. He now _______ (retire) from political life and _______ (go) abroad. My friend, Patrick, always _______ (be) a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane’s Radical Progressive Party. After the elections, Patrick _______ (go) to the former Prime Minister’s house. When he _______ (ask) if Mr. Lane _______ (live) there, the policeman on duty _______ (tell) him that since his defeat, the ex-Prime Minister had gone abroad. On the following day, Patrick _______ (go) to the house again. The same policeman just _______ (walk) slowly past the entrance, when Patrick _______ (ask) the same question. Though a little suspicious this time, the policeman _______ (give) him the same answer. The day after, Patrick _______ (go) to the house once more and _______ (ask) exactly the same question. This time, the policeman _______ (tell) you yesterday and the day before yesterday. he _______ (shout), ‘Mr. Lane _______ (defeat) in the elections. He _______ (retire) from political life and _______ (go) to live abroad!’

‘I _______ (know),’ _______ (answer) Patrick, ‘but I _______ (love) to hear you say it!’

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 常常容易混淆的词

Temper and Mood.

Study these examples:

This time, the policeman lost his temper. (1.11) (He got angry.)

Keep your temper! (Don’t get angry!) 不要发火!

After what happened last night, I was surprised to find that he was in such a good temper this morning. (He was not angry.) 在昨晚发生的事情之后, 我惊奇地发现他今天早上的情绪很好。

You should apologize to him. He’s in a very bad temper. (He is angry.) 你应该向他道歉, 他非常生气。

I enjoyed myself at the party. I was in a very good mood. (I was cheerful.) 我在聚会上玩得很开心, 心情非常好。

Don’t disturb him. He’s in a very bad mood. (He is not cheerful, but not necessarily angry.) 别打扰他, 他心境不好。

I’m in the mood for a drive into the country. (I would very much like to go for a drive into the country.) 我很想开车去乡下兜兜风。

Exercise 练习

Use each of the above italicized phrases in sentences of your own.

用以上斜体印出的短语各造一个句。
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 If Mr. Wentworth Lane had won the recent election ________.
   (a) he would probably have gone abroad
   (b) he would probably have been Prime Minister again
   (c) he would probably have returned from abroad
   (d) he would probably have given up politics

2 Patrick kept asking about the former Prime Minister ________.
   (a) because he was so pleased that Mr. Lane had been defeated
   (b) because he wanted information
   (c) because he wanted to annoy the policeman
   (d) because he didn’t understand what the policeman had told him

Structure 句型
3 He has always been a fanatical opponent and he still ________.
   (a) has been    (b) was     (c) is         (d) has

4 He has been an opponent. He has been opposed ________ it.
   (a) against    (b) for      (c) to        (d) from

5 He asked if Mr. Lane lived there. He didn’t know ________ Mr. Lane lived there.
   (a) whether    (b) that      (c) unless    (d) providing that

6 The policeman was suspicious ________ Patrick.
   (a) to         (b) of        (c) for       (d) from

7 He has gone to live abroad. He ________ abroad for some time now.
   (a) has gone   (b) went      (c) has been  (d) did go

Vocabulary 词汇
8 Mr. Lane was the former Prime Minister. He was the ________ one.
   (a) first      (b) previous   (c) latter    (d) before

9 He was defeated in the elections. He was ________.
   (a) conquered  (b) won        (c) beaten    (d) destroyed

10 Patrick has always been a fanatical opponent. He is ________ him.
    (a) opposite   (b) anti       (c) at        (d) against

11 The policeman lost his temper. He ________.
    (a) got angry  (b) was in a bad mood  (c) lost his nerve (d) was in a bad humour

12 Mr. Lane was defeated in the elections. He didn’t get enough ________.
    (a) marks      (b) votes       (c) points    (d) grades

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 9-10 行，核对你的答案。
Just as the same policeman was walking slowly past the entrance, Patrick asked the same question.
The same policeman .................................
First listen and then answer the question.

Who will be driving the buses next week?

Busmen have decided to go on strike next week. The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. No one knows how long it will last. The busmen have stated that the strike will continue until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions. Most people believe that the strike will last for at least a week. Many owners of private cars are going to offer ‘free rides’ to people on their way to work. This will relieve pressure on the trains to some extent. Meanwhile, a number of university students have volunteered to drive buses while the strike lasts. All the students are expert drivers, but before they drive any of the buses, they will have to pass a special test. The students are going to take the test in two days’ time. Even so, people are going to find it difficult to get to work. But so far, the public has expressed its gratitude to the students in letters to the Press. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast!

New words and expressions

strike (title) /straɪk/ n. 罢工
busman (1.1) /ˈbʌsmən/ n. 公共汽车司机
state (1.3) /stɛt/ v. 正式提出, 宣布
agreement (1.3-4) /əˈɡriːmənt/ n. 协议
relieve (1.7) /rɪˈliːv/ v. 减轻
pressure (1.7) /ˈpreʃər/ n. 压力, 麻烦
extent (1.7) /ɪkˈsten/. 程度
volunteer (1.8) /ˌvɒləntər/ v. 自动提出, 自愿
gratitude (1.11) /ˈɡrætitjuːd/ n. 感激
Press (1.12) /ˈpreɪs/ n. 新闻界
object (1.12) /əˈbʒɛkt/ v. 不赞成, 反对

Notes on the text

1. go on strike, 举行罢工。
2. ... is due to begin 中的 due 有“定于 (某时做某事)”的意思, 后接不定式。
3. free ride, 免费乘车。
4. to some extent, 在某种程度上。
5. Only one or two people have objected that ... 本句中 only 在句首, 因为是修饰主语, 因此句子的谓语并不用倒装语序。

参考译文

公共汽车司机决定下星期罢工。罢工定于星期二开始，谁也不知道会持续多久。司机们声称此次罢工将一直持续到就工资和工作条件问题达成全面协议的时候为止。多数人认为此次罢工至少会持续一个星期。很多私人汽车的车主正准备为乘车上班的人们提供“免费乘车”的服务，这将在某种程度上减轻对火车的压力。与此同时，有一部分大学生自愿在罢工期间驾驶公共汽车。所有的学生都是开车的能手，但在驾驶公共汽车之前，
Summary writing

In not more than 80 words, describe what will happen next week. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

POINTS
1. Busmen’s strike begins Tuesday.
2. May last a week.
3. Because of this, car owners ride.
4. People going to work.
5. University students volunteer to drive buses.
7. Difficult to get to work.
8. Public grateful.
9. One or two objected.
10. Too fast.

CONNECTIONS
which
Because of this
, too.
but
Though
Only
that

Composition

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

1. The strike began — the students drove badly — the buses were seldom on time — often crowded — the public complained — the busmen were pleased.
2. The students threatened to go on strike — they did so — this angered the busmen who returned to work.

Letter writing

The Conclusion. Complete the following sentences:

1. I shall be looking ...
2. I am very sorry for ...
3. I hope you will ...
4. I wish you ...
5. Please give my ...

Key structures

What will happen? 一般将来时 (KS12, 36, 60) (复习第 12, 36, 60 课关键句型)
Exercises 练习

A Underline all the verbs in the passage which tell us what will happen.
划出课文中所有表示将要发生事件的动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的动词填空。完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

Busmen have decided to go on strike next week. The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. No one knows how long it will last. The busmen have stated that the strike will continue until general agreement is reached about pay and working conditions. Most people believe that the strike will last for a week. Many owners of private cars will offer 'free rides' to people on their way to work. This will relieve pressure on the trains to some extent. Meanwhile, a number of university students have volunteered to drive buses while the strike will last. All the students are expert drivers, but before they will drive any of the buses, they will have to pass a special test. The students will take the test in two days' time. Even so, people will find it difficult to get to work. But so far, the public has expressed its gratitude to the students in letters to the Press. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast!

Special difficulties 难点

Study the word order in the following sentences:
注意以下句子中的语序:

People are going to find it difficult to get to work. (11.10-11)

He thought it easy to pass the examination. (他认为通过考试很容易。)

He considered it wrong that she should have to wait. (他认为她不得不等待是不对的。)

I feel it right that he should be punished. (我认为他应该受到惩罚。)

I think it wrong for people to behave like that. (我认为人们这样做是错误的。)

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing parts in the following sentences. Your sentences must be similar in form to those given above.
完成以下句子，你的句子必须与以上例句类似。

1 He thought it _______.
2 He finds it unnecessary _______.
3 _______ to find a job.
4 She thinks it important _______.
5 _______ for him to wait so long.
6 _______ a good thing that _______.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The busmen say they won’t go back to work _______.
   (a) until next Tuesday
   (b) until they agree about their holidays
Unit 4 Lesson 84

(c) until they have solved their problems
(d) until the students stop driving the buses

2 What will be the main effect of the strike?
(a) There won't be any buses on the road.
(b) Students will have to take a test.
(c) The trains will be crowded.
(d) There won't be many private cars on the road.

Structure 句型

3 The strike is due to begin on Tuesday. That's when it ________
   (a) is going to begin (b) began (c) has begun (d) will have begun

4 How ________? No one knows.
   (a) long it will last (b) long will it last (c) it will last (d) it lasts

5 The strike will last for a week. That's what ________ people believe.
   (a) most of (b) the most of (c) the more (d) most

6 Before ________ any buses, they will have to take a special test.
   (a) to drive (b) drive (c) driving (d) they will drive

7 One or two people have objected ________ the students.
   (a) at (b) for (c) to (d) against

Vocabulary 词汇

8 They will go on strike. So they ________
   (a) will be fighting (b) will be arguing (c) won't be working (d) won't be talking

9 No one knows how long it will last. They don't know how long it will ________
   (a) keep (b) hold (c) carry (d) continue

10 It will last for at least a week. So it might be ________ than a week.
    (a) more (b) less (c) much less (d) a good deal less

11 They've volunteered to drive buses. That's what they're ________ to do.
    (a) eager (b) anxious (c) willing (d) impatient

12 The public has expressed its gratitude. People are ________
    (a) annoyed (b) thankless (c) surprised (d) thankful

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子, 然后对照课文第 8-9 行, 核对你的答案。
University students have volunteered to drive buses during the strike.
University students have volunteered to drive buses while ________.
Lesson 85  Never too old to learn  活到老学到老

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

How long has Mr. Page been teaching?

I have just received a letter from my old school, informing me that my former headmaster, Mr. Stuart Page, will be retiring next week. Pupils of the school, old and new, will be sending him a present to mark the occasion. All those who have contributed towards the gift will sign their names in a large album which will be sent to the headmaster's home. We shall all remember Mr. Page for his patience and understanding and for the kindly encouragement he gave us when we went so unwillingly to school. A great many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in his honour next Thursday. It is a curious coincidence that the day before his retirement, Mr. Page will have been teaching for a total of forty years. After he has retired, he will devote himself to gardening. For him, this will be an entirely new hobby. But this does not matter, for, as he has often remarked, one is never too old to learn.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

inform (1.1) /ɪnˈfɔːm/ v. 告知, 通知   goodbye (1.9) /ˌfeəwel/ n. 告别
headmaster (1.2) /ˈhedmɑːstər/ n. 校长   honour (1.9) /ˈɔnər/ n. 敬意
contribute (1.4) /kənˈtrɪbjuːt/ v. 捐助, 援助   coincidence (1.9) /koʊˈɔnsidəns/ n. 巧合
gift (1.4) /ɡɪft/ n. 礼物, 精品   total (1.10) /ˈtɔːtl/ n. 总数
devote (1.10) /dɪˈvəʊt/ v. 致力于   gardening (1.11) /ˈɡɑːdnɪŋ/ n. 园艺
album (1.5) /ˈælbum/ n. 班名册, 相册   hobby (1.11) /ˈhɒbi/ n. 爱好, 嗜好
patience (1.6) /ˈpeɪʃəns/ n. 耐心   
encouragement (1.7) /ɪnˈkʌrədʒmənt/ n. 鼓励

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 old and new 是 pupils of the school 的同位语。由并列连词连接的两个形容词作定语时，要放在所修饰的词的后面。

2 All those who have contributed towards the gift, 由所有通过捐款的人，contribute towards 是“为……捐款”的意思。

3 remember ... for ..., 记住……的……。

4 a farewell dinner in his honour, 为他举行的告别宴会，in one's honour 是“为向……表示敬意”的意思。

5 It is a curious coincidence that ..., 真是奇异的巧合，that 引导主语从句。

6 a total of, 总共。

7 devote oneself to ..., 致力于……，to 这里是介词，后接名词、动名词。

参考译文

我刚刚收到母校的一封信，通知我说以前的校长斯图亚特·佩奇先生下星期就要退休了。为了纪念这个日
Summary writing 摘要写作

Make a summary of the passage in not more than 80 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词一篇本课课文的摘要，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Now that</td>
<td>1 Former headmaster, Mr. Page, retiring.</td>
<td>After twenty-eight years as a man not only but also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and with</td>
<td>2 Pupils — gift.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 Album — signatures.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After having</td>
<td>4 Attending farewell dinner in honour.</td>
<td>of a man who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which for him</td>
<td>5 Completed forty years as teacher.</td>
<td>Now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>6 Devote — gardening.</td>
<td>Though</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 New hobby.</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 Never too old.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字，字数为 150 词左右：

1. The headmaster’s speech — he thanked the pupils — he remembered pupils past and present — many successful careers — humorous incidents.
2. His own future — memories — old pupils welcome to come and visit him — how he would spend his time — it would take him forty years to put his garden in order.

Letter writing 书信写作

How to end a letter. Study this example:

如何去结束一封信：细读以下例子：

I am looking forward to seeing you soon.

Best regards,

Tom

This is how we usually end letters to friends. We may end ‘Best wishes,’ ‘Yours,’ or ‘Love.’.

这是我们通常给朋友的书信的结束方法。我们可以用“Best wishes”、“Yours”或“Love”结尾。

Exercise 练习

How would you end letters to each of the following?

你将如何结束以下各位的信：

Your mother; your best friend; an acquaintance.
Unit 4  Lesson 85

**Key structures 关键句型**

What will happen? What will be happening? What will have been happening? 一般将来时、将来进行时、将来完成进行时 (KS13, 37, 61) (复习第13, 37, 61 课关键句型)

**Exercises 练习**

A  Study the use in the passage of all the verbs which express the future.

B  Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

I have just received a letter from my old school informing me that my former headmaster, Mr. Stuart Page, (retire) next week. Pupils of the school, old and new, (send) him a present to mark the occasion. All those who have contributed towards the gift (sign) their names in a large album which (send) to the headmaster’s home. We all (remember) Mr. Page for his patience and understanding and for the kindly encouragement he gave us when we went so unwillingly to school. A great many former pupils (attend) a farewell dinner in his honour next Thursday. It is a curious coincidence that the day before his retirement, Mr. Page (teach) for a total of forty years. After he (retire), he (devote) himself to gardening. For him, this (be) an entirely new hobby.

**Special difficulties 难点**

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

*Too* (太, 过分) and *Enough* (足够, 十分).

Study the following sentences:

One is never too old to learn. (1.12)

It is too difficult for me to understand.

It is easy enough for me to understand.

**Exercise 练习**

Join the sentences below in the way shown in these examples:

a  The wall is high. I cannot climb it. (too)
   - The wall is too high to climb.
   - The wall is too high for me to climb.

b  The wall is low. I can climb it. (enough)
   - The wall is low enough to climb.
   - The wall is low enough for me to climb.

1  This car is expensive. I cannot buy it. (too)
2  This car is cheap. I can buy it. (enough)
3  The tea is hot. I cannot drink it. (too)
4  This piece of music is difficult. I cannot play it. (too)
5  This piece is easy. I can play it. (enough)
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The pupils who will be signing their names in the album are those who _________.
   (a) are at the school now
   (b) used to go to the school
   (c) will attend the farewell dinner
   (d) have given money to buy the headmaster a present

2. The headmaster _________.
   (a) believes it's too late to take up gardening
   (b) thinks that only young people should take up gardening
   (c) has no intention of taking up gardening
   (d) doesn't believe it's too late to take up gardening

Structure 句型

3. He will be retiring next week. He ________ be retiring next year.
   (a) willin't (b) won't (c) shall not (d) shan't

4. We went so unwillingly to school. We were ________ unwilling pupils.
   (a) such (b) so (c) so much (d) such an

5. The farewell dinner will be ________ Thursday.
   (a) in (b) on (c) the (d) at

   (a) will he have been (b) he will have been (c) will have he been (d) will have been he

7. One is never too old to learn ________ are never too old to learn.
   (a) We (b) You (c) They (d) Everyone

Vocabulary 词汇

8. They informed me about it. That's the ________ I received.
   (a) inform (b) informs (c) informations (d) information

9. They will put their ________ in an album.
   (a) signs (b) signatures (c) signals (d) marks

10. He gave us encouragement. He was always ________.
    (a) courageous (b) helpful (c) helpless (d) thankful

11. We shall attend a farewell dinner to say ________ to him.
    (a) hullo (b) something (c) our good wishes (d) goodbye

12. It's entirely new to him. It's ________ new to him.
    (a) eventually (b) finally (c) completely (d) fully

Sentence structure 句子结构

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

They have contributed towards the gift. They will sign their names in a large album. It will be sent to the headmaster's home.

All those _____________________________.
Lesson 86 Out of control

First listen and then answer the question.

What was the danger?

As the man tried to swing the speedboat round, the steering wheel came away in his hands. He waved desperately to his companion, who had been water skiing for the last fifteen minutes. Both men had hardly had time to realize what was happening when they were thrown violently into the sea. The speedboat had struck a buoy, but it continued to move very quickly across the water. Both men had just begun to swim towards the shore, when they noticed with dismay that the speedboat was moving in a circle. It now came straight towards them at tremendous speed. In less than a minute, it roared past them only a few feet away. After it had passed, they swam on as quickly as they could because they knew that the boat would soon return. They had just had enough time to swim out of danger when the boat again completed a circle. On this occasion, however, it had slowed down considerably. The petrol had nearly all been used up. Before long, the noise dropped completely and the boat began to drift gently across the water.

New words and expressions

swing /swɪŋ/ (swung /swʊŋ/, swung) v. 转向
speedboat /'spɪdboʊt/ n. 快艇
desperately /'despərtli/ adv. 绝望地
companion /'kɒmpənɪn/ n. 同伙, 伙伴
water ski /ˈwɔːtər ski/ (由快艇牵引水橇) 滑水
buoy /ˈboʊi/ n. 浮标
dismay /'dɪsmei/ n. 沉痛
tremendous /trɪˈmendəs/ adj. 巨大的
petrol /ˈpɛtrəl/ n. 汽油
drift /drɪft/ v. 靠流, 漂流
gently /'dʒentli/ adv. 缓慢地, 轻轻地

Notes on the text

1. came away, 沉落, 离开
2. Both men had hardly had time to realize what was happening when they were thrown violently into the sea. 他们两个还没有来得及意识到究竟发生了什么事情, 就被猛地抛入海里。hardly when 表示“刚……就……”
3. on this occasion, 这一次
4. use up, 耗尽, 用光

参考译文

当那人试图让快艇转弯时, 方向盘脱落了。他绝望地向他的伙伴挥手，他的伙伴在过去的 15 分钟里一直在滑水。他俩两个还没有来得及意识到究竟发生了什么事情, 就被猛地抛入海里。快艇撞上了一个浮标, 但它仍在水面上快速行驶着。两个人刚开始向岸边游去, 就突然惊愕地发现快艇正在转着圈行驶, 它现在正以惊人
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words, describe what happened from the moment the men were thrown into the sea. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个词的篇幅描述一下从两个人被抛入水中所发生的事情，用以下要点和连词写两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The moment</td>
<td>1 Speedboat struck buoy.</td>
<td>Because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Both men — water.</td>
<td>and while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>3 It moved off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Men — shore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turning</td>
<td>5 Circle — towards them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>6 Just missed them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until</td>
<td>7 Swam — out of danger.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>8 Boat returned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soon ... and</td>
<td>9 Lost speed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Petrol used up — floated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

按以下思路写出两段文字，字数为 150 左右：

1. A speedboat was out of control — no one was in it — it was moving towards a small fishing boat — the fishermen tried to row away.

2. The speedboat came nearer — the fishermen dived into the sea — the speedboat ran out of petrol — stopped just before it reached the fishermen.

Letter writing 书信写作

Which of the following endings are correct?

以下哪几个结束语是正确的？

Yours sincerely, Your’s sincerely, yours sincerely, Yours Sincerely, Your’s, Yours, Yours Very Sincerely.

Key structures 关键句型

What had happened? What had been happening? 过去完成时与过去完成进行时

KS14, 38, 62 （复习第 14, 38, 62 课关键句型）
Unit 4 Lesson 86

Exercises 练习

A Underline the verbs in the passage which tell us what happened, what had happened and what had been happening.
划出课文中表示过去时、过去完成时和过去完成进行时的所有动词。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:
用正确的动词填空，完成练习后再对照课文，核对你的答案:

As the man tried to swing the speedboat round, the steering wheel came away in his hands. He ______ (wave) desperately to his companion, who ______ (water ski) for the last fifteen minutes. Both men hardly ______ (have) time to realize what was happening when they ______ (throw) violently into the sea. The speedboat ______ (strike) a buoy, but it ______ (continue) to move very quickly across the water. Both men just ______ (begin) to swim towards the shore, when they ______ (notice) with dismay that the speedboat was moving in a circle. It now ______ (come) towards them at tremendous speed. In less than a minute, it ______ (roar) past them only a few feet away. After it ______ (pass), they ______ (swim) on as quickly as they could because they ______ (know) that the boat would soon return. They just ______ (have) enough time to swim out of danger when the boat again ______ (complete) a circle. On this occasion, however, it ______ (slow) down considerably. The petrol nearly all ______ (use) up. Before long, the noise ______ (drop) completely and the boat ______ (begin) to drift gently across the water.

Special difficulties 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples:

1. Enough and Fairly.
   Your work is not good enough. (SD85)（对比第85课难点）
   I missed the train this morning. I didn’t get up early enough. 今天早上我没赶上火车, 我起得不够早。
   They had just had enough time to swim out of danger. (II.10-11)
   I didn’t buy enough sugar. 我没买足够的糖。
   There are enough flowers in that vase. 花瓶里的花够多的了。
   George is a fairly tall person but still not tall enough to get into the police force. 乔治的身材相当高, 但要加入警察部队还不够高。
   I knew he’s a fairly good player, but he doesn’t play well enough to get into the team. 我知道他是一个相当好的队员, 但他的球打得还不够好, 还不能参加球队。

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1. It’s _______ cold today, but not really cold _______ to light a fire.
2. This book was _______ interesting, but I didn’t enjoy it as much as I expected to.
3. This class has given me _______ trouble so far.
4. You haven’t put _______ flowers in that vase.
5. Is that suitcase large _______ to take all these clothes?
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. The men were thrown into the water _______.
   (a) when the steering wheel came away
   (b) when the boat struck the buoy
   (c) when the man tried to swing the speedboat round
   (d) because they had been water skiing
2. While they were in the water the men thought that _______.
   (a) the speedboat was moving in a circle
   (b) the speedboat was going out to sea
   (c) the speedboat was going to hit them
   (d) the speedboat was going to stop

Structure 句型
3. _______ did he wave to? His companion.
   (a) Who
   (b) Whose
   (c) Which
   (d) What
4. Both men realized what was happening. _______ could do anything about it.
   (a) They neither
   (b) Neither of them
   (c) Neither they
   (d) Either of them
5. They had hardly begun to swim towards the shore _______ they noticed the boat.
   (a) than
   (b) when
   (c) as
   (d) so
6. How fast did it go? _______ tremendous speed.
   (a) With
   (b) At
   (c) In
   (d) From
7. It had slowed down considerably. It had slowed down _______.
   (a) much
   (b) many
   (c) very
   (d) a lot

Vocabulary 词汇
8. The man tried to swing the boat round. He tried to _______.
    (a) circle it
    (b) twist it
    (c) make it turn
    (d) wind it
9. He waved desperately. He waved _______.
    (a) in despair
    (b) helplessly
    (c) desperate
    (d) with despair
10. It roared past them. It _______ them.
    (a) past
    (b) passed
    (c) pasted
    (d) passing
11. It came straight towards them. It came _______ towards them.
    (a) in direction
    (b) directly
    (c) in the way
    (d) on the way
12. The boat drifted across the water. It _______ across the water.
    (a) stopped
    (b) ran
    (c) floated slowly
    (d) wondered

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 9-10 行，核对你的答案。
It had passed. They swam on as quickly as they could. They knew that the boat would soon return.
Lesson 87  A perfect alibi

First listen and then answer the question.

What was wrong with the man’s story?

‘At the time the murder was committed, I was travelling on the 8 o’clock train to London,’ said the man.

‘Do you always catch such an early train?’ asked the inspector.

‘Of course I do,’ answered the man. ‘I must be at work at 10 o’clock. My employer will confirm that I was there on time.’

‘Would a later train get you to work on time?’ asked the inspector.

‘I suppose it would, but I never catch a later train.’

‘At what time did you arrive at the station?’

‘At ten to eight. I bought a paper and waited for the train.’

‘And you didn’t notice anything unusual?’

‘Of course not.’

‘I suggest,’ said the inspector, ‘that you are not telling the truth. I suggest that you did not catch the 8 o’clock train, but that you caught the 8.25 which would still get you to work on time. You see, on the morning of the murder, the 8 o’clock train did not run at all. It broke down at Ferngreen station and was taken off the line.’

New words and expressions

alibi (title) /'ælɪbɪ/ n. 不在犯罪现场
commit (1.1) /kəmɪt/ v. 犯（罪、错
inspector (1.3) /ɪn'spektə/ n. 探长
employer (1.5) /ɪm'plɔɪə/ n. 雇主
confirm (1.5) /kən'fɜːm/ v. 确认，证实
suggest (1.13) /sə'dʒest/ v. 提醒
truth (1.13) /truːθ/ n. 真相

Notes on the text

1. At the time the murder was committed, the murder was committed 可以看作是定语从句修饰 time。at the time 意为 at the moment when something happened.
2. on time 准时。
3. And you didn’t notice anything unusual? 难道你没有注意到有什么异常情况?
   这是由陈述句后加问号表示的问句。
4. the 8.25 是指 8 点 25 分的火车。

参考译文

“在凶杀发生的时候，我正坐在 8 点钟开往伦敦的火车上。”那人说。
“您总是赶这样早的火车吗?” 探长问。
“当然是的，”那人回答，“我必须在10点钟上班，我的雇主会证明我是按时到了那儿的。”
“晚一会儿的车也能送您按时上班吗?”
“我认为可以，但我从来不乘晚一会儿的车。”
“您几点钟到的火车站?”
“7点50分。我买了张报纸，等着来车。”
“您有没有注意到有什么异常情况发生吗?”
“当然没有。”
“我提醒您，”探长说，“您讲的不是实话。您乘的不是8点钟的火车，而是8点25分的，这次车同样能使您按时上班。您看，在凶杀发生的那天早晨，8点钟的那次车根本没有发。它在芬格林车站出了故障而被取消了。”

**Summary writing** 摘要写作

*In not more than 80 words* show how the inspector proved that the man’s alibi was false. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

**CONNECTIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POINTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Time of murder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Man claimed — travelling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 8 o'clock train, London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Arrived work on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Inspector asked — later train, work on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Man agreed it would.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Always travelled early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Inspector suggested: lying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 8 o'clock train — broke down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Man caught 8.25.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Composition** 作文

Continue the conversation begun in the passage. Write about 150 words using the ideas given below:

The man suddenly ‘remembered’ that he had caught the later train — didn’t he notice anything unusual? — not unusual for a train to be late — how did he spend the time? — waited on the platform for 25 minutes — read a newspaper — the inspector suggested that the man was lying — a neighbour saw him leave the house at 8.15, just after the murder — the man was arrested.

**Letter writing** 书信写作

*The Signature* How you sign your name depends on how well you know the person you are writing to. You may use your full name, your first name, or even a nickname. Your signature must be readable. It must come under the letter-ending.

签名：你如何签名取决于你和收信人的熟悉程度。你可以用全名，你的名字甚至绰号。你的签名必须清楚，必须落在信末尾的下面。
Unit 4 Lesson 87

Exercise 练习

Write suitable letter-endings and signatures to the following:

为以下几封信函信尾结束语并签名:

Your sister: your wife or husband: your employer: a close friend.

Key structures 关键句型

He said that ... He told me ... He asked ... 间接引语 (KS15, 39, 63) (复习第 15, 39, 63 课关键句型)

Exercises 练习

A Imagine that you are writing a newspaper report of the conversation that took place between the man and the inspector. Answer these questions on the passage. Where necessary, use the words given in parentheses:

设想一下你正在为报纸写一篇有关探长和嫌疑犯对话的报道。回答以下问题。必要时用括号内的短语:

Lines 1-2 What did the man say he was doing at the time the murder was committed?
Line 3 What did the inspector ask him?
Lines 4-5 Did the man say that he did or that he didn’t? At what time did he have to be at work? (because)
What would his employer confirm?
Lines 6-7 What did the inspector ask him then?
Line 8 What did the man suppose? Did he ever catch a later train? (but)
Line 9 What did the inspector ask?
Line 10 At what time did the man say he had arrived at the station? What did he do there? (He added that he ...
Lines 11-12 What did the inspector ask him? Did the man say that he had or that he hadn’t? (When the inspector asked him ... the man ...)
Line 13 What did the inspector suggest?
Lines 13-16 What did the inspector point out?

B Here is part of a report that appeared in a newspaper. Write the actual conversation that took place between the man and the inspector. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise. (SD26)

下面是登在报上有关那段对话的报道。写出探长和嫌疑犯实际的对话。完成练习后再核对你的答案。（参见第 26 课难点）

At the time the murder was committed, the man said that he was travelling on the 8 o’clock train to London. The inspector asked if he always caught such an early train. The man answered that he did. He had to be at work at 10 o’clock. His employer would confirm that he was there on time. Then the inspector asked him if a later train would get him to work on time. The man supposed that a later train would get him to work on time but he never caught a later train. The inspector asked him what time he arrived at the station. The man said that he had arrived there at ten to eight. He added that he bought a paper and waited for the train. When the inspector asked him if he had noticed anything unusual, the man said that he had not.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The man thought his alibi was perfect because _______.
   (a) he caught the 8 o’clock train
   (b) he was at the station at 7.50
   (c) he arrived at work on time
   (d) his employer knew he always caught the 8 o’clock train
2 The 8 o’clock train broke down that morning _______.
   (a) when the man was on it       (b) and it arrived late
   (c) and the man knew this very well
   (d) so the inspector knew the man was lying

Structure 句型
3 He was travelling to London. He works _______ London.
   (a) at  (b) to  (c) in  (d) on
4 He catches an early train. He _______ every day.
   (a) uses to  (b) used to  (c) is accustomed to
   (d) always does
5 The man wasn’t telling the truth. He was _______ a lie.
   (a) telling  (b) saying  (c) talking
   (d) speaking
6 He didn’t catch the train that leaves _______ 8 o’clock.
   (a) on  (b) —  (c) at
   (d) in
7 It broke down so the man _______ it.
   (a) can’t catch  (b) mightn’t catch
   (c) couldn’t have caught
   (d) mightn’t have caught

Vocabulary 词汇
8 ‘Of course I do,’ _______ the man.
   (a) replied  (b) responded  (c) returned
   (d) told
9 My employer will _______ that I was there on time.
   (a) assure  (b) be sure  (c) make sure
   (d) certify
10 He didn’t notice anything unusual. He didn’t notice anything _______.
    (a) out of the ordinary  (b) unused
    (c) unaccustomed
    (d) inquisitive
11 ‘And you didn’t notice anything unusual?’ _______ not.’
    (a) Certainly  (b) Surely
    (c) Doubtlessly
    (d) Truly
12 He didn’t catch the 8 o’clock train. He _______ it.
    (a) lost  (b) didn’t find
    (c) escaped
    (d) missed

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 13 行，核对你的答案。
In my opinion you are not telling the truth.
I suggest ____________________________.
First listen and then answer the question.

Why is the rescue taking so long?

Six men have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours. If they are not brought to the surface soon they may lose their lives. However, rescue operations are proving difficult. If explosives are used, vibrations will cause the roof of the mine to collapse. Rescue workers are therefore drilling a hole on the north side of the mine. They intend to bring the men up in a special capsule. If there had not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they would have completed the job in a few hours. As it is, they have been drilling for sixteen hours and they still have a long way to go. Meanwhile, a microphone, which was lowered into the mine two hours ago, has enabled the men to keep in touch with their closest relatives. Though they are running out of food and drink, the men are cheerful and confident that they will get out soon. They have been told that rescue operations are progressing smoothly. If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they would lose heart.

New words and expressions

trap (title) /træp/ v. 陷入, 使陷于困境
surface (1.2) /'s3:fis/ n. 地面, 表面
explosive (1.3) /ɪk'sploʊsɪv/ n. 炸药
vibration (1.4) /və'breɪʃən/ n. 震动
collapse (1.4) /'kalaps/ v. 坍塌
drill (1.5) /drɪl/ v. 钻孔
capsule (1.6) /'kæpsju:l/ n. 容器
layer (1.7) /'leər/ n. 层
beneath (1.7) /bɪ'nɪð/ prep. 在……之下
lower (1.9) /'laʊər/ v. 放下, 降低
progress (1.11) /prəʊ'gres/ v. 进展, 进行
smoothly (1.12) /smuːðli/ adv. 顺利地

Notes on the text

1. rescue operations, 营救工作。
2. If there had not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they would have completed the job in a few hours. 如果不是因为土壤下面有一层坚硬的岩石，他们的营救工作仅用几个小时就可以完成了。
3. As it is, 事实上，实际上。
4. they still have a long way to go, 他们离钻透还早着呢。
5. keep in touch with, 与……保持联系。
6. run out of, 用完, 用尽。
7. lose heart, 失望, 丧失信心。

参考译文

6个人被困在矿井里已有17个小时了。如果不把他们尽快救到地面上来，他们就有可能丧生。然而，事实证明营救工作非常困难。如果用炸药爆破，震动会引起矿顶塌落。因此，营救人员在矿井的北侧钻了一个洞。
Summary writing 摘要写作

Make a summary of the passage in not more than 80 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个词的篇幅写出故事的摘要，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNEXIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNEXIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>1 Six men — trapped — seventeen hours.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>2 May lose lives.</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Since</td>
<td>3 Rescue difficult.</td>
<td>Because of this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>4 Explosives — collapse.</td>
<td>yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two hours ago</td>
<td>5 Drilling — hard rock.</td>
<td>Now that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>6 Progress slow.</td>
<td>Tough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>7 Microphone lowered.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 In touch — relatives.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 Running short — food.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Good spirits.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Continue the above passage. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

根据以下思路继续讲这个故事，字数为 150 个词左右：

1. During the rescue operations there was a loud noise — collapse of mine — microphone silent — the men’s voices were heard an hour later — they were all right.

2. Drilling began again — the collapse had made things easier — the men were brought to the surface — the scene on their return.

Letter writing 书信写作

The Postscript If you wish to add something to your letter after you have finished it, you may do so under your signature. Whatever you write must be preceded by the letters ‘P.S.’ which stand for ‘Postscript’. Study this example:

又及：如果信写完后还想再作些补充，可以写在签名下面。在你所写的附言之前必须加上 P.S. 两个字母，这是“又及”的意思。继续以下的例子：

Best regards,
Tom

P.S. I’ll send you a copy of the book by separate post.

Exercise 练习

Write two letter-endings followed by postscripts.

写出两封信的结尾再加上附言。
Unit 4 Lesson 88

**Key structures** 关键句型

If (KS16, 40, 64) (复习第 16, 40, 64 课关键句型)

**Exercises** 练习

A How many sentences in the passage contain the word *if*? Study the form of the verbs in these sentences. 课文中有几个含有 *if* 的句子？注意句中的动词时态。

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise. 用正确的动词填空，完成练习后再对照课文核对你的答案。

1. If they *not bring* to the surface soon they may lose their lives.
2. If explosives are used, vibrations *cause* the roof of the mine to collapse.
3. If there had not been a hard layer of rock beneath the soil, they *complete* the job in a few hours.
4. If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, they *lose* heart.

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

1. If he had fitted safety belts to his car, he *not injure*.
2. The man would have been saved if a helicopter *be* available.
3. If you come home late, you *find* the key under the mat.
4. I would have found the house easily if he *give* me the correct address.
5. If smoking *forbid*, illnesses will be reduced.

**Special difficulties** 难点

The verb *run* has a different meaning in each of these sentences. Study them carefully: 在以下句子中动词 *run* 有不同的含义，细读以下例句:

They are running out of food. (1.10) (They have nearly used up all their supplies.)

A crowd of boys ran after the beggar. (They chased the beggar.)

That boy was nearly run over by a car. (The car nearly hit him.)

Don’t drive so fast. This car hasn’t been run in yet. (The car must be driven slowly so as not to damage the new engine.)

I ran into Helga while I was in Sweden. (I met her by accident.)

**Exercise** 练习

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1. I ran *an* old friend of mine in a restaurant yesterday.
2. While driving to work yesterday, I ran *petrol* and had to walk to a garage.
3. This car will have to be serviced as soon as it has been run *in*.
4. She’s been taken to hospital. She was run *over* by a car.
5. I ran *him*, but I could not catch him.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. They are drilling through the hard rock. This is the ______ way to rescue the men.
   (a) easiest  (b) quickest  (c) safest  (d) most dangerous

2. Rescue operations are proving difficult _______.
   (a) but it is certain the men will be saved
   (b) so it is not certain that the men will be saved
   (c) so it is certain the men will not be saved
   (d) so it is certain the men will die

Structure 句型
3. They have been trapped for seventeen hours. They tried to come up seventeen hours _______.
   (a) since  (b) ago  (c) for  (d) since then

4. _______ they are brought to the surface soon they may lose their lives.
   (a) Except  (b) Without  (c) Unless  (d) Whether

5. It’s proving difficult _______ the men.
   (a) for rescuing  (b) to rescuing  (c) to rescue  (d) in rescuing

6. Vibrations will cause the roof to collapse. They will _______ collapse.
   (a) make it  (b) make it to  (c) do it to  (d) do it

7. They would have completed the job in a few hours _______ the hard layer of rock.
   (a) except  (b) but for  (c) if not  (d) unless

Vocabulary 词汇
8. The roof might collapse. It might _______.
   (a) explode  (b) fall down  (c) fall over  (d) blow up

9. The microphone enabled them to keep in touch. It made it _______ for them to keep in touch.
   (a) able  (b) capable  (c) possible  (d) probable

10. They are running out of food. They _______.
    (a) have none  (b) have a lot  (c) haven’t much  (d) can’t eat it

11. The men are cheerful. They are in good _______.
    (a) temper  (b) mood  (c) spirits  (d) disposition

12. They may lose heart. They may _______ in despair.
    (a) give  (b) give up  (c) give off  (d) give over

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 12 行，核对你的答案。
They didn’t know how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock, otherwise they would lose heart.
If _______.

Unit 4 Lesson 88
Lesson 89  A slip of the tongue

First listen and then answer the question.

Who made the only funny joke that evening and why?

People will do anything to see a free show — even if it is a bad one. When the news got round that a comedy show would be presented at our local cinema by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company, we all rushed to see it. We had to queue for hours to get in and there must have been several hundred people present just before the show began. Unfortunately, the show was one of the dullest we have ever seen. Those who failed to get in need not have felt disappointed, as many of the artistes who should have appeared did not come. The only funny things we heard that evening came from the advertiser at the beginning of the programme. He was obviously very nervous and for some minutes stood awkwardly before the microphone. As soon as he opened his mouth, everyone burst out laughing. We all know what the poor man should have said, but what he actually said was: 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!'

New words and expressions

- slip (title) /slip/ n. 小错误
- comedy (1.2) /'komdi/ n. 喜剧
- present (1.2) /'prizent/ v. 出席, 到场的
- queue (1.4) /'kju:/ v. 排队
- dull (1.6) /dʌl/ adj. 枯燥, 无味
- artiste (1.8) /'a:ti:st/ n. 艺人
- advertiser (1.9) /'ədvaı'taiz/ n. 报幕员

Notes on the text

1. a slip of the tongue, 说错了话; 失言。
2. do anything to see a free show, 想方设法看不花钱的戏。
3. when the news got round that ..., 当……的消息一传开, 这是一个时间状语从句, get round 作“四处传遍”讲。
4. need not have felt disappointed, 本来不必感到失望。
5. who should have appeared 是定语从句, 修饰 artistes。should + 不定式的完成式表示本来应该做而实际未做的事。
6. ... what the poor man should have said, but what he actually said was ..., 这个可怜的人本应说什么, 但实际他所说的却是……。

参考译文

人们总想尽办法去看不花钱的演出——哪怕是拙劣的演出。当“皮龙”鸟食公司将在我们当地影院演出
Summary writing

Make a summary of the passage in not more than 80 words. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

POINTS
1. Local cinema — packed.
2. P. & U. Bird Seed Co.
3. Presenting free comedy show.
4. Many artistes should...
5. Failed to turn up.
6. Show very dull.
7. Funniest thing —
8. Advertiser introduced programme — saying:
9. ‘This... gentlemen.’

CONNECTIONS

because
As ... who
who
but ... who
Because of this
who at the beginning

Composition

Write a newspaper report of the event described in the passage. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

1. There was a long queue of people outside the cinema — many people failed to get in — they were the lucky ones.
2. A description of the stage — there was a large, ugly model of a yellow bird — free packets of bird seed for the audience — the advertiser’s mistake — how the audience reacted — the rest of the show: a disappointment.

Letter writing

Write three letter-endings followed by postscripts.

Key structures

Must, Have to, Need, Should (KS17, 41, 65) (复习第 17, 41, 65 课关键句型)。

Exercises

A. Note how the verbs have to, must, need and should have been used in the passage.
B Supply the correct form of *have to*, *must*, *need* and *should* in the following. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

Use *have to*, *must*, *need* and *should* blank, complete the exercise and then check your answers:

1. We ______ queue for hours to get in and there ______ (be) several hundred people present just before the show began. Unfortunately, the show was one of the dullest we have ever seen. Those who failed to get in ______ (not feel) disappointed as many of the artistes who ______ (appear) did not come.

2. As soon as he opened his mouth, everyone burst out laughing. We all know what the poor man ______ (say), but what he actually said was: 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company …'

C Supply *must not* or *need not* in the following sentences:

Use *must not* or *need not* blank:

1. You ______ open the door of the compartment until the train has stopped. It is very dangerous.

2. You ______ bother to post those letters for me. I’ll be going out myself soon.

D Supply the correct form of *have to* or *should* in the following sentences:

Use *have to* or *should* blank:

1. I’m sorry I couldn’t get here on time. I ______ (go) to the bank.

2. I ______ (go) to the dentist yesterday but I forgot all about it.

3. We ______ (begin) work at 9 o’clock but we never do.

Special difficulties 素点

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study these examples:

a. *Free* and *Single*.

People will do anything to see a *free* show. (1.1)

The people are *free* to choose who will govern them. 人民有自由选举领导他们的人。

Is she still *single*? I thought she was going to get married last April. 她还是独身吗? 我原以为她去年 4 月就已经结婚了。

b. *Queue* and *Row*.

We had to *queue* for hours to get in. (1.4)

There was a long *queue* outside the cinema. 电影院外面排着长长的队。

I enjoyed the performance because I had a very good seat in the *fifth* row. 我喜欢这场演出，因为我坐在第 5 排一个好位子上。

c. *Funny*.

The only *funny* things we heard that evening … (11.8-9)

There’s something *funny* about this house. (Something peculiar.) 这栋房子有点古怪的地方。

Exercises 练习

A Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选择正确的词:

1. I joined the (queue) (row) at the bus stop.

2. He’s still (free) (single) even though he’s over forty. I don’t think he’ll ever get married.
B Write two sentences bringing out the meanings of the word funny.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 There was a big demand for tickets because ________.
   (a) they didn’t cost any money
   (b) there were many famous artistes in the show
   (c) the show was presented by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company
   (d) the show was very funny
2 The audience ________.
   (a) enjoyed the advertiser’s opening remarks
   (b) enjoyed the show
   (c) enjoyed the advertisements
   (d) enjoyed the performance by the artistes

Structure 句型
3 People will do anything to see a free show—even if it is ________.
   (a) badly
   (b) bad one
   (c) a bad
   (d) bad
4 How long ________ queue?
   (a) did they have to
   (b) they had to
   (c) had they to
   (d) they did have to
5 There must have been several hundred people present. ________ ...
   (a) There had to be
   (b) There must be
   (c) It was necessary to be
   (d) I think there were
6 Many of the artistes who ________ did not come.
   (a) ought to appear
   (b) should appear
   (c) had to appear
   (d) ought to have appeared
7 He stood awkwardly ________ the microphone.
   (a) in front of
   (b) ahead of
   (c) on top of
   (d) instead of

Vocabulary 词汇
8 A comedy show is usually very ________.
   (a) serious
   (b) different
   (c) unusual
   (d) light
9 We had to queue. We had to wait our ________.
   (a) queue
   (b) turn
   (c) row
   (d) line
10 The show was dull. It was ________.
    (a) disinterested
    (b) uninterested
    (c) interesting
    (d) uninteresting
11 He was nervous. He felt ________.
    (a) angry
    (b) bad-tempered
    (c) annoyed
    (d) anxious
12 Everyone burst out laughing. There was a lot of ________.
    (a) laughs
    (b) laughter
    (c) laughings
    (d) laugh
Lesson 90  What's for supper?  晚餐吃什么？

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What kind of fish are they?

Fish and chips has always been a favourite dish in Britain, but as the oceans have been overfished, fish has become more and more expensive. So it comes as a surprise to learn that giant fish are terrifying the divers on North Sea oil rigs. Oil rigs have to be repaired frequently and divers, who often have to work in darkness a hundred feet under water, have been frightened out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them as they work. Now they have had special cages made to protect them from these monsters. The fish are not sharks or killer whales, but favourite eating varieties like cod and skate which grow to unnatural sizes, sometimes as much as twelve feet in length. Three factors have caused these fish to grow so large: the warm water round the hot oil pipes under the sea; the plentiful supply of food thrown overboard by the crews on the rigs; the total absence of fishing boats around the oil rigs. As a result, the fish just eat and eat and grow and grow in the lovely warm water. Who eats who?

New words and expressions

chip (1.1) /tʃɪp/ n. 油煎土豆片
overfish (1.2) /ˌəʊvəˈfɪʃ/ v. 过度捕捞
giant (1.3) /ˈdʒiːænt/ adj. 巨大的
terrify (1.4) /ˈterɪfai/ v. 吓，使恐怖
diver (1.4) /ˈdaɪvə/ n. 潜水员
oil rig (1.4) /ˈaɪl-rɪg/ 石油钻塔
wit (1.6) /wɪt/ n. (复数) 理智，头脑
cage (1.7) /keɪdʒ/ n. 笼

shark (1.8) /ʃɑːk/ n. 鲨鱼
whale (1.9) /weɪl/ n. 鲸
variety (1.9) /ˈvəːrətɪ/ n. 品种
cod (1.9) /kɒd/ n. 鳕
skate (1.9) /skeɪt/ n. 鳐
factor (1.10) /ˈfæktə/ n. 因素
crew (1.11) /kruː/ n. 全体工作人员

Notes on the text

1 fish and chips, 油煎鱼加炸土豆片。这是英国的一种家常菜，被看作是一盘菜，因此要用单数动词。
2 North Sea, 北海。
3 who often have to work in darkness a hundred feet under water, （潜水员）常常要在水面 100 英尺以下在黑暗工作（的人员）。这是一个非限定性定语从句，对主句中的名词 divers 进行补充说明，因此这个从句与主句用逗号隔开。
4 be frightened out of their wits, 被吓昏了，被吓得惊慌失措。
5 favourite eating varieties, 受人们喜爱的食用的品种。
6 as a result, 结果。
油煎鱼加炸土豆片一直是英国人喜爱的一道菜，但是随着海洋里的激流猛兽，鱼已经变得越来越昂贵。因此，听说北海石油钻井平台上的潜水员受到巨型鱼类的恐吓，确实让人吃惊。钻井平台需要经常修理，潜水员常常要在水面100英尺以下摸黑工作，他们曾在工作时被撞到他们身上的大鱼吓得惊慌失措。现在他们有了特制的笼子，用来保护他们免受大鱼的侵袭。这些鱼并不是鲨鱼或逆戟鲸，而是深受人们喜爱的食用鱼品种，如鲭鱼和鳕鱼，只不过它们长得出奇地大，有时长达12英尺。这些鱼能长得这么大是由3个因素造成的：海底热的输油管道附近的温暖的海水；钻井平台工作人员抛到海里充足的食物；钻井平台周围根本没有捕捞船只。结果是，这些鱼就在可爱的温暖的水流中吃呀吃，长呀长。究竟谁吃谁呢？

**Summary writing** 摘要写作

Make a summary of the passage **in not more than 80 words**. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过80个单词的篇幅写出一篇摘要，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>working</td>
<td>1 Divers — North Sea oil rigs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 terrified by giant fish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that bump</td>
<td>3 bump into them</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td>4 work in deep water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 Fish not sharks or whales</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On the contrary.</td>
<td>6 favourite eating varieties</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>7 grow to unnatural sizes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 Three factors:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The first</td>
<td>9 warmth from oil-pipes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The second</td>
<td>10 plentiful food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The third</td>
<td>11 absence of fishing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Composition** 作文

Imagine that you were visiting the oil rig when the divers reported what they had seen. Write two paragraphs of a letter to a friend, using the ideas given below:

假设你在参观钻井平台时，潜水员对你讲了他们所看到的情景，按以下思路给你的朋友写一封两个段落组成的信：

1. Strange story — diving team went down last week — work at a depth of sixty feet — work went well — one diver reported — nasty bump in the dark — sounded like a joke — the men on the rigs laughed — must be a monster.
2. Today — second team went down — came up immediately — cod eight feet in length — skate twelve feet across — refuse to go down again — managers had to promise to have special cages made.

**Key structures** 关键句型

**Have (KS18, 42, 66)** (复习第18, 42和66课关键词型)

**Exercises** 练习

A Study the various different uses of the verb have in the passage.

仔细阅读课文中have的不同用法。
Unit 4 Lesson 90

B Study these two sentences:

Oil rigs have to be repaired frequently.
They have had the oil rigs repaired continuously.

Write these sentences again choosing the appropriate have construction in place of the words in italics.

1 Special cages have been made to protect the divers from these monsters.
2 The oil companies make arrangements for the rigs to be repaired frequently.
3 The divers must often work in total darkness.
4 He has published a book.
5 We need to protect fish stocks.
6 We have not sent the letter to his new address.
7 'I will send the package to you,' she promised.
8 Must you go so soon?
9 Are you going to clean this suit?
10 When will you fix this loose handle?
11 I must take this car in for new brakes to be fitted.
12 How long is it since you needed to see a doctor?
13 The doctor told me I must get more exercise.

Special difficulties

Two nouns joined by 'and' + singular or plural verb 用 and 连接的两个名词以及后面的动词单数或复数形式

有些用 and 相连的名词常在一起连用。当我们把它们看成一个整体时，谓语动词用单数形式；如果我们把它们看成分开的东西，动词就用复数形式。

Study these sentences:

Jane and Keith have always been good friends of ours. 简和凯思一直是我们的好朋友。
Fish and chips has always been a favourite dish in Britain.

Exercise

Choose the correct verb in the following sentences:

1 Bread and butter (is) (are) fattening.
2 There (is) (are) a knife and fork missing.
3 There (is) (are) a light bulb and a screwdriver in the drawer.
4 (Is) (Are) there bacon and eggs for breakfast?
5 A chequebook and a purse (has) (have) been taken.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1. It is a surprise to hear the divers on North Sea oil rigs have been frightened by giant fish because _______.
   (a) fish and chips has always been a favourite dish for the English
   (b) fish has become rare
   (c) it is not common for fish to grow very large
   (d) divers have been friendly with fish around the oil rigs
2. Divers are terrified because _______.
   (a) they have to work in the dark
   (b) they have to work a hundred feet under water
   (c) the fish are huge
   (d) there are no fishing boats around the oil rigs

Structure 旬型
3. These eating varieties are sometimes twelve feet _______.
   (a) length
   (b) depth
   (c) long
   (d) deep
4. There is a total absence of fishing boats around the oil rigs. There are _______ fishing boats.
   (a) few
   (b) a few
   (c) no
   (d) not
5. Oil rigs have to be repaired frequently. They _______ repaired often.
   (a) ought to be
   (b) need to
   (c) have had
   (d) require
6. Giant fish are, in fact, eating varieties _______ cod and skate.
   (a) as
   (b) like
   (c) similar
   (d) resemble
7. These monsters are sometimes _______ twelve feet.
   (a) so much as
   (b) longer
   (c) as long as
   (d) bigger

Vocabulary 词汇
8. Divers _______ those giant fish while working under water.
   (a) come over
   (b) are hit by
   (c) bump off
   (d) are terrifying
9. The report comes as a surprise. It is _______.
   (a) surprising
   (b) surprised
   (c) delightful
   (d) shocked
10. Those fish grow to unnatural sizes. They are _______.
    (a) expensive
    (b) overfished
    (c) lovely
    (d) huge
11. Divers are terrified. They are _______.
    (a) terrifying
    (b) at their wits’ end
    (c) frightening
    (d) frightened out of their wits
12. Special cages are made to _______.
    (a) catch the fish
    (b) attack sharks and killer whales
    (c) terrify divers
    (d) keep the fish away

Sentence structure 句子结构
Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.
连接以下句子，然后对照课文第 5-7 行，核对你的答案。
Divers often have to work in darkness a hundred feet under water. They have been frightened out of their wits by giant fish. Giant fish bump into divers as they work under water.
First listen and then answer the question.

Where was the station's Commanding Officer?

A pilot noticed a balloon which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby. He informed the station at once, but no one there was able to explain the mystery. The officer in the control tower was very angry when he heard the news, because balloons can be a great danger to aircraft. He said that someone might be spying on the station and the pilot was ordered to keep track of the strange object. The pilot managed to circle the balloon for some time. He could make out three men in a basket under it and one of them was holding a pair of binoculars. When the balloon was over the station, the pilot saw one of the men taking photographs. Soon afterwards, the balloon began to descend and it landed near an airfield. The police were called in, but they could not arrest anyone, for the basket contained two Members of Parliament and the Commanding Officer of the station! As the Commanding Officer explained later, one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing!

New words and expressions

balloon (1.1) /bo'lu:n/ n. 气球
royal (1.1) /'roiol/ adj. 皇家
spy (1.6) /spai/ v. 侦察

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby, 好像正朝着附近的一个皇家空军机场的方向移动。这时定语从句 seem 后接不定式的进行式，是“似乎正在进行某事”的意思。make for, 走向, 飞向。
2. might be spying on ..., might + 不定式的进行时表示对正在进行的动作的推测。
3. keep track of, 是“跟踪”的意思。
4. make out, 看出, 辨认出。

参考译文

一个飞行员发现了一只气球，它像是正飞往附近的一个皇家空军基地。他马上把情况报告了该基地，但那里的人没有一个能解释这是怎么回事。控制塔上的官员得知这一消息后，非常气愤，因为气球有可能给飞机造成极大的危险。他说可能有人正对基地行侦察，因此命令那个飞行员跟踪那个奇怪的飞行物。飞行员没办法绕着气球飞了一阵。他看清气球下面有3个男人在一只筐里，其中一个拿着望远镜。当气球飞临基地上空时，飞行员看见有一个人在拍照。不久，气球开始降落，在一个停机坪附近着了陆。警察被召来了，但他们却不能逮捕任何人，因为筐里是两名国会议员和一名基地的指挥官！正如指挥官后来解释的那样，基地的这半边不知道那半边正在干什么！
Summary writing 摘要写作

_In not more than 85 words, explain what happened from the time the pilot was ordered to keep track of the balloon. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below._

用不超过85个单词的篇幅，描述一下从飞行员受命监视这个气球开始所发生的一切，用以下词组写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>While circling</td>
<td>Pilot circled balloon.</td>
<td>under which there was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one of whom</td>
<td>Saw three men — basket.</td>
<td>... containing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>A pair of binoculars.</td>
<td>one of whom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then</td>
<td>Flew station.</td>
<td>Before landing on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>Took photographs.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>Landed — airfield.</td>
<td>As two of the men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afterwards</td>
<td>Police — arrest.</td>
<td>were ... and the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two Members of Parliament and</td>
<td>other was ... the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commanding Officer.</td>
<td>police ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>One half — the other half.</td>
<td>The mystery was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>explained when</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

_Imagine that the police did not believe the three men and arrested them. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:_

假设警察不相信这3个人，并逮捕了他们，按以下思路写出两段文字，字数为150左右:

1. The men struggled — they explained who they were — they were not believed — taken to the police station.
2. The police questioned the men — they refused to answer — the Commanding Officer telephoned the station — a senior officer arrived — he identified the C.O. — the police apologized.

Letter writing 书信写作

_Write opening sentences which would be suitable for letters to the following:_

按以下要求写出给下列4人的信的首句:

1. A friend who has not written to you for a long time.
2. A friend who has been expecting to hear from you for a long time.
3. An aunt who entertained you to dinner and a visit to the theatre.
4. A friend who has successfully passed a difficult examination.

Key structures 关键句型

_Can, Be able to, Manage to (KS19, 43, 67) (复习第19, 43, 67课关键句型)_

Exercises 练习

_A Underline the verbs can, able to and manage to in the passage. Note how they have been used._

划出课文中的_can, able to, manage to_，并注意其用法。
Unit 4 Lesson 91

B Supply the correct forms of can, able to and manage to in this paragraph. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

He informed the station at once, but no one there could explain the mystery. The officer in the control tower was very angry when he heard the news, because balloons could be a great danger to aircraft. He said that someone might be spying on the station and the pilot was ordered to keep track of the strange object. The pilot couldn’t circle the balloon for some time. He couldn’t make out three men in a basket under it and one of them was holding a pair of binoculars.

C Supply the correct form of can or be able to in the following:

1 Could you show me the way to the station please?
2 I gave him a few lessons and he could soon swim.
3 They could jump into the sea before the boat sank.
4 You could not leave this room until you get permission.

Special difficulties

The verb make has a different meaning in each of the following sentences. Study them carefully.

A balloon seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station. (11.1-2) (It seemed to be travelling towards …)

He could make out three men in a basket. (11.8-9) (He could see.)

I could not make out what he said. (I could not understand.)

Please make out a fresh copy. (Write out another one.)

He made up a story about two men and a horse. (He invented.)

She spends hours making up in front of the mirror. (She uses cosmetics.)

I must make up for the time I lost this morning. (I must compensate for …)

Exercise

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1 I lost my lecture notes and had to make ________ a new set.
2 I can’t make ________ what you’ve written.
3 When it got dark we made ________ home.
4 My daughter often makes ________ stories of her own.
5 How can you make ________ all those lessons you missed?

Multiple choice questions

Comprehension

1 The officer in the control tower was angry because ________.
   (a) he thought the men in the balloon were spies
   (b) one of the men in the balloon was taking photographs
   (c) the balloon was over the Royal Air Force Station
   (d) he was worried about aircraft safety
2 The officer in the control tower wouldn’t have been angry _________.
   (a) if he had seen the balloon himself
   (b) if he had known his Commanding Officer had arranged the trip
   (c) if the balloon had gone away
   (d) if the balloon had landed on an airfield

Structure 句型
3 A pilot noticed a balloon ________ for a Royal Air Force Station.
   (a) make (b) to make (c) making (d) in making
4 He informed the station ________ the balloon.
   (a) for (b) about (c) of (d) from
5 He was angry when he heard the news. He was angry ________ the news.
   (a) with hearing (b) in hearing (c) on hearing (d) for hearing
6 He heard the news. The news ________ bad.
   (a) were (b) are (c) had (d) was
7 The balloon contained two MPs. ________ two MPs in it.
   (a) They were (b) There were (c) They had (d) There had

Vocabulary 词汇
8 The Royal Air Force Station was nearby. It was ________ them.
   (a) quite far (b) quite close to (c) beside (d) rather far from
9 He was ordered to keep track of it. He was ordered to ________ it.
   (a) record (b) control (c) follow (d) check
10 He could make out three men. That’s how many he could ________ .
    (a) find (b) see (c) follow (d) watch
11 Soon afterwards, the balloon began to descend. It began to come ________ .
    (a) over (b) off (c) down (d) away
12 The balloon landed near an airfield. It ________ .
    (a) came along (b) came down (c) came over (d) came off

Sentence structure 句子结构
Make two sentences from the following, then check your answer against the text.
把以下句子改写成两句话，然后对照课文第 1-3 行，核对你的答案。
The pilot who noticed a balloon which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby informed the station at once, but no one there was able to explain the mystery.
A pilot ________ .
First listen and then answer the question.

Why did the policeman ask the writer to come to the police station?

It must have been about two in the morning when I returned home. I tried to wake up my wife by ringing the doorbell, but she was fast asleep, so I got a ladder from the shed in the garden, put it against the wall, and began climbing towards the bedroom window. I was almost there when a sarcastic voice below said, 'I don't think the windows need cleaning at this time of the night.' I looked down and nearly fell off the ladder when I saw a policeman. I immediately regretted answering in the way I did, but I said, 'I enjoy cleaning windows at night.'

'So do I,' answered the policeman in the same tone. 'Excuse my interrupting you. I hate to interrupt a man when he's busy working, but would you mind coming with me to the station?'

'Well, I'd prefer to stay here,' I said. 'You see, I've forgotten my key.'

'Your what?' he called.

'My key,' I shouted.

Fortunately, the shouting woke up my wife who opened the window just as the policeman had started to climb towards me.

New words and expressions

- fast (1.2) /fæst/ adv. 快
- sarcastic (1.5) /sɑːˈstɪk/ adj. 讽刺的，讥笑的
- ladder (1.3) /'lædər/ n. 梯子
- tone (1.10) /toʊn/ n. 语气，腔调
- shed (1.3) /ʃed/ n. 舍子

Notes on the text

1. I don’t think, “I think”后接表示否定意思的宾语从句时，通常在主句中使用否定形式，但译成汉语时否定意义仍在宾语从句中。
2. I immediately regretted answering in the way I did, 我立刻后悔不该那样回答。在 regret 后面可接动名词，也可接动词不定式，但表示的意思不一样。接动名词是对已发生的事情表示后悔，而接动词不定式则是对未来要发生的事表示抱歉。
3. So do I, 我也是的。这是接前面一句话“I enjoy cleaning windows at night.” 当前面一句话的谓语也适用于后一句时，可用 so (肯定) 或 neither (否定) 开头，然后接倒装语序。

参考译文

我回到家时，肯定是凌晨两点左右了。我按响了门铃，试图唤醒我的妻子，但她睡得很熟。于是，我从花园的小棚里搬来一个梯子，把它靠在墙边，开始向卧室的窗口爬去。快要爬到窗口时，下面一个人用讽刺的口
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words describe what happened from the moment the writer returned home. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过80个单词的篇幅描述一下作者回家后发生的事情，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>1. The writer returned home — 2.0 a.m.</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Rang doorbell.</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Having</td>
<td>3. Failed to wake wife.</td>
<td>After having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Put ladder — wall.</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>Answering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>5. Climbed — bedroom window.</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suddenly</td>
<td>6. Policeman called out.</td>
<td>at the moment when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bat</td>
<td>7. Answered rudely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Told him — key.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just as</td>
<td>10. Opened window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. Policeman climbing ladder after him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Continue the above passage. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

继续这个故事，用150词写出两段文字：

1. At first my wife did not recognize me — thought I was a thief — saw the policeman — called for help.
2. The policeman pulled me down the ladder — my wife realized her mistake — she explained who I was — she apologized to the policeman — the policeman apologized to me.

Letter writing 书信写作

Address an envelope to a married woman who lives abroad.

你给一位居住在国外的已婚妇女写信，写出你的信封。

Key structures 关键句型

I don’t think the windows need cleaning. (KS20, 44, 68) (复习第20, 44, 68课关键句型)
Unit 4  Lesson 92

Exercises 练习

A Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

I tried to wake up my wife by _________ (ring) the doorbell, but she was fast asleep, so I got a ladder from the shed in the garden, put it against the wall, and began _________ (climb) towards the bedroom window. I was almost there when a sarcastic voice below said, ‘I don’t think the windows need _________ (clean) at this time of the night.’ I looked down and nearly fell off the ladder when I saw a policeman. I immediately regretted _________ (answer) in the way I did, but I said, ‘I enjoy _________ (clean) windows at night.’

‘So do I,’ answered the policeman in the same tone. ‘Excuse my _________ (interrupt) you. I hate _________ (interrupt) a man when he’s busy _________ (work), but would you mind _________ (come) with me to the station?’

‘Well, I’d prefer _________ (stay) here,’ I said. ‘You see, I’ve forgotten my key.’

‘Your what?’ he called.

‘My key,’ I shouted.

Fortunately, the _________ (shout) woke up my wife who opened the window just as the policeman had started _________ (climb) towards me.

B Complete the following sentences:

1 I am accustomed to _________
2 Fancy _________!

Special difficulties 难点

‘I enjoy cleaning windows at night.’
‘So do I,’ answered the policeman. (II.8-10)

Study these examples:

He reads a lot and _________ do I. 他读得很多, 我也是这样。
He doesn’t read much and _________ do I. 他很少读, 我也是这样。
He can swim and _________ I can. 他会游泳, 我也会。
He can’t swim and _________ I can’t. 他不会游泳, 我也不会。

Exercise 练习

Join each of these pairs of sentences using _________ or _________.

1 He likes classical music. I like classical music. 6 They ran quickly. We ran quickly.
2 He has had breakfast. I have had breakfast. 7 She won’t buy a new dress. I won’t buy a new dress.
3 He doesn’t like classical music. I don’t like classical music. 8 You are late. I am late.
4 She will buy a new dress. I will buy a new dress. 9 They didn’t run quickly. We didn’t run quickly.
5 He hasn’t had breakfast. I haven’t had breakfast. 10 He could speak French. I could speak French.
11 He couldn’t speak French. I couldn’t speak French.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The policeman _______.
   (a) believed the writer was going to clean the windows
   (b) suspected that the writer was a thief
   (c) arrested the writer
   (d) interrupted the writer when he was busy working

2 None of this would have happened if the writer _______.
   (a) hadn’t been rude
   (b) hadn’t fallen off the ladder
   (c) had remembered his key
   (d) hadn’t shouted at the policeman

Structure 句型

3 I don’t think the windows need cleaning. They don’t need _______.
   (a) to clean     (b) to be clean     (c) to be cleaning     (d) to be cleaned

4 I regretted answering like that. I was sorry _______.
   (a) to do     (b) in doing     (c) to have done     (d) to be doing

5 Excuse my interrupting you. Excuse _______.
   (a) me to interrupt     (b) me for interrupting     (c) me for interrupt     (d) me in interrupting

6 Would you mind coming with me? I’d like _______.
   (a) you to come     (b) to come     (c) coming     (d) you coming

7 I’d prefer to stay here. That’s what I’d _______.
   (a) do     (b) rather do     (c) have done     (d) do best

Vocabulary 词汇

8 She was fast asleep. She was _______ asleep.
   (a) deep     (b) sound     (c) quick     (d) soon

9 I got a ladder from the shed. I _______.
   (a) fetched     (b) took     (c) brought     (d) carried

10 He spoke in a sarcastic voice. He spoke in a _______ voice.
   (a) funny     (b) laughing     (c) despicable     (d) mocking

11 I nearly fell off the ladder. I nearly _______.
   (a) fell in     (b) fell over     (c) fell down     (d) fell away

12 Fortunately, the shouting woke my wife. _______, it woke her up.
   (a) Luckily     (b) By chance     (c) By accident     (d) On purpose

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 1 行，核对你的答案。
I think it was about two in the morning when I returned home.
It must ____________________________.
Lesson 93  A noble gift 祟高的礼物

First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Where was the Statue of Liberty made?

One of the most famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty, was presented to the United States of America in the nineteenth century by the people of France. The great statue, which was designed by the sculptor Auguste Bartholdi, took ten years to complete. The actual figure was made of copper supported by a metal framework which had been especially constructed by Eiffel. Before it could be transported to the United States, a site had to be found for it and a pedestal had to be built. The site chosen was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour. By 1884, a statue which was 151 feet tall had been erected in Paris. The following year, it was taken to pieces and sent to America. By the end of October 1886, the statue had been put together again and it was officially presented to the American people by Bartholdi. Ever since then, the great monument has been a symbol of liberty for the millions of people who have passed through New York Harbour to make their homes in America.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

noble (title) /'noubəl/ adj. 尚的，壮丽的
monument (1.1) /ˈmɔnəmənt/ n. 纪念碑
statue (1.1) /ˈsteɪtjuː/ n. 雕像
liberty (1.2) /ˈlɪbəti/ n. 自由
present (1.2) /ˈprezənt/ v. 赠送
sculptor (1.4) /ˈskʌltər/ n. 雕刻家
actual (1.5) /ˈæktʃuəl/ adj. 实际的，真实的
copper (1.5) /ˈkɒpər/ n. 铜
support (1.5) /ˈsəːpɔːt/ v. 支持，支撑
framework (1.6) /ˈfreɪmərkɔːt/ n. 构架，框架
transport (1.7) /træŋˈspɔːt/ v. 运送
site (1.7) /saɪt/ n. 场地
pedestal (1.8) /ˈpedɪstɔːl/ n. 底座

Notes on the text 课文注释

1. the site chosen = the site which was chosen，这里用过去分词作定语，与定语从句的作用相同。
2. take ... to pieces，把……拆卸开。
3. put ... together，把……装配起来。
4. make their homes in America，在美国安家落户。

参考译文

世界上最著名的纪念碑之一的自由女神雕像是在 19 世纪时由法国人民赠送的。这座由雕刻家奥古斯特·巴索尔设计的巨大雕像是用 10 年时间雕刻成的。这座雕像的主体是用铜制成的，由艾菲尔特制的金属框架支撑着。在雕像被运往美国之前，必须为它选好一块场地，同时必须建造一个基座。场地选在了纽约港入口处的一个岛上。到 1884 年，一座高度达 151 英尺的雕像在巴黎竖立起来了。第二年，它被拆成若干小块，运到美国。到 1886 年 10 月底，这座雕像被重新组装起来，由巴索尔正式赠送给了美国人民。从那时起，这座
Summary writing

In not more than 80 words describe how the Statue of Liberty came to be built in New York Harbour. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词的篇幅，描述一下自由女神像是如何建在纽约港的，用下面的要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

Connections

| which | 1 Statue — presented U.S.A. |
|   | 2 French people — 19th century. |
| and | 3 Designed — Bartholdi. |
|   | 4 Built on metal frame — Eiffel. |
| where | 5 Site chosen — island — New York Harbour. |
| and | 6 Pedestal built. |
|   | 7 The statue erected Paris 1884. |
|   | 8 Re-erected two years later — America. |
|   | 9 October 1886 — presented. |

Composition

Imagine you are entering New York Harbour by ship. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below;

假设你正乘船进入纽约港，按下面的思路写出两段文字，字数为 150 词左右；


Letter writing

Write five sentences which could be used to begin letters to friends. 写出 5 封给朋友的信的引言。

Key structures

The Statue of Liberty was presented to the United States of America. (KS21, 45, 69)

(复习第21, 45, 69 课关键句型)

Exercises

A Underline the verbs in the passage and study their form.

划出课文中所有动词，注意它们的形式。
B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise.

One of the most famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty, ________ (present) to the United States of America in the nineteenth century by the people of France. The great statue, which ________ (design) by the sculptor Auguste Bartholdi, took ten years to complete. The actual figure ________ (make) of copper ________ (support) by a metal framework which ________ especially ________ (construct) by Eiffel. Before it ________ (could/transport) to the United States, a site had ________ (to find) for it and a pedestal had ________ (to build). The site ________ (choose) was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour. By 1884, a statue which was 151 feet tall ________ (erect) in Paris. The following year, it ________ (take) to pieces and ________ (send) to America. By the end of October 1886, the statue ________ (put) together again and it ________ officially ________ (present) to the American people by Bartholdi.

Special difficulties 难点

Stress 重音

Read these two sentences aloud:

大山朗读以下句子:

The Statue of Liberty was a present from the French people. 自由女神像是来自法国人民的一件礼物。

It was presented to the United States of America. 它被送给了美利坚合众国。

In the first sentence, present is a noun and the accent falls on the first syllable: /'prez^nt/

In the second sentence, present is a verb and the accent falls on the second syllable: /pri'zent/

Here are some common words which are stressed in the same way:

accent, conduct, contest, contrast, export, import, increase, insult, produce, protest, record, and transport.

Exercise 练习

Read these sentences aloud. Mark in the correct stress of the words in italics:

朗读以下句子，划出斜体字的重音:

1 This year we have exported more than we have imported.
2 Our records show that exports have gone up.
3 Everybody protested against the increase in income tax.
4 He was insulted when I criticized his accent.
5 Please conduct yourselves properly when you are in the museum.
6 He entered for the contest and broke a record.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 The Statue of Liberty was first put up ________ .
   (a) in 1886
   (b) at the entrance of New York Harbour
   (c) in Paris
   (d) on a pedestal at the entrance of New York Harbour
2. The Statue of Liberty was presented to the American people _________.
   (a) by Eiffel who was the sculptor
   (b) by Bartholdi who made the metal framework
   (c) by the French Premier
   (d) by the sculptor Bartholdi

**Structure 句型**

3. Who was the statue presented ________? The people of France.
   (a) from (b) by (c) to (d) at

4. It took him ten years to complete it. That’s how long ________ to do it.
   (a) he took (b) him took (c) took him (d) he was taken

5. It was made ________ copper.
   (a) by (b) from (c) of (d) in

6. It was Eiffel ________ constructed the metal framework.
   (a) whom (b) which (c) who (d) whose

7. A site had to be found for it. It was necessary ________ for it.
   (a) a site to be found (b) for to be found a site
   (c) for a site to be found (d) to be found a site

**Vocabulary 词汇**

8. Copper is a kind of _________.
   (a) stone (b) marble (c) wood (d) metal

9. It was especially constructed by Eiffel. It was constructed _________.
   (a) in particular (b) particularly (c) for a special purpose (d) on purpose

10. A site had to be found for it. ________ had to be found.
    (a) A land (b) A plot of land (c) A property (d) An estate

11. It was erected in 1884. That’s when it was _________.
    (a) put off (b) put over (c) put in (d) put up

12. It’s a symbol of liberty. It ________ liberty.
    (a) replaces (b) stands for (c) is a representative of (d) is an agent for

**Sentence structure 句子结构**

Join these sentences, then check your answer against the text.

The Statue of Liberty is one of the most famous monuments in the world. It was presented to the United States of America in the nineteenth century by the people of France.

One ________________________________.
First listen and then answer the question.

What kind of race do the children compete in?

Experiments have proved that children can be instructed in swimming at a very early age. At a special swimming pool in Los Angeles, children become expert at holding their breath under water even before they can walk. Babies of two months old do not appear to be reluctant to enter the water. It is not long before they are so accustomed to swimming that they can pick up weights from the floor of the pool. A game that is very popular with these young swimmers is the underwater tricycle race. Tricycles are lined up on the floor of the pool seven feet under water. The children compete against each other to reach the other end of the pool. Many pedal their tricycles, but most of them prefer to push or drag them. Some children can cover the whole length of the pool without coming up for breath even once. Whether they will ever become future Olympic champions, only time will tell. Meanwhile, they should encourage those among us who cannot swim five yards before they are gasping for air.

New words and expressions

- instruct (1.1) /ɪnˈstrʌkt/ v. 指导, 传授
- Los Angeles (11.2-3) /ˈlaʊs əndgələs/ 洛杉矶
- reluctant (1.5) /rɪˈlæktənt/ adj. 勉强的, 不愿意的
- weight (1.6) /weɪt/ n. 重物
- underwater (1.8) /ˌʌndəˈwɔːtər adj. 水下的
- tricycle (1.8) /ˈtraɪsɪkl/ n. 三轮车
- compete (1.9) /kəmˈpiːt/ v. 比赛, 对抗
- yard (1.13) /jaːrd/ n. 码
- gasp (1.13) /gæsp/ v. 喘气

Notes on the text

1. hold their breath, 屏住呼吸。
2. be popular with ..., 深受……的欢迎, 为……所喜爱。
3. compete against, 与……竞争, 与……抗衡。
4. come up for breath, 升上水面换气。
5. Whether they will ever become future Olympic champions, only time will tell. 他们将来是否能成为奥林匹克的冠军, 这只能由时间来作出回答。以 whether 引导的从句是 tell 的宾语, 把宾语放在句首是为了强调。

参考译文

实验证明, 儿童在很小的时候就可以开始学习游泳。在洛杉矶的一个特设的游泳池里，孩子们甚至在还没有学会走路时就已经能熟练地在水下屏住呼吸了。两个月的婴儿并未显得不愿意入水。他们很快便适应了游泳, 形成能捡起池底的物品。这些幼小的游泳运动员非常喜爱的一种游戏是水下三轮车比赛。三轮车并放在英尺深的游泳池底部。孩子们比赛看谁先到达游泳池的另一端。很多孩子用脚蹬车, 但多数孩子更愿意推或
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words, describe what goes on at the children’s swimming pool in Los Angeles. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 个单词的篇幅，描述一下在洛杉矶的儿童游泳池正在进行的试验，用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 Swimming pool — Los Angeles.</td>
<td>who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Children taught — hold breath — walk.</td>
<td>often begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and, in time</td>
<td>3 Begin learning: two months old.</td>
<td>Though</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Weights — bottom of pool.</td>
<td>This</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 Game they enjoy — race.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>6 Takes place seven feet under water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some ... others</td>
<td>7 Pedal — push — pull.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>8 A few get across — without coming up for air.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Imagine witnessing the sort of underwater tricycle race described in the passage. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

假设你亲眼看见了课文中所讲的水下三轮车比赛，按以下思路写两段文字，字数为 150 左右:

1. The children dived into the water — found their tricycles — started off.
2. A child was pulling his tricycle — dropped it — hindered two others — got it out of the way — another child was pedalling hard — won the race — rose to surface dragging up his tricycle.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write suitable conclusions which could be used in letters to:

为给以下人写的信写出恰当的结束语:

1. A friend who has got a new job.
2. A friend you will be meeting soon.
3. A friend who has been ill.

Key Structures 关键句型

Review KS22, 46, 70 复习第 22, 46, 70 课关键句型

Exercise 练习

Study these examples:

细读以下例子:
Unit 4 Lesson 94

Children can be instructed in swimming ... (11.1-2)
Children become expert at holding their breath ... (11.3-4)
They do not appear to be reluctant to enter the water. (11.4-5)
They are so accustomed to swimming ... (11.5-6)
The children compete against each other ... (11.9-10)

Supply the missing words in the following sentences:

1. Many people do not approve ________ blood sports.
2. He was found guilty ________ murder and condemned ________ death.
3. Has it ever occurred ________ you that those twins are quite different ________ each other in many ways?
4. I consulted my lawyer ________ the matter and I shall act ________ his advice.
5. It is impossible to prevent them ________ quarrelling ________ each other.
6. He is responding ________ treatment and will soon be cured ________ his illness.
7. Even though he is thirty-five, he lives ________ his mother and is completely dependent ________ her.
8. I tried to reason ________ him, but he was very rude ________ me.
9. I am grateful ________ you for being so patient ________ him.
10. He might be good ________ his job, but you can’t rely ________ him.
11. I am thinking ________ looking ________ a new job.
12. If you interfere ________ other people’s affairs, you will regret it.
13. Do you believe ________ all that nonsense?
14. It should be obvious ________ you that if you persist ________ bothering him, he will get angry ________ you.
15. You demand too much ________ him; he is not really equal ________ the task.
16. Don’t be so sure ________ yourself!
17. He has provided ________ every emergency.
18. I was afraid ________ mentioning it ________ him.
19. Don’t blame him ________ this; I am responsible ________ what has happened.
20. He is so keen ________ learning, you should encourage him ________ his efforts.
22. I appealed ________ him for help.
23. I am sorry ________ having asked him. I was shocked ________ his refusal.
24. Are you interested ________ opera?
25. Are you aware ________ the difficulties that lie ahead ________ you?
26. He’s entitled ________ a pension, but he won’t dream ________ retiring yet.
27. Who is going to pay ________ the damage?
28. This car is inferior ________ the one I bought last year.
29. I’m afraid I can’t comment ________ your work just yet.
30. She may pride herself ________ her abilities, but she’s not capable ________ bringing up children.
31. We are accustomed ________ bad weather.
32. How can you agree ________ such an idea when you are ignorant ________ the basic facts?
33. He confessed ________ me that he had just been converted ________ some strange religion.
34. She wanted to borrow the record ________ me but she was shy ________ asking.
35. If you fail ________ this attempt, don’t count ________ me for help.
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) Children can learn to swim much earlier than is commonly supposed.
   (b) Babies are unwilling to enter the water.
   (c) All Los Angeles children learn to swim when they are very young.
   (d) Children can only learn to swim after they have learnt to walk.

2 One of these statements is true. Which one?
   (a) None of the children can cover the length of the pool without coming up for air.
   (b) Not all the children ride their tricycles during the underwater race.
   (c) The children don’t like picking up weights.
   (d) These children will certainly become Olympic champions one day.

Structure 句型

3 Children can be instructed in swimming. They can be ________ .
   (a) learnt to swim       (b) learnt swimming       (c) taught how to swim       (d) learnt how to swim

4 They can be instructed in swimming ________ they are very young.
   (a) in spite       (b) in spite of the fact that
   (c) in spite of       (d) despite

5 They are accustomed to swimming. They ________ swimming.
   (a) are used to       (b) are used       (c) used to       (d) used

6 ________ is the pool? Seven feet.
   (a) How deeply       (b) How tall
   (c) How high       (d) What depth

7 They compete ________ .
   (a) against one another       (b) the one against the other
   (c) each against the other       (d) against each one

Vocabulary 词汇

8 They are not reluctant to enter the water. They are ________ .
   (a) unwilling to       (b) not ready to       (c) willing to       (d) slow to

9 The game is popular ________ .
   (a) It is common.       (b) It is well known.       (c) It is pleasing.       (d) They like it very much.

10 A tricycle has ________ .
   (a) three wheels       (b) two wheels       (c) four wheels       (d) one wheel

11 Perhaps they will ________ future champions.
   (a) begin as       (b) grow up to be       (c) get into       (d) happen to be

12 Some of us are gasping for air. We are soon ________ .
   (a) without breath       (b) breathing       (c) out of breath       (d) coughing

Sentence structure 句子结构

Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 5-6 行，核对你的答案。
They are soon accustomed to swimming.
It is not long ________ .
Lesson 95  A fantasy

First listen and then answer the question.

Why was the Ambassador particularly lucky?

When the Ambassador of Escalopia returned home for lunch, his wife got a shock. He looked pale and his clothes were in a frightful state.

‘What has happened?’ she asked. ‘How did your clothes get into such a mess?’

‘A fire extinguisher, my dear,’ answered the Ambassador drily. ‘University students set the Embassy on fire this morning.’

‘Good heavens!’ exclaimed his wife. ‘And where were you at the time?’

‘I was in my office as usual,’ answered the Ambassador. ‘The fire broke out in the basement. I went down immediately, of course, and that fool, Horst, aimed a fire extinguisher at me. He thought I was on fire. I must definitely get that fellow posted.’

The Ambassador’s wife went on asking questions, when she suddenly noticed a big hole in her husband’s hat.

‘And how can you explain that?’ she asked.

‘Oh, that,’ said the Ambassador. ‘Someone fired a shot through my office window. Accurate, don’t you think? Fortunately, I wasn’t wearing it at the time. If I had been, I would not have been able to get home for lunch.’

New words and expressions

- fantasy (title) /'faentasi/ n. 幻想故事
- ambassador (1.1) /æmˈbæsədə/ n. 大使
- Escalopia (1.1) /ˈeskaʊəlaʊpɪə/ n. 艾斯卡罗比亚（虚构的国名）
- frightful (1.2) /ˈfrɪtʃful/ adj. 可怕的，令人吃惊的
- fire extinguisher (1.6) /ˈfaɪərˌɪŋstɪŋwɪʃə/ 灭火器
- drily (1.6) /ˈdraɪli/ adv. 冷淡地，枯燥无味地

Notes on the text

1. get into such a mess, 搞得这样糟。
2. set on fire, 放火。
3. Good heavens! 天哪!
4. The fire broke out in the basement. 地下室突然着火。
5. aim ... at, 用……瞄准。
6. get that fellow posted, 把那个家伙派走。post 可以与 letter, parcel 等名词连用, 表示“寄”。如果把 post 与人连用时, 仅指把人“派往”政府的一个新职位。
Accurate, don't you think? Very accurate, isn’t it?

7 Accurate, don’t you think? 很准确, 是不是?
这个句子可以理解成: Don’t you think it was accurate?

If I had been, I would not have been able to get home for lunch. If I had been accurate, I would not have been able to get home for lunch.

8 If I had been, I would not have been able to get home for lunch. 如果真戴着它，我现在就不能回家来吃午饭了。这是表示与过去的事不相符合的虚拟语气结构。If I had been 后面省略了 wearing my hat.

Summary writing

In not more than 80 words, write an account of what had happened at the Escalopian Embassy. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>While</td>
<td>1 Ambassador, Escalopia — in office.</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 Students — basement — fire.</td>
<td>After</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>3 Ambassador — went to investigate.</td>
<td>under the impression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 Man called Horst — fire extinguisher.</td>
<td>In addition to this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>5 Thought Ambassador on fire.</td>
<td>It</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moreover</td>
<td>6 Hole — Ambassador’s hat.</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which</td>
<td>7 Made when someone fired shot — window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>8 Ambassador lucky.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 Not wearing it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition

In about 150 words, write an imaginary account of the scene in the basement when the Ambassador went down to investigate. Use the ideas given below:

The Ambassador shouted — Horst explained: the Ambassador was on fire — the Ambassador denied it — Horst insisted — aimed the fire extinguisher at him — the Ambassador very angry — will send Horst to the South Pole — Horst explained that Escalopia has broken off diplomatic relations with the South Pole — the Ambassador went out angrily — Horst was pleased with himself.
Unit 4 Lesson 95

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a letter to a friend inviting him or her to come to a party. Supply a suitable Introduction and Conclusion. Use the following ideas to write your Purpose:

给你朋友写封信，邀请他（她）来参加一次聚会。写出恰当的引言和结束语。"目的"部分按以下思路写：the reason for the party — time and place — many old friends will be there.

Key structures 关键句型

Review of verb forms. 复习第 60, 69 言的关键句型

Exercises 练习

A Imagine that you are writing a newspaper report of the conversation that took place between the Ambassador and his wife. Write the passage again using the notes given below:

假设你正在为报社写一篇关于大使和他夫人对话的报道。用以下笔录写出这篇短文:

Lines 4-7 When she asked what ... and how ... he ... the Ambassador answered drily that a fire extinguisher had been responsible. He then told her that ...

Lines 8-9 His wife was most surprised and asked him where ...

Lines 10-11 The Ambassador answered that he ... When the fire broke out ... he ... Omit: 'of course'.

Lines 11-12 Horst thought the Ambassador ... The Ambassador said that he must ...

Lines 13-14 ... big hole in her husband’s hat and asked him how ...

Line 16 Omit: 'Oh, that,' The Ambassador said that someone had ...

Lines 16-18 The shot was accurate, but fortunately he had not been wearing his hat at the time. If he ...

B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

'We just ________ (receive) a report.' ________ (say) the radio announcer, 'that rioting ________ (break) out in Umgolia. Students, who ________ (demonstrate) outside the Escalopian Embassy during the day, ________ (break) into the building last night and ________ (set) it on fire. The students ________ (protest) against the new tax on beer mugs which recently ________ (impose) by the Escalopian government. A spokesman ________ (say) that the beer mug industry in Umgolia seriously ________ (affect). The Escalopian Ambassador, who ________ (say) to have been slightly injured, bravely ________ (defend) by his servant, Mr. Flugel Horst. Mr. Horst ________ (keep) off the students with a fire extinguisher. The Premier of Umgolia ________ (announce) this evening that, in future, steps ________ (take) to prevent further incidents.'

C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Do not refer to the passage until you finish the exercise:

用正确的动词填空。完成练习后再对照课文，核对你的答案:

1 ‘What ________ (happen)?’ she asked. ‘How ________ your clothes ________ (get) into such a mess?’

2 ‘Oh, that,’ said the Ambassador. ‘Someone ________ (fire) a shot through my office window. Accurate, __________, n’t you think? Fortunately, I not ________ (wear) it at the time. If I had been, I not ________ (be able) to get home for lunch.'

432
Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解
1 The Ambassador got into a mess ________.
   (a) while trying to put out the fire         (b) while fighting the students
   (c) because he was on fire                  (d) because Horst thought he was on fire
2 Which word best describes the Ambassador? He was very ________.
   (a) calm                 (b) angry                (c) worried               (d) upset

Structure 句型
3 His wife got a shock. She ________.
   (a) has shocked         (b) was shocked       (c) was shocking          (d) shocked
4 They set the Embassy on fire. They tried ________ it.
   (a) to burn             (b) burning           (c) for burning           (d) in burning
5 ‘Where were you?’ His wife wanted to know where ________.
   (a) he was              (b) was              (c) was he                (d) he had been
6 I must get that fellow posted. I must ________.
   (a) post him           (b) have posted him   (c) have him posted       (d) have got him posted
7 Fortunately I wasn’t wearing it. He was lucky ________.
   (a) to be not          (b) to not be        (c) to don’t be           (d) not to be

Vocabulary 词汇
8 His clothes were in a mess, so they were ________.
   (a) inside out         (b) upside down      (c) dirty                 (d) back to front
9 A fire extinguisher is used to put ________ a fire.
   (a) out                 (b) in               (c) off                   (d) over
10 They tried to set the Embassy on fire. They tried to ________.
    (a) fire it            (b) shoot it         (c) burn it down          (d) light it up
11 The fire broke out in the basement. That’s where it ________.
    (a) burst              (b) burst out        (c) set out               (d) began
12 Horst will be posted. He will be ________.
    (a) dismissed          (b) sent by air      (c) sent to another place  (d) shot

Sentence structure 句子结构
This was the Ambassador’s answer to his wife’s question: ‘A fire extinguisher, my dear.’ Write the question, then consult the text.
写出大使夫人的问题，然后对照课文第 4-5 行，核对你的答案。
‘How ________________________?’
First listen and then answer the question.
听录音，然后回答以下问题。
What happens to the lanterns at the end of the festival?

A Festival for the Dead is held once a year in Japan. This festival is a cheerful occasion, for on this day, the dead are said to return to their homes and they are welcomed by the living. As they are expected to be hungry after their long journey, food is laid out for them. Specially-made lanterns are hung outside each house to help the dead to find their way. All night long, people dance and sing. In the early morning, the food that had been laid out for the dead is thrown into a river or into the sea as it is considered unlucky for anyone living to eat it. In towns that are near the sea, the tiny lanterns which had been hung in the streets the night before, are placed into the water when the festival is over. Thousands of lanterns slowly drift out to sea guiding the dead on their return journey to the other world. This is a moving spectacle, for crowds of people stand on the shore watching the lanterns drifting away until they can be seen no more.

New words and expressions 生词和短语

festival (1.1) /'festɪvəl/ n. 节日
lantern (1.5) /'læntən/ n. 灯笼

spectacle (l.11) /'spektəkəl/ n. 景象, 壮观, 场面

Notes on the text 课文注释

1 the dead are said to return to their homes, 据说死去的人要回到他们的家里来。the dead, 死人。定冠词用在某些形容词之后，可以用来表示某类人。
2 lay out, 摆开, 展示, 摆设。
3 all night long, 整夜。
4 the other world, 另一个世界, 即阴间。

参考译文

日本每年过一次“亡灵节”。这个节日是个欢乐的日子，因为在这天，据说死去的人要回到他们的家里来。活着的人则对他们表示欢迎，因为预料到他们在经过长途旅行之后会感到饥饿，所以为他们摆放好了食品。特制的灯笼挂在各家的门外，为的是帮助亡灵看清道路。整个夜晚人们载歌载舞。一大早，人们便把为死者摆放的食品扔进河中或海里，因为人们认为活着的人吃了这些东西是不吉利的。在靠海的城镇中，头天夜里挂在大街小巷的小灯笼在节后就放在了水里。成千上万只灯笼慢慢漂向大海，指引着亡灵返回另一个世界。这是一个感人的场面，人们成群地伫立在海岸上，注视着灯笼远去，直到再也看不见为止。
Summary writing 摘要写作

In not more than 80 words, give an account of the Festival for the Dead. Write two different paragraphs using the points and connections given below.

用不超过 80 词的篇幅, 描述一下亡灵节的景象, 用以下要点和连词写出两段不同的文字。

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
<th>POINTS</th>
<th>CONNECTIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>1. Japanese annual festival — cheerful occasion.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>2. Dead return home.</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>3. Food laid out.</td>
<td>Food is not only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until</td>
<td>4. Lanterns lit — guide them.</td>
<td>but ... as well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>5. People dance, sing all night.</td>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>6. Uneaten food — sea, river, next morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. Some places: lanterns: sea.</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. People watch — shore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Composition 作文

Imagine witnessing the sort of festival described in the passage. Write two paragraphs in about 150 words using the ideas given below:

假设你亲眼看到了亡灵节的景象, 按照以下思路写出两段文字, 字数为 150 词左右:

1. Preparations: the making of the lanterns; preparing food — description of the streets at night; people dancing and singing.
2. The following morning — food was thrown away — lanterns on the sea — people watching — the lanterns disappeared — the sun rose.

Letter writing 书信写作

Write a letter to a friend refusing an invitation to a party. Supply a suitable Introduction and Conclusion. Use the following ideas to write your Purpose:

朋友邀请你去参加一个聚会, 写封信谢绝这一邀请。写出恰当的引言和结束语, “目的” 部分按以下思路写: you regret you cannot come — reason why — you bought tickets for a play a month ago — you have arranged to go with several friends.

Special difficulties 难点

Review SD 74-91 复习第 74-91 课的难点

Exercises 练习

A  Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选择正确的词:
Unit 4 Lesson 96

1. He came to see me yesterday as (usually) (usual). (第 76 课 a)
2. There was no one I knew (between) (among) those present. (第 76 课 b)
3. The (headmaster) (manager) of this store is kept very busy. (第 76 课 c)
4. Children’s (cloths) (clothes) are difficult to choose. (第 81 课 a)
5. He never (greeted) (salutes) anyone in the morning. (第 81 课 b)
6. Your hands are not very (clean) (clear), are they? (第 81 课 c)
7. Mary’s in the kitchen. She’s (washing) (washing up) the plates. (第 82 课 b)
8. If you lose your (temper) (mood) you will regret it. (第 83 课)
9. This problem is (enough) (too) difficult for me. (第 85 课)
10. He is (enough) (fairly) good at his work. (第 86 课 a)
11. He is trying hard but his work is still not good (enough) (fairly). (第 86 课 a)
12. Young people should remain (free) (single) for a few years before they marry. (第 89 课 a)
13. There was a long (row) (queue) at the bus stop. (第 89 课 b)

Get (第 74 课 a); keep (第 78 课); take (第 79 课); run (第 88 课); make (第 91 课).

Complete these sentences by adding any of the following words: into, in, after, out, out of, down, up, away, for, over, from.

选词填空, 完成句子:
1. His lies would not take ______ anybody but a fool.
2. The explorers returned because they had run ______ food.
3. He is very good at making ______ stories for children.
4. It took him a long time to get ______ his illness.
5. Mrs. Jones told her daughter to keep ______ the stove.
6. During the storm, the ship made ______ the nearest harbour.
7. Has this car been run ______ yet?
8. The bird accidentally flew into the room and couldn’t get ______.
9. He spoke so quickly, I didn’t have time to take ______ what he said.
10. Though we all ran ______ the thief, we could not catch him.
11. I hadn’t seen him for years and I accidentally ran ______ him in the street this morning.
12. Ronald will take ______ the family business now that his father has died.
13. Can you make ______ the address on this envelope?

Multiple choice questions 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解

1. The festival is a cheerful occasion because ______.
   (a) of the lanterns (b) food is laid out for the dead (c) people stay up all night (d) the dead are welcomed home by the living
2. What is the purpose of the lanterns?
   (a) They are nice decorations.
   (b) They can be thrown into the sea.
   (c) They are supposed to help the dead to find their way.
   (d) They help the living to find their way.

436
Structure 句型
3 ________ a year is the festival held? Only once a year.
   (a) How much    (b) How many    (c) How many times    (d) Which times
4 The dead are said to return. ________ they return to their homes.
   (a) It is saying    (b) People say    (c) People are said    (d) It said
5 All night long people dance and sing. They do this ________.
   (a) during the whole night    (b) in all the night    (c) the night long    (d) in the night
6 If anyone ________ the food he will be unlucky.
   (a) would eat    (b) will eat    (c) had eaten    (d) eats
7 Lanterns which had been hung in the streets ________ are placed into the water.
   (a) since the night    (b) a night ago    (c) the previous night    (d) before the night

Vocabulary 词汇
8 It’s a cheerful occasion. It’s a cheerful ________.
   (a) situation    (b) condition    (c) place    (d) event
9 The food is thrown into the river. It is thrown ________.
   (a) away    (b) off    (c) out    (d) down
10 The lanterns are placed into the water when the festival is over. This happens ________ the festival.
   (a) during    (b) after    (c) before    (d) at the same time as
11 The lanterns guide the dead to the other world. They ________.
   (a) drive them    (b) steer them    (c) show them the way    (d) instruct them
12 It’s a moving spectacle. It’s a wonderful ________.
   (a) view    (b) sight    (c) vision    (d) viewpoint

Sentence structure 句子结构
Rewrite this sentence, then check your answer against the text.
改写以下句子，然后对照课文第 3-5 行，核对你的答案。
It’s expected that they will be hungry after their long journey, so food is laid out for them.
As they ________.
### Appendix 1: Personal names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aimé Thomé de Gamond</td>
<td>埃梅·托梅·德·干蒙</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anne Sterling</td>
<td>安·斯特林</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auguste Bartholdi</td>
<td>奥古斯特·巴索尔地</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellinsky</td>
<td>别林斯基 (姓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ben Fawcett</td>
<td>本·弗西特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benjamin Hall</td>
<td>本杰明·霍尔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill Frith</td>
<td>比尔·弗里斯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brian</td>
<td>布赖恩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brinksley Meers</td>
<td>布林克斯利·米尔斯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charles Alison</td>
<td>查尔斯·艾利森</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Robinson</td>
<td>丹·鲁宾逊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debbie Hart</td>
<td>蒂比·哈特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donald</td>
<td>唐纳德</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eames</td>
<td>埃姆斯 (姓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eiffel</td>
<td>艾菲尔 (姓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elizabeth</td>
<td>伊丽莎白</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank Hawkins</td>
<td>弗兰克·霍金斯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fratelli</td>
<td>弗拉特里 (姓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giuseppe Moldova</td>
<td>朱塞皮·莫尔道瓦</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloria Gleam</td>
<td>格洛里亚·格利姆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harmsworth</td>
<td>哈姆斯沃斯 (姓)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haroun Tazieff</td>
<td>哈罗恩·塔捷耶夫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harrison</td>
<td>哈里森</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helen Bates</td>
<td>海伦·贝茨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horst</td>
<td>霍斯特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hugh</td>
<td>休</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ian Thompson</td>
<td>伊恩·汤普森</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James Scott</td>
<td>詹姆斯·斯科特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane</td>
<td>简</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jasper White</td>
<td>贾斯珀·怀特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jennifer</td>
<td>詹尼弗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenny</td>
<td>珍尼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremy Hampden</td>
<td>杰里米·汉普登</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jimmy Gates</td>
<td>吉米·盖茨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe Sanders</td>
<td>乔·桑德斯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John Gilbert</td>
<td>约翰·吉尔伯特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurt Gunter</td>
<td>库尔特·冈特</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucy</td>
<td>露西</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

438
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Age</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Malcolm Campbell</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merlin Greeves</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Millington</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasmyth</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigel Dykes</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrick</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Percy Buttons</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. E. Byrd</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riccardo Brabante</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rockwall Slinger</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roy Trenton</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rumbold</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sam Benton</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shepenmut</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stuart Page</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Susan</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tim</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tony Steele</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wentworth Lane</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William Low</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>英文（课）</td>
<td>译文</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alice Springs (4)</td>
<td>艾利斯喷泉 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America (93)</td>
<td>美国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlantic (12)</td>
<td>大西洋</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia (4)</td>
<td>澳大利亚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birmingham (29)</td>
<td>伯明翰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonneville Salt Flats (72)</td>
<td>邦纳维尔盐滩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain (90)</td>
<td>英国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calabria (76)</td>
<td>卡拉布里亚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calais (73)</td>
<td>加来</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California (153)</td>
<td>加利福尼亚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congo (67)</td>
<td>刚果</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crystal Palace, the (80)</td>
<td>水晶宫</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darwin (4)</td>
<td>达尔文</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dover (73)</td>
<td>多佛</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalopia (95)</td>
<td>艾斯卡罗比亚</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England (23)</td>
<td>英国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Channel, the (36)</td>
<td>英吉利海峡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe (79)</td>
<td>欧洲</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferngreen (87)</td>
<td>芬格林</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France (14)</td>
<td>法国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frinley (58)</td>
<td>弗林利</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany (10)</td>
<td>德国</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenwich Observatory (71)</td>
<td>格林威治天文台</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland (22)</td>
<td>荷兰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyde Park (80)</td>
<td>海德公园</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy (3)</td>
<td>意大利</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan (96)</td>
<td>日本</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lake Kivu (67)</td>
<td>基伦湖</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>